Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications
DOCSIS® 3.1

Physical Layer Specification

CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I05-150326

ISSUED

DISCLAIMER

Document Status Sheet

Document Control Number:	CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I04-1412185-150326			
Document Title:	Physical Layer Specification			
Revision History:	I01 – Released 10/29/13 I02 – Released 03/20/14 I03 – Released 06/10/14 I04 – Released 12/18/14 I05 – Released 03/26/15			
Date:	March 26, 2015			
Status:	~~Work in Progress~~	~~Draft~~	**Issued**	~~Closed~~
Distribution Restrictions:	~~Author Only~~	~~CL/Member~~	~~CL/ Member/ Vendor~~	**Public**

Key to Document Status Codes

Work in Progress	An incomplete document, designed to guide discussion and generate feedback that may include several alternative requirements for consideration.
Draft	A document in specification format considered largely complete, but lacking review by Members and vendors. Drafts are susceptible to substantial change during the review process.
Issued	A generally public document that has undergone Member and Technology Supplier review, cross-vendor interoperability, and is for Certification testing if applicable. Issued Specifications are subject to the Engineering Change Process.
Closed	A static document, reviewed, tested, validated, and closed to further engineering changes.

Trademarks

Contents

1 SCOPE 13

1.1 Introduction and Purpose 13
1.2 Background 13
1.2.1 Broadband Access Network 13
1.2.2 Network and System Architecture 14
1.2.3 Service Goals 15
1.2.4 Statement of Compatibility 15
1.2.5 Reference Architecture 16
1.2.6 DOCSIS 3.1 Documents 16
1.3 Requirements 17
1.4 Conventions 17
1.5 Organization of Document 18

2 REFERENCES 19

2.1 Normative References 19
2.2 Informative References 20
2.3 Reference Acquisition 20

3 TERMS AND DEFINITIONS 21

4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS 34

5 OVERVIEW AND FUNCTIONAL ASSUMPTIONS 39

5.1 Overview 39
5.2 Functional Assumptions 40
5.2.1 Equipment Assumptions 40
5.2.2 RF Channel Assumptions 41
5.2.3 Transmission Levels 43
5.2.4 Frequency Inversion 43

6 PHY SUBLAYER FOR SC-QAM 44

6.1 Scope 44
6.2 Upstream Transmit and Receive 44
6.2.1 Overview 44
6.2.2 Signal Processing Requirements 44
6.2.3 Modulation Formats 44
6.2.4 R-S Encode 44
6.2.5 Upstream R-S Frame Structure (Multiple Transmit Enabled) 45
6.2.6 Upstream R-S Frame Structure (Multiple Transmit Disabled) 45
6.2.7 TDMA Byte Interleaver 45
6.2.8 Scrambler (randomizer) 45
6.2.9 TCM Encoder 45
6.2.10 Preamble Prepend 45
6.2.11 Modulation Rates 45
6.2.12 S-CDMA Framer and Interleaver 45
6.2.13 S-CDMA Framer 45
6.2.14 Symbol Mapping 45
6.2.15 S-CDMA Spreader 45
6.2.16 Transmit Pre-Equalizer 45
6.2.17 Spectral Shaping 45
6.2.18 Relative Processing Delays 45
6.2.19 Transmit Power Requirements 45

6.2.20 *Burst Profiles* ... *46*
6.2.21 *Burst Timing Convention* ... *46*
6.2.22 *Fidelity Requirements* ... *46*
6.2.23 *Upstream Demodulator Input Power Characteristics* ... *46*
6.2.24 *Upstream Electrical Output from the CM* ... *46*
6.2.25 *Upstream CM Transmitter Capabilities* ... *46*
6.3 Downstream Transmit ... 46
6.3.1 *Downstream Protocol* ... *46*
6.3.2 *Spectrum Format* ... *46*
6.3.3 *Scaleable Interleaving to Support Video and High-Speed Data Services* ... *46*
6.3.4 *Downstream Frequency Plan* ... *46*
6.3.5 *DRFI Output Electrical* ... *46*
6.3.6 *CMTS or EQAM Clock Generation* ... *47*
6.3.7 *Downstream Symbol Clock Jitter for Synchronous Operation* ... *47*
6.3.8 *Downstream Symbol Clock Drift for Synchronous Operation* ... *47*
6.3.9 *Timestamp Jitter* ... *47*
6.4 Downstream Receive ... 47
6.4.1 *Downstream Protocol and Interleaving Support* ... *47*
6.4.2 *Downstream Electrical Input to the CM* ... *47*
6.4.3 *CM BER Performance* ... *47*
6.4.4 *Downstream Multiple Receiver Capabilities* ... *47*
6.4.5 *Non-Synchronous DS Channel Support* ... *48*

7 PHY SUBLAYER FOR OFDM ... 49

7.1 Scope ... 49
7.2 Upstream and Downstream Frequency Plan ... 49
7.2.1 *Downstream CM Spectrum* ... *49*
7.2.2 *Downstream CMTS Spectrum* ... *49*
7.2.3 *Upstream CM Spectrum* ... *49*
7.2.4 *Upstream CMTS Spectrum* ... *50*
7.2.5 *Channel Band Rules* ... *50*
7.3 OFDM Numerology ... 52
7.3.1 *Downstream OFDM Numerology* ... *52*
7.3.2 *Upstream OFDMA Numerology* ... *52*
7.3.3 *Subcarrier Clocking* ... *53*
7.4 Upstream Transmit and Receive ... 54
7.4.1 *Signal Processing Requirements* ... *54*
7.4.2 *Time and Frequency Synchronization* ... *56*
7.4.3 *Forward Error Correction* ... *57*
7.4.4 *Data Randomization* ... *63*
7.4.5 *Time and Frequency Interleaving and De-interleaving* ... *63*
7.4.6 *Mapping of Bits to Cell Words* ... *70*
7.4.7 *Mapping and De-mapping Bits to/from QAM Subcarriers* ... *71*
7.4.8 *REQ Messages* ... *72*
7.4.9 *IDFT* ... *72*
7.4.10 *Cyclic Prefix and Windowing* ... *73*
7.4.11 *Burst Timing Convention* ... *79*
7.4.12 *Fidelity Requirements* ... *79*
7.4.13 *Cable Modem Transmitter Output Requirements* ... *93*
7.4.14 *CMTS Receiver Capabilities* ... *94*
7.4.15 *Ranging* ... *96*
7.4.16 *Upstream Pilot Structure* ... *110*
7.4.17 *Upstream Pre-Equalization* ... *116*
7.5 Downstream Transmit and Receive ... 117
7.5.1 *Overview* ... *117*
7.5.2 *Signal Processing* ... *117*

7.5.3 Time and Frequency Synchronization 120
7.5.4 Downstream Forward Error Correction 122
7.5.5 Mapping Bits to QAM Constellations 129
7.5.6 Interleaving and De-interleaving 139
7.5.7 IDFT 144
7.5.8 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing 146
7.5.9 Fidelity Requirements 147
7.5.10 Independence of Individual Channels Within Multiple Channels on a Single RF Port 155
7.5.11 Cable Modem Receiver Input Requirements 158
7.5.12 Cable Modem Receiver Capabilities 159
7.5.13 Physical Layer Link Channel (PLC) 160
7.5.14 Next Codeword Pointer 171
7.5.15 Downstream Pilot Patterns 178

8 PHY–MAC CONVERGENCE 189

8.1 Scope 189
8.2 Upstream 189
8.2.1 Profiles 189
8.2.2 Upstream Subcarrier Numbering Conventions 189
8.2.3 Minislots 189
8.2.4 Subslots 192
8.3 Downstream 193
8.3.1 Operation 193
8.3.2 MAC Frame to Codewords 195
8.3.3 Subcarrier Numbering Conventions 196
8.3.4 Next Codeword Pointer 196

9 PROACTIVE NETWORK MAINTENANCE 204

9.1 Scope 204
9.2 System Description 204
9.3 Downstream PNM Requirements 205
9.3.1 Downstream Symbol Capture 205
9.3.2 Downstream Wideband Spectrum Analysis 205
9.3.3 Downstream Noise Power Ratio (NPR) Measurement 205
9.3.4 Downstream Channel Estimate Coefficients 206
9.3.5 Downstream Constellation Display 206
9.3.6 Downstream Receive Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) Per Subcarrier 206
9.3.7 Downstream FEC Statistics 208
9.3.8 Downstream Histogram 209
9.3.9 Downstream Received Power 209
9.4 Upstream PNM Requirements 210
9.4.1 Upstream Capture for Active and Quiet Probe 210
9.4.2 Upstream Triggered Spectrum Analysis 211
9.4.3 Upstream Impulse Noise Statistics 211
9.4.4 Upstream Equalizer Coefficients 212
9.4.5 Upstream FEC Statistics 212
9.4.6 Upstream Histogram 213
9.4.7 Upstream Channel Power 213
9.4.8 Upstream Receive Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) Per Subcarrier 214

ANNEX A QAM CONSTELLATION MAPPINGS (NORMATIVE) 215

A.1 QAM Constellations 215
A.2 QAM Constellation Scaling 225

ANNEX B RFOG OPERATING MODE (NORMATIVE) 226

ANNEX C ADDITIONS AND MODIFICATIONS FOR EUROPEAN SPECIFICATION WITH SC-QAM OPERATION (NORMATIVE) 227

ANNEX D ADDITIONS AND MODIFICATIONS FOR CHINESE SPECIFICATION WITH SC-QAM OPERATION (NORMATIVE) 228

ANNEX E 24-BIT CYCLIC REDUNDANCY CHECK (CRC) CODE (NORMATIVE) 229

APPENDIX I DOWNSTREAM FREQUENCY INTERLEAVER SAMPLE C CODE (INFORMATIVE) 230

APPENDIX II USE CASES: MAXIMUM NUMBER OF SIMULTANEOUS TRANSMITTERS (INFORMATIVE) 232

APPENDIX III UPSTREAM TIME AND FREQUENCY INTERLEAVER SAMPLE C CODE (INFORMATIVE) 233

APPENDIX IV FEC CODEWORD SELECTION ALGORITHM UPSTREAM TIME AND FREQUENCY INTERLEAVER SAMPLE C CODE (INFORMATIVE) 234

APPENDIX V CMTS PROPOSED CONFIGURATION PARAMETERS (INFORMATIVE) 237

APPENDIX VI SUGGESTED ALGORITHM TO COMPUTE SIGNAL-TO-NOISE RATIO (SNR) MARGIN FOR CANDIDATE PROFILE (INFORMATIVE) 238

APPENDIX VII ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS (INFORMATIVE) 239

APPENDIX VIII REVISION HISTORY (INFORMATIVE) ...... ERROR! BOOKMARK NOT DEFINED.

VIII.1 Engineering Change for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I02-140320 240
VIII.2 Engineering Change for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I03-140606 240
VIII.3 Engineering Changes for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I04-141218 240
VIII.4 Engineering Changes for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I05-150326 241

Figures

Figure 1-1 - The DOCSIS Network....14
Figure 1-2 - Transparent IP Traffic Through the Data-Over-Cable System....15
Figure 1-3 - Data-Over-Cable Reference Architecture....16
Figure 7-1 - OFDMA Frame Structure....54
Figure 7-2 - Upstream transmitter block diagram....55
Figure 7-3 - Upstream Transmitter Block Diagram....55
Figure 7-4 - Upstream Data Randomizer....63
Figure 7-5 - Calculating Number of Minislots in Each Block for Upstream Interleaving....64
Figure 7-6 - Illustrating Minislots of a Grant over which Interleaving is Performed....65
Figure 7-7 - Sample Interleaver Block Diagram....66
Figure 7-8 - Interleaving a Grant within an OFDMA Frame....68
Figure 7-9 - Bit-Reversed Counter Implementation....70
Figure 7-10 - Bitstream to QAM M-Tuple Mapping....71
Figure 7-11 - REQ Messages Processing....72
Figure 7-12 - Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform....73
Figure 7-13 - Signal with Micro-Reflection at the Receiver....74
Figure 7-14 - Cyclic Prefix and Windowing Algorithm....76
Figure 7-15 - Tapering Window....77
Figure 7-16 - Time References for OFDMA Symbol and Frame....79
Figure 7-17 - Ranging Steps....96
Figure 7-18 - Initial Ranging Zone....97
Figure 7-19 - Initial Ranging Signal....97
Figure 7-20 - Initial Ranging Admission Slot Structure....98
Figure 7-21 - Block Diagram of Initial Ranging Transmitter Processing....98
Figure 7-22 - LDPC Two-Period Puncturing Encoder for Initial Ranging FEC....99
Figure 7-23 - Initial Ranging Symbol Pair Structure....100
Figure 7-24 - Initial Ranging with Exclusions and Unused Subcarriers....101
Figure 7-25 - Initial Ranging Preamble and an Exclusion Band....101
Figure 7-26 - Fine Ranging Signal....102
Figure 7-27 - Fine Ranging Signal Transmission....103
Figure 7-28 - Fine Ranging Transmitter Processing....104
Figure 7-29 - Shortening and Puncturing Encoder for the Fine Ranging FEC....105
Figure 7-30 - Fine Ranging and Exclusion Bands....106
Figure 7-31 - Fine Ranging Preamble and an Exclusion Band....106
Figure 7-32 - Polynomial Sequence for Pseudorandom Binary Sequence Generation....108
Figure 7-33 - 4K FFT Example, All Subcarriers Used for Probing, no Skipping....109
Figure 7-34 - 4K FFT Example, Alternate Subcarriers Used for Probing....109
Figure 7-35 - Edge and Body Minislots in a Transmission Burst....110
Figure 7-36 - Pilot Patterns 1-4 for Minislots with 8 Subcarriers....111
Figure 7-37 - Pilot Patterns 5-7 for Minislots with 8 Subcarriers....112
Figure 7-38 - Pilot Patterns 8-11 for Minislots with 16 Subcarriers....113
Figure 7-39 - Pilot Patterns 12-14 for Minislots with 16 Subcarriers....114

Figure 7-40 - Pilot Pattern for Subslots with 8 Subcarriers 115
Figure 7-41 - Pilot Pattern for Subslots with 16 Subcarriers 115
Figure 7-42 - Downstream PHY Processing....118
Figure 7-43 - Codeword Shortening Process 124
Figure 7-44 - Padding Process....125
Figure 7-45 - Bit De-interleaver Block for a Shortened Codeword....128
Figure 7-46 - FEC Decoding Process 129
Figure 7-47 - Bits to QAM Constellation Mapping....130
Figure 7-48 - Bit-to-Cell Word Demultiplexer....131
Figure 7-49 - Linear Feedback Shift Register for Randomization Sequence 134
Figure 7-50 - Bit Loading, Symbol Mapping, and Interleaving 137
Figure 7-51 - NCP Insertion 139
Figure 7-52 - Time Interleaver Structure....140
Figure 7-53 - Two-Dimensional Block Structure 142
Figure 7-54 - Linear Feedback Shift Register....142
Figure 7-55 - Frequency Interleaver Rotation Definition 143
Figure 7-56 - Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform....145
Figure 7-57 - Structure of the PLC 161
Figure 7-58 - Examples of PLC placement 162
Figure 7-59 - Physical Layer Operations for Forming the PLC Subcarriers 163
Figure 7-60 - Mapping Bytes into a Bitstream for FEC Encoding 165
Figure 7-61 - Puncturing Encoder for the PLC FEC 166
Figure 7-62 - Mapping Encoded Bitstream into a Stream of Nibbles....166
Figure 7-63 - Block Interleaving of PLC Subcarriers for 4K FFT 167
Figure 7-64 - Block Interleaving of PLC Subcarriers for 8K FFT 168
Figure 7-65 - Linear Feedback Shift Register for PLC Randomization 169
Figure 7-66 - Time - Frequency Plane Representation of PLC Timestamp Synchronization....170
Figure 7-67 - Time Domain Representation of PLC Timestamp Synchronization....171
Figure 7-68 - Mapping NCP Bytes into a Bitstream for FEC Encoding....172
Figure 7-69 - Mapping FEC Encoded NCP Bytes into a Bitstream 172
Figure 7-70 - Polynomial Sequence for CRC-24-D Encoding 173
Figure 7-71 - Mapping NCP Data into the CRC-24-D Encoder....173
Figure 7-72 - Mapping FEC Encoded CRC-NCP Bytes into a Bitstream 174
Figure 7-73 - Shortening and Puncturing Encoder for the NCP FEC....175
Figure 7-74 - 64-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{yi,0yi,1yi,2yi,3yi,4yi,5\}$ 176
Figure 7-75 - 16QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{yi,0\ yi,1\ yi,2\ yi,3\}$....177
Figure 7-76 - QPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{yi,0yi,1\}$....177
Figure 7-77 - 4K FFT Downstream Pilot Pattern 179
Figure 7-78 - A Downstream Scattered Pilot Pattern for 8K FFT (for Explanation Purposes Only) 181
Figure 7-79 - 8K FFT Downstream Scattered Pilot Pattern....183
Figure 7-80 - Placement of Predefined Continuous Pilots around the PLC....185
Figure 7-81 - 13-Bit Linear Feedback Shift Register for the Pilot Modulation Pseudo-Random Sequence....187
Figure 8-1 - Minislot Data Bit Ordering....192
Figure 8-2 - Subslot Structure....192

Figure 8-3 - Data Mapping for a 4x8 Subslot 193
Figure 8-4 - Data Mapping for a 2x16 Subslot 193
Figure 8-5 - Downstream Convergence Layer Block Diagram 194
Figure 8-6 - DOCSIS Frame to Codeword Mapping 195
Figure 8-7 - Data and NCP Prior to Interleaving 197
Figure 8-8 - NCP Data Message Block 197
Figure 8-9 - NCP Profile Update Bit Setting Immediately Preceding an NCP Bit Loading Profile Change 199
Figure 8-10 - NCP CRC Message Block 200
Figure 8-11 - NCP Message Blocks Field with FEC 200
Figure 8-12 - NCP Examples 202
Figure 9-1 - Test points in CM and CMTS Supporting Proactive Network Maintenance 204
Figure 9-2 - Computation of Received Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) for a given subcarrier 207
Figure A–1 - BPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0}\}$ 215
Figure A–2 - QPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0y1}\}$ 215
Figure A–3 - 8-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0\ y1\ y2}\}$ 216
Figure A–4 - 16-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0\ y1\ y2\ y3}\}$ 216
Figure A–5 - 32-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0y1y2y3y4}\}$ 216
Figure A–6 - 64-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0y1y2y3y4y5}\}$ 217
Figure A–7 - 128-QAM Constellation mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y0y1y2y3y4y5y6}\}$ 217
Figure A–8 - Mapping of Bits $\{\boldsymbol{y0\ y1}\}$ of $\{\boldsymbol{y0\ y1}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{ym-1}\}$ for Constellations with only one Quadrant Defined 218
Figure A–9 - Reflective Mapping of bits $\{\boldsymbol{y2\ y3}, \ldots, \boldsymbol{ym-1}\}$ for All Constellations (except BPSK) 218
Figure A–10 - 256-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 219
Figure A–11 - 512-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 219
Figure A–12 - 1024-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8y9}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 220
Figure A–13 - 2048-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8y9y10}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 221
Figure A–14 - 4096-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8y9y10y11}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 222
Figure A–15 - 8192-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8y9y10y11y12}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 223
Figure A–16 - 16384-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{\boldsymbol{y2y3y4y5y6y7y8y9y10y11y12y13}\}$ on to Quadrant 1 224

Tables

Table 1–1 - DOCSIS 3.1 Series of Specifications 16
Table 1–2 - DOCSIS 3.1 Related Specifications 17
Table 5–1 - Typical Downstream RF Channel Transmission Characteristics 41
Table 5–2 - Typical Upstream RF Channel Transmission Characteristics 42
Table 7–1 - Downstream OFDM parameters 52
Table 7–2 - Upstream OFDMA Parameters 53
Table 7–3 - Upstream Codeword Parameters 57
Table 7–4 - Upstream Cyclic Prefix (CP) Values 74
Table 7–5 - Upstream Roll-Off Period (RP) Values 75
Table 7–6 - Spurious Emissions 87

Table 7–7 - Spurious Emissions Requirements in the Upstream Frequency Range for Grants of Under-grant Hold Bandwidth and Larger[1] 89
Table 7–8 - Adjacent Channel Spurious Emissions Requirements Relative to the Per Channel Transmitted Burst Power Level for Each Channel 91
Table 7–9 - Upstream MER Requirements (with Pre-Equalization) 93
Table 7–10 - Upstream MER Requirements (no Pre-Equalization) 93
Table 7–11 - CM Transmitter Output Signal Characteristics 93
Table 7–12 - Upstream Channel Demodulator Input Power Characteristics 95
Table 7–13 - CMTS Minimum CNR Performance in AWGN Channel 95
Table 7–14 - (160,80) LDPC code Parity Check Matrix 99
Table 7–15 - Cyclic Prefix and Roll–Off Samples for Initial Ranging 100
Table 7–16 - (480, 288) LDPC Code Parity Check Matrix 104
Table 7–17 - Mixed Modulation with 1.5 dB SNR Granularity 122
Table 7–18 - Coding Parameters (for Short Codewords N_{ldpc} = 16,200 and Code Rate 8/9) 123
Table 7–19 - Bit Interleaver Structure 126
Table 7–20 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0 - 11) 126
Table 7–21 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12-23) 127
Table 7–22 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0-11) 127
Table 7–23 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12-23) 127
Table 7–24 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0 - 11) 128
Table 7–25 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12 - 23) 128
Table 7–26 - Parameters for Bit-Mapping onto Constellations 130
Table 7–27 - Number of Sub-Streams in Demultiplexer 131
Table 7–28 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 128-QAM....132
Table 7–29 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 512-QAM....132
Table 7–30 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 2048-QAM....132
Table 7–31 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 8192-QAM....132
Table 7–32 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 16384-QAM....132
Table 7–33 - Subcarrier Spacing 145
Table 7–34 - Downstream Cyclic Prefix (CP) Values 146
Table 7–35 - Downstream Roll-off Period (RP) Values 147
Table 7–36 - RF Output Electrical Requirements 148
Table 7–37 - CMTS Output Power 151
Table 7–38 - CMTS Output Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Emissions Requirements 154
Table 7–39 - CMTS OFDM Channel Characteristic 155
Table 7–40 - Electrical Input to CM 158
Table 7–41 - CM Minimum CNR Performance in AWGN Channel 159
Table 7–42 - PLC components 160
Table 7–43 - PLC preamble for 4K FFT 163
Table 7–44 - PLC preamble for 8K FFT 163
Table 7–45 - Subcarrier Distances for Placement of Predefined Pilots 185
Table 8–1 - Minislot Parameters 190
Table 8–2 - Data Codeword Definition 195
Table 8–3 - NCP Parameters 198
Table A–1 - QAM Constellation Scaling Factors 225

Table V–1 - CMTS Proposed Configuration Parameters 237

1 SCOPE

1.1 Introduction and Purpose[1]

This specification is part of the DOCSIS® family of specifications developed by Cable Television Laboratories (CableLabs). In particular, this specification is part of a series of specifications that defines the fifth generation of high-speed data-over-cable systems, commonly referred to as the DOCSIS 3.1 specifications. This specification was developed for the benefit of the cable industry, and includes contributions by operators and vendors from North and South America, Europe and Asia.

This generation of the DOCSIS specifications builds upon the previous generations of DOCSIS specifications (commonly referred to as the DOCSIS 3.0 and earlier specifications), leveraging the existing Media Access Control (MAC) and Physical (PHY) layers, but with the addition of a new PHY layer designed to improve spectral efficiency and provide better scaling for larger bandwidths (and appropriate updates to the MAC and management layers to support the new PHY layer). It includes backward compatibility for the existing PHY layers in order to enable a seamless migration to the new technology.

There are differences in the cable spectrum planning practices adopted for different networks in the world. For the new PHY layer defined in this specification, there is flexibility to deploy the technology in any spectrum plan; therefore, no special accommodation for different regions of the world is required for this new PHY layer.

However, due to the inclusion of the DOCSIS 3.0 PHY layers for backward compatibility purposes, there is still a need for different region-specific physical layer technologies. Therefore, three options for physical layer technologies are included in this specification, which have equal priority and are not required to be interoperable. One technology option is based on the downstream channel identification plan that is deployed in North America using 6 MHz spacing. The second technology option is based on the corresponding European multi-program television distribution. The third technology option is based on the corresponding Chinese multi-program television distribution. All three options have the same status, notwithstanding that the document structure does not reflect this equal priority. The first of these options is defined in Sections 5 and 6, whereas the second is defined by replacing the content of those sections with the content of Annex C. The third is defined by replacing the content of those sections with the content of Annex D. Correspondingly, [ITU-T J.83-B] and [CEA-542] apply only to the first option, and [EN 300 429] apply to the second and third. Compliance with this document requires compliance with one of these implementations, but not with all three. It is not required that equipment built to one option shall interoperate with equipment built to the other.

Compliance with frequency planning and EMC requirements is not covered by this specification and remains the operators' responsibility. In this respect, [FCC15] and [FCC76] are relevant to the USA; [CAN/CSA CISPR 22-10] and [ICES 003 Class A] to Canada; [EG 201 212], [EN 50083-1], [EN 50083-2], [EN 50083-7], [EN 61000-6-1], and [EN 61000-6-3] are relevant to the European Union; [GB 8898-2011] and [GB/T 11318.1-1996] are relevant to China.

1.2 Background

1.2.1 Broadband Access Network

A coaxial-based broadband access network is assumed. This may take the form of either an all-coax or hybrid-fiber/coax (HFC) network. The generic term "cable network" is used here to cover all cases.

A cable network uses a tree-and-branch architecture with analog transmission. The key functional characteristics assumed in this document are the following:

- Two-way transmission.
- A maximum optical/electrical spacing between the CMTS and the most distant CM of 50 miles (80 km) in each direction, although typical maximum separation may be 15 miles (24 km).

[1] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.

- A maximum differential optical/electrical spacing between the closest and most distant modems of 50 miles (80 km) in each direction, although this would typically be limited to 15 miles (24 km).

At a propagation velocity in fiber of approximately 1.5 ns/ft. (5 ns/m), 50 miles (80 km) of fiber in each direction results in a round-trip delay of approximately 0.8 ms. This is the maximum propagation delay assumed by this specification.

1.2.2 Network and System Architecture

1.2.2.1 The DOCSIS Network

The elements that participate in the provisioning of DOCSIS services are shown in the following figure:

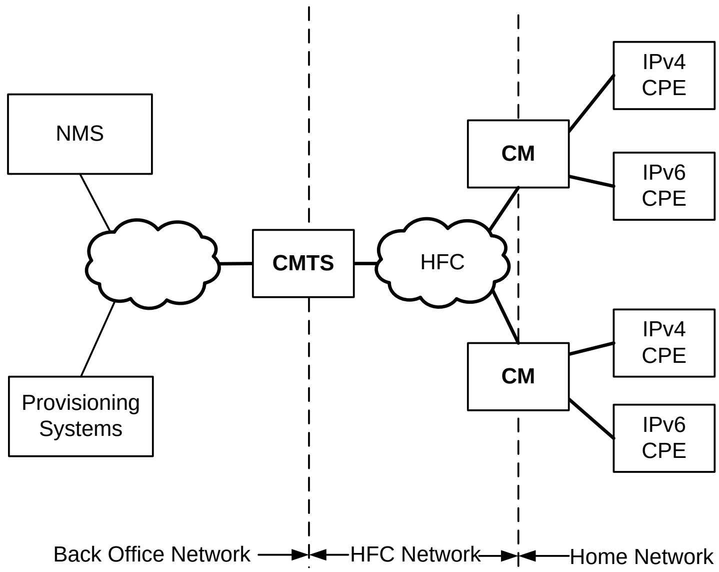


Figure 1-1 - The DOCSIS Network

The CM connects to the operator's HFC network and to a home network, bridging packets between them. Many CPEs can connect to the CMs' LAN interfaces. CPE can be embedded with the CM in a single device, or they can be separated into standalone devices, as shown in Figure 1–1. CPE may use IPv4, IPv6 or both forms of IP addressing. Examples of typical CPE are gateways, home routers, set-top devices, personal computers, etc.

The CMTS connects the operator's back office and core network to the HFC network. The CMTS's main function is to forward packets between these two domains, and between upstream and downstream channels on the HFC network.

Various applications are used to provide back office configuration and other support to the devices on the DOCSIS network. These applications use IPv4 and/or IPv6 as appropriate to the particular operator's deployment. The following applications include:

Provisioning Systems:

- The DHCP servers provide the CM with initial configuration information, including the device IP address(es), when the CM boots.
- The Config File server is used to download configuration files to CMs when they boot. Configuration files are in binary format and permit the configuration of the CM's parameters.
- The Software Download server is used to download software upgrades to the CM.
- The Time Protocol server provides Time Protocol clients, typically CMs, with the current time of day.

- Certificate Revocation server provides certificate status.

Network Management System (NMS):

- The SNMP Manager allows the operator to configure and monitor SNMP Agents, typically the CM and the CMTS.
- The Syslog server collects messages pertaining to the operation of devices.
- The IPDR Collector server allows the operator to collect bulk statistics in an efficient manner.

1.2.3 Service Goals

As cable operators have widely deployed high-speed data services on cable television systems, the demand for bandwidth has increased. To this end, CableLabs' member companies have decided to add new features to the DOCSIS specification for the purpose of increasing capacity, increasing peak speeds, improving scalability, enhancing network maintenance practices and deploying new service offerings.

The DOCSIS system allows transparent bi-directional transfer of Internet Protocol (IP) traffic, between the cable system headend and customer locations, over an all-coaxial or HFC cable network. This is shown in simplified form in Figure 1–2.

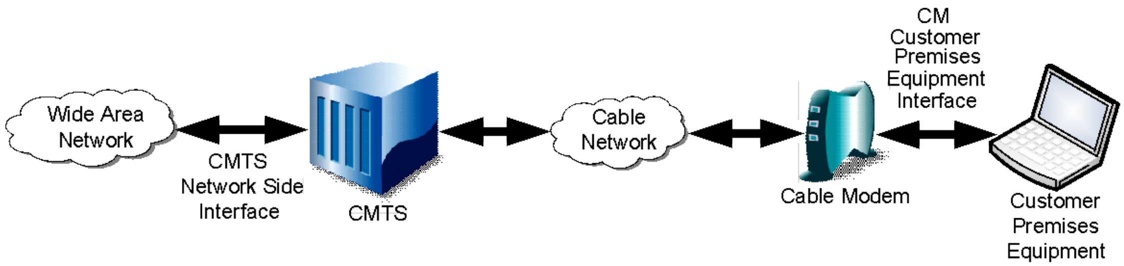


Figure 1-2 - Transparent IP Traffic Through the Data-Over-Cable System

1.2.4 Statement of Compatibility

This specification defines the DOCSIS 3.1 interface. Prior generations of DOCSIS were commonly referred to as the DOCSIS 1.0, 1.1, 2.0, and 3.0 interfaces. DOCSIS 3.1 is backward-compatible with equipment built to the previous specifications with the exception of DOCSIS 1.0 CMs. DOCSIS 3.1-compliant CMs interoperate seamlessly with DOCSIS 3.0, 2.0, 1.1, and 1.0 CMTSs. DOCSIS 3.1-compliant CMTSs seamlessly support DOCSIS 3.0, DOCSIS 2.0, and DOCSIS 1.1 CMs.

1.2.5 Reference Architecture

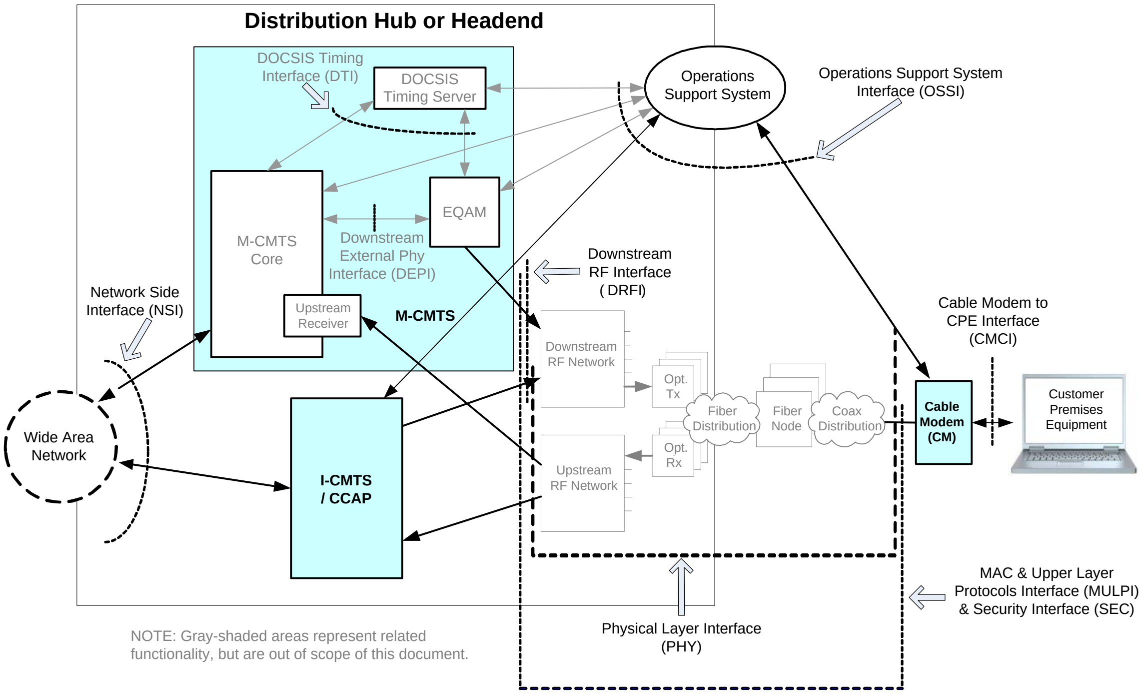


Figure 1-3 - Data-Over-Cable Reference Architecture

The reference architecture for data-over-cable services and interfaces is shown in Figure 1-3.

1.2.6 DOCSIS 3.1 Documents

A list of the specifications in the DOCSIS 3.1 series is provided in Table 1–1. For further information, please refer to http://www.cablemodem.com.

Table 1–1 - DOCSIS 3.1 Series of Specifications

Designation	Title
CM-SP-PHYv3.1	Physical Layer Specification
CM-SP-MULPIv3.1	Media Access Control and Upper Layer Protocols Interface Specification
CM-SP-CM-OSSIv3.1	Cable Modem Operations Support System Interface Specification
CM-SP-CCAP-OSSIv3.1	CCAP Operations Support System Interface Specification
CM-SP-SECv3.1	Security Specification
CM-SP-CMCIv3.0	Cable Modem CPE Interface Specification

This specification defines the interface for the physical layer.

Related DOCSIS specifications are listed in Table 1–2.

Table 1–2 - DOCSIS 3.1 Related Specifications

Designation	Title
CM-SP-eDOCSIS	eDOCSIS™ Specification
CM-SP-DRFI	Downstream Radio Frequency Interface Specification
CM-SP-DTI	DOCSIS Timing Interface Specification
CM-SP-DEPI	Downstream External PHY Interface Specification
CM-SP-DSG	DOCSIS Set-Top Gateway Interface Specification
CM-SP-ERMI	Edge Resource Manager Interface Specification
CM-SP-M-OSSI	M-CMTS Operations Support System Interface Specification
CM-SP-L2VPN	Layer 2 Virtual Private Networks Specification
CM-SP-TEI	TDM Emulation Interfaces Specification

1.3 Requirements

Throughout this document, the words that are used to define the significance of particular requirements are capitalized. These words are:

"MUST" This word means that the item is an absolute requirement of this specification.

"MUST NOT" This phrase means that the item is an absolute prohibition of this specification.

"SHOULD" This word means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances to ignore this item, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before choosing a different course.

"SHOULD NOT" This phrase means that there may exist valid reasons in particular circumstances when the listed behavior is acceptable or even useful, but the full implications should be understood and the case carefully weighed before implementing any behavior described with this label.

"MAY" This word means that this item is truly optional. One vendor may choose to include the item because a particular marketplace requires it or because it enhances the product, for example; another vendor may omit the same item.

This document defines many features and parameters, and a valid range for each parameter is usually specified. Equipment (CM and CMTS) requirements are always explicitly stated. Equipment must comply with all mandatory (MUST and MUST NOT) requirements to be considered compliant with this specification. Support of non-mandatory features and parameter values is optional.

1.4 Conventions

In this specification, the following convention applies any time a bit field is displayed in a figure. The bit field should be interpreted by reading the figure from left to right, then top to bottom, with the most-significant bit (MSB) being the first bit read, and the least-significant bit (LSB) being the last bit read.

1.5 Organization of Document

Section 0 provides an overview of the DOCSIS 3.1 series of specifications including the DOCSIS reference architecture and statement of compatibility.

Section 2 includes a list of normative and informative references used within this specification.

Section 3 defines the terms used throughout this specification.

Section 4 defines the abbreviations and acronyms used throughout this specification.

Section 5 provides a technical overview and lists the key features of DOCSIS 3.1 technology for the functional area of this specification; it also describes the key functional assumptions for the DOCSIS 3.1 system.

Section 6 defines the interface and related requirements for a DOCSIS 3.1 CM or CMTS is operating with SC-QAM operation only, with no OFDM/OFDMA operation and for the SC-QAM (Single Carrier QAM) channels with simultaneous operation of SC-QAM and OFDM/OFDMA channels unless otherwise noted for each of: the CM downstream and upstream physical layer; and for the CMTS downstream upstream physical layer.

Section 7 defines the interface and related requirements for operation with the new DOCSIS 3.1 channels, as well as for combined operation of DOCSIS 3.0 and DOCSIS 3.1 channels. This is addressed for each of: the CM downstream and upstream physical layer; and for the CMTS downstream upstream physical layer.

Section 8 defines PHY-MAC convergence – how information is transferred between the MAC layer and the PHY layer – in both the upstream and downstream.

Section 9 defines the requirements supporting Proactive Network Maintenance (PNM).

Annex A presents requirements for QAM Constellation Mappings and Annex B contains the requirement for RFoG Operating Mode.

Annex C and Annex D defines the requirements for additions and modifications for European Specification with SC-QAM operation and additions and modifications for Chinese Specification with SC-QAM operation respectively.

Annex E contains the normative 24-bit Cyclic redundancy check (CRC) Code.

The informative appendices cover various sample codes, use cases, proposed configuration parameters and suggested algorithms.

2 REFERENCES

2.1 Normative References

In order to claim compliance with this specification, it is necessary to conform to the following standards and other works as indicated, in addition to the other requirements of this specification. Notwithstanding, intellectual property rights may be required to use or implement such normative references.

All references are subject to revision, and parties to agreement based on this specification are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the documents listed below.

[CAN/CSA CISPR 22-10]	Information technology equipment - Radio disturbance characteristics - Limits and methods of measurement (Adopted IEC CISPR 22:2008, sixth edition, 2008-09).
[CEA-542]	CEA-542-D: CEA Standard: Cable Television Channel Identification Plan, June 2013.
[DOCSIS DRFI]	Downstream Radio Frequency Interface Specification, CM-SP-DRFI-I14-131120, November 20, 2013, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]	DOCSIS 3.1, MAC and Upper Layer Protocols Interface Specification, CM-SP-MULPIv3.1-I05-150326, March 26, 2015, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DOCSIS PHYv3.0]	DOCSIS 3.0, Physical Layer Specification, CM-SP-PHYv3.0-I12-150305, March 5, 2015, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DVB-C2]	ETSI EN 302 769 V1.2.1: Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Frame structure channel coding and modulation for a second generation digital transmission system for cable systems (DVB-C2), April 2011.
[EG 201 212]	ETSI EG 201 212 V1.2.1: Electrical safety; Classification of interfaces for equipment to be connected to telecommunication networks, November 1998.
[EN 300 429]	ETSI EN 300 429 V1.2.1: Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for cable systems, April 1998.
[EN 50083-1]	CENELEC EN 50083-1: Cable networks for television signals, sound signals and interactive services -- Part 1: Safety requirements, 2002.
[EN 50083-2]	CENELEC EN 50083-2: Cable networks for television signals, sound signals and interactive services -- Part 2: Electromagnetic compatibility for equipment, 2005.
[EN 50083-7]	CENELEC EN 50083-7: Cable networks for television signals, sound signals and interactive services -- Part 7: System performance, April 1996.
[EN 61000-6-1]	CENELEC EN 61000-6-4: Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) -- Part 6-1: Generic standards - Immunity for residential, commercial and light-industrial environments, October 2001.
[EN 61000-6-3]	CENELEC EN 61000-6-3: Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC) -- Part 6-3: Generic standards - Emission standard for residential, commercial and light-industrial environments, 2003.
[FCC15]	Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, Part 15, October 2005.
[FCC76]	Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, Part 76, October 2005.
[GB 8898-2011]	Audio, video and similar electronic apparatus–Safety requirements, Standardization Administration of People's republic of China (SAC), www.sac.gov.cn
[ISO/IEC-61169-24]	ISO/IEC-61169-24, Radio-frequency connectors - Part 24: Sectional specification - Radio frequency coaxial connectors with screw coupling, typically for use in 75 ohm cable distribution systems (type F), 2001.
[ITU-T J.83-B]	Annex B to ITU-T Rec. J.83 (12/2007), Digital multi-program systems for television sound and data services for cable distribution.
[SCTE 02]	ANSI/SCTE 02, Specification for "F" Port, Female Indoor, 2006.

[SCTE RMP]	TS46, SCTE Measurement Recommended Practices for Cable Systems, Fourth Edition, March 2012, http://www.scte.org/devams/cgi-bin/msascartlist.dll/ProductInfo?productcd=TS46.

2.2 Informative References

This specification uses the following informative references.

[CMB1993]	G. Castagnoli, S. Bräuer, and M. Herrmann, "Optimization of Cyclic Redundancy-Check Codes with 24 and 32 Parity Bits", IEEE Transactions on Communications, vol. 41, No. 6, pp. 883-892, June 1993.
[DOCSIS CCAP-OSSIv3.1]	DOCSIS 3.1 CCAP Operations Support System Interface Specification, CM-SP-CCAP-OSSIv3.1-I03-150305, March 5, 2015, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[DOCSIS CM-OSSIv3.1]	DOCSIS 3.1 Cable Modem Operations Support System Interface Specification, CM-SP-CM-OSSIv3.1-I03-150305, March 5, 2015, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
[GB/T 11318.1-1996]	Equipment and components used in cabled distribution systems primarily intended for television and sound signals--Part 1: Generic specifications, China Zhijian Publish House SAC.
[ICES 003 Class A]	Information Technology Equipment (ITE) — Limits and methods of measurement.
[PHYv3.1 CODECHECK]	CM-PHYv3.1_CODECHECK-131029, Number and size of codewords versus grant sizes, Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.http://www.cablelabs.com/wp-content/uploads/specdocs/CM-PHYv3.1_CODECHECK-131029.xlsx
[PHYv3.1 QAM]	PHYv3.1QAM Mapping, bit to constellation symbol mapping for DOCSIS 3.1, April 2014, http://www.cablelabs.com/wp-content/uploads/specdocs/CM-PHYv3.1_QAM-Mapping-140610.zip.

2.3 Reference Acquisition

- Cable Television Laboratories, Inc., 858 Coal Creek Circle, Louisville, CO 80027;
  Phone +1-303-661-9100; Fax +1-303-661-9199; http://www.cablelabs.com
- CENELEC: European Committee for Electro-technical Standardization, http://www.cenelec.org
- Ecma International, http://www.ecma-international.org/
- EIA: Electronic Industries Alliance, http://www.eia.org/new_contact/
- ETSI: European Telecommunications Standards Institute, http://www.etsi.org/services_products/freestandard/home.htm
- Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF) Secretariat, 48377 Fremont Blvd., Suite 117, Fremont, California 94538, USA, Phone: +1-510-492-4080, Fax: +1-510-492-4001, http://www.ietf.org
- ISO: International Organization for Standardization (ISO), http://www.iso.org/iso/en/xsite/contact/contact.html
- ITU: International Telecommunications Union (ITU), http://www.itu.int/home/contact/index.html
- SCTE - Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers Inc., 140 Philips Road, Exton, PA 19341; Phone: 610-363-6888 / 800-542-5040; Fax: 610-363-5898; http://www.scte.org/

3 TERMS AND DEFINITIONS[2]

This specification uses the following terms:

Active Channel	Any channel which has been assigned to a cable modem's transmit channel set either in a registration response message or a dynamic bonding request message, and prior to registration. After registration, the set of active channels also is called the transmit channel set. If the CMTS needs to add, remove, or replace channels in the cable modem's transmit channel set, it uses the dynamic bonding request message with transmit channel configuration encodings to define the de sired new transmit channel set. Note that the set of channels actually bursting upstream from a cable modem is a subset of that cable modem's active channels. In many instances one or all of a cable modem's active channels will not be bursting, but such quiet channels are still considered active channels for that cable modem.
Active Subcarrier	1) In a downstream OFDM channel, any subcarrier other than an excluded subcarrier. 2) In an upstream OFDMA channel, any subcarrier other than an excluded subcarrier (subcarriers in zero-valued minislots as defined in OFDMA profiles, and unused subcarriers are considered active subcarriers because they are used in probes).
Adaptive Equalizer	A circuit in a digital receiver that compensates for channel response impairments. In effect, the circuit creates a digital filter that has approximately the opposite complex frequency response of the channel through which the desired signal was transmitted.
Adaptive Equalizer Tap	See *tap*.
Adaptive Pre-Equalizer	A circuit in a DOCSIS 1.1 or newer cable modem that pre-equalizes or pre-distorts the transmitted upstream signal to compensate for channel response impairments. In effect, the circuit creates a digital filter that has approximately the opposite complex frequency response of the channel through which the desired signal is to be transmitted.
Additive White Gaussian Noise (AWGN)	See *thermal noise*.
Availability	The ratio of time that a service, device, or network is available for use to total time, usually expressed as a percentage of the total time. For example, four-nines availability, written as 99.99%, means that a service is available 8759.12 hours out of 8760 total hours in a year.
BCH	A class of error correction codes named after the inventors Raj Bose, D. K. Ray-Chaudhuri, and Alexis Hocquenghem.
Binary Phase Shift Keying (BPSK)	A form of digital modulation in which two phases separated by 180 degrees support the transmission of one bit per symbol.
Bit Error Rate (BER)	See *bit error ratio*.
Bit Error Ratio (BER)	The ratio of errored bits to the total number of bits transmitted, received, or processed over a defined amount of time. Mathematically, BER = (number of errored bits)/(total number of bits) or BER = (error count in measurement period)/(bit rate * measurement period). Usually expressed in scientific notation format. Also called bit error rate.
Bit Loading	The technique of assigning the optimum number of bits (modulation order) for transmission per subcarrier in an OFDM or OFDMA system.

[2] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1203-2 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Burst	A single continuous RF signal from the cable modem upstream transmitter, from transmitter on to transmitter off.
Burst Noise	1) Another name for impulse noise. 2) A type of noise comprising random and sudden step-like changes between levels, often occurring in semiconductors. Sometimes called popcorn noise.
Cable Modem (CM)	A modulator-demodulator at the subscriber premises intended for use in conveying data communications on a cable television system.
Cable Modem Termination System (CMTS)	A device located at the cable television system headend or distribution hub, which provides complementary functionality to the cable modems to enable data connectivity to a wide-area network.
Carrier-To-Noise Ratio (CNR or C/N)	1) The ratio of signal (or carrier) power to noise power in a defined measurement bandwidth. 2) For OFDM and OFDMA signals, the ratio of average signal power (P_{SIGNAL}) in the occupied bandwidth to the average noise power in the occupied bandwidth given by the noise power spectral density integrated over the same occupied bandwidth, expressed mathematically as $CNR = 10\ log_{10}[P_{SIGNAL}/\int N(f)df]$ dB. Note: This is a lower bound on the actual received signal-to-noise ratio. 3) For SC-QAM, the ratio of the average signal power (P_{SIGNAL}) to the average noise power in the QAM signal's symbol rate bandwidth (N_{SYM}), and expressed mathematically as CNR = 10 $\log_{10}(P_{SIGNAL}/N_{SYM})$ dB or equivalently for an AWGN channel as CNR = 10 $\log_{10}(E_S/N_0)$ dB. Note: For an AWGN channel, $P_{SIGNAL}/N_{SYM} = (E_S/T_S)/(N_0\,B_N) = (E_S/T_S)/(N_0/T_S) = E_S/N_0$, where E_S and T_S are the symbol energy and duration respectively, N_0 is the noise power spectral density, and B_N is the noise bandwidth equal to the symbol rate bandwidth $1/T_S$**.** 4) For analog television signals, the ratio of visual carrier peak envelope power during the transmission of synchronizing pulses (P_{PEP}) to noise power (N), where the visual carrier power measurement bandwidth is nominally 300 kHz and the noise power measurement bandwidth is 4 MHz for NTSC signals. For the latter, the noise measurement bandwidth captures the total noise power present over a 4 MHz band centered within the television channel, and is expressed mathematically as CNR = 10 $\log_{10}(P_{PEP}/N)$ dB. Note: For analog PAL and SECAM channels, the noise measurement bandwidth is a larger value than the 4 MHz specified for NTSC (4.75 MHz, 5.00 MHz, 5.08 MHz, or 5.75 MHz, depending on the specific system).
CEA-542	A Consumer Electronics Association standard that defines a channel identification plan for 6 MHz-wide channel frequency allocations in cable systems.
Ceiling (Ceil)	A mathematical function that returns the lowest-valued integer that is greater than or equal to a given value.
Channel	A portion of the electromagnetic spectrum used to convey one or more RF signals between a transmitter and receiver. May be specified by parameters such as center frequency, bandwidth, or CEA channel number.
Codeword	Forward error correction data block, comprising a combination of information bytes and parity bytes.
Codeword Error Ratio (CER)	The ratio of errored codewords to the total number of codewords transmitted, received, or processed over a defined amount of time. Mathematically, CER = (number of errored codewords)/(total number of codewords). Usually expressed in scientific notation format.
Coefficient	Complex number that establishes the gain of each tap in an adaptive equalizer or adaptive pre-equalizer.

Common Path Distortion (CPD)	Clusters of second and third order distortion beats generated in a diode-like nonlinearity such as a corroded connector in the signal path common to downstream and upstream. The beats tend to be prevalent in the upstream spectrum. When the primary RF signals are digitally modulated signals instead of analog TV channels, the distortions are noise-like rather than clusters of discrete beats.
Complementary Pilots	Subcarriers that carry data, but with a lower modulation order than other data subcarriers in a given minislot. Complementary pilots allow phase tracking along the time axis for frequency offset and phase noise correction, and may be used by the CMTS upstream receiver to enhance signal processing, such as improving the accuracy of center frequency offset acquisition.
Composite Second Order (CSO)	Clusters of second order distortion beats generated in cable network active devices that carry multiple RF signals. When the primary RF signals are digitally modulated signals instead of analog TV channels, the distortions are noise-like rather than clusters of discrete beats.
Composite Triple Beat (CTB)	Clusters of third order distortion beats generated in cable network active devices that carry multiple RF signals. When the primary RF signals are digitally modulated signals instead of analog TV channels, the distortions are noise-like rather than clusters of discrete beats.
Continuous Pilots	Pilots that occur at the same frequency location in every OFDM symbol, and which are used for frequency and phase synchronization.
Convolution	A process of combining two signals in which one of the signals is time-reversed and correlated with the other signal. The output of a filter is the convolution of its impulse response with the input signal.
Convolutional Interleaver	An interleaver in which symbols are sequentially shifted into a bank of "I" registers. Each successive register has "J" symbols more storage than the preceding register. The first interleaver path has zero delay, the second has a J symbol period of delay, the third 2 x J symbol periods of delay, etc., up to the I^{th} path which has (I - 1) x J symbol periods of delay. This process is reversed in the receiver's deinterleaver so that the net delay of each symbol is the same through the interleaver and deinterleaver. See also *interleaver*.
Correlation	1) A process of combining two signals in which the signals are multiplied sample-by-sample and summed; the process is repeated at each sample as one signal is slid in time past the other. 2) Cross-correlation is a measure of similarity between two signals.
Cross Modulation (XMOD)	A form of television signal distortion in which modulation from one or more television signals is imposed on another signal or signals.
Customer Premises Equipment (CPE)	Device such as a cable modem or set-top at the subscriber's or other end user's location. May be provided by the end user or the service provider.
Cyclic Prefix (CP)	A copy of the end of a symbol that is added to the beginning of the same symbol, in order to help mitigate the effects of micro-reflections and similar impairments.
Data-Subcarrier CNR	The ratio of the time-average power of a single data subcarrier to the underlying noise power, with the noise measured in a bandwidth equal to the nominal subcarrier spacing.
Decibel (dB)	Ratio of two power levels expressed mathematically as $dB = 10\log_{10}(P_1/P_2)$.
Decibel Carrier (dBc)	Ratio of the power of a signal to the power of a reference carrier, expressed mathematically as $dBc = 10\log_{10}(P_{signal}/P_{carrier})$.
Decibel Millivolt (dBmV)	Unit of RF power expressed in terms of voltage, defined as decibels relative to 1 millivolt, where 1 millivolt equals 13.33 nanowatts in a 75 ohm impedance. Mathematically, $dBmV = 20\log_{10}(\text{value in mV}/1\ \text{mV})$.

Decibel Reference (dBr)	Ratio of a signal level to a reference signal level. When the signals are noise or noise-like, the measurement bandwidth for the two signals is the same. When both signal levels are in the same units of power, the ratio is expressed mathematically as $dBr = 10\log_{10}(P_{signal}/P_{reference})$. When both signal levels are in the same units of voltage, and assuming the same impedance, the ratio is expressed mathematically as $dBr = 20\log_{10}(V_{signal}/V_{reference})$.
Discrete Fourier Transform (DFT)	Part of the family of mathematical methods known as Fourier analysis, which defines the "decomposition" of signals into sinusoids. Discrete Fourier transform defines the transformation from the time to the frequency domain. See also *inverse discrete Fourier transform*.
Distortion	See *linear distortion* and *nonlinear distortion*.
Distribution Hub	A facility in a cable network which performs the functions of a headend for customers in its immediate area, and which receives some or all of its content for transmission from a master headend in the same metropolitan or regional area.
DOCSIS	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications. A group of specifications that defines interoperability between cable modem termination systems and cable modems.
DOCSIS 1.x	Abbreviation for DOCSIS versions 1.0 or 1.1.
Downstream	1) The direction of RF signal transmission from headend or hub site to subscriber. In North American cable networks, the downstream or forward spectrum may occupy frequencies from just below 54 MHz to as high as 1002 MHz or more. 2) The DOCSIS 3.1 downstream is 258 MHz (optional 108 MHz) to 1218 MHz (optional 1794 MHz).
Downstream Channel	A portion of the electromagnetic spectrum used to convey one or more RF signals from the headend or hub site to the subscriber premises. For example, a single CEA channel's bandwidth is 6 MHz, and a downstream DOCSIS 3.1 OFDM channel's bandwidth can be up to 192 MHz.
Drop	Coaxial cable and related hardware that connects a residence or other service location to a tap in the nearest coaxial feeder cable. Also called drop cable or subscriber drop.
Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP)	A protocol that defines the dynamic or temporary assignment of Internet protocol addresses, so that the addresses may be reused when they are no longer needed by the devices to which they were originally assigned.
Dynamic Range Window (DRW)	1) DOCSIS 3.0 – The range, in decibels, of the maximum power difference between multiple transmitters in a cable modem that is operating in multiple transmit channel mode. 2) DOCSIS 3.1 – The range, in decibels, of the maximum difference in power per 1.6 MHz between multiple transmitters in a cable modem that is operating in multiple transmit channel mode.
Encompassed Spectrum	1) For an OFDM or OFDMA channel, the range of frequencies from the center frequency of the channel's lowest active subcarrier minus half the subcarrier spacing, to the center frequency of the channel's highest active subcarrier plus half the subcarrier spacing. 2) For an SC-QAM channel, the encompassed spectrum is the signal bandwidth (i.e., 6 MHz or 8 MHz in the downstream; 1.6 MHz, 3.2 MHz, and 6.4 MHz in the upstream). 3) For the RF output of a downstream or upstream port including multiple OFDM, OFDMA, and/or SC-QAM channels, the range of frequencies from the lowest frequency of the encompassed spectrum of the lowest frequency channel to the highest frequency of the encompassed spectrum of the highest frequency channel.
Equalizer Tap	See *tap*.

Equivalent Legacy DOCSIS Channels	Within a downstream OFDM channel, an integer number equal to ceil(modulated spectrum in MHz / 6).
Excluded Subcarrier	Subcarrier that cannot be used because another type of service is using the subcarrier's frequency or a permanent ingressor is present on the frequency. The CMTS or cable modem is administratively configured to not transmit on excluded subcarriers.
Exclusion Band	A set of contiguous subcarriers within the OFDM or OFDMA channel bandwidth that are set to zero-value by the transmitter to reduce interference to other co-existing transmissions such as legacy SC-QAM signals.
F Connector	A threaded, nominally 75-ohm impedance RF connector, whose electrical and physical specifications are defined in various SCTE standards. Commonly used on smaller sizes of coaxial cable such as 59-series and 6-series, and on mating interfaces of subscriber drop components, customer premises equipment, and some headend and test equipment.
Fast Fourier Transform (FFT)	An algorithm to compute the discrete Fourier transform from the time domain to the frequency domain, typically far more efficiently than methods such as correlation or solving simultaneous linear equations. See also *discrete Fourier transform*, *inverse discrete Fourier transform*, and *inverse fast Fourier transform*.
FFT Duration	Reciprocal of subcarrier spacing. For example, with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing, FFT duration is 20 µs, and with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing, FFT duration is 40 µs. Sometimes called "useful symbol duration." See also *symbol duration*.
Fiber Node	See *node*.
Filler Subcarrier	A zero bit loaded subcarrier that is inserted in an OFDM symbol when no data is transmitted, or when the number of codewords has exceeded the upper limit, or when it is not possible to begin a new codeword because of insufficient space to include a next codeword pointer.
Floor	A mathematical function that returns the highest-valued integer that is less than or equal to a given value.
Forward	See *downstream*.
Forward Error Correction (FEC)	A method of error detection and correction in which redundant information is sent with a data payload in order to allow the receiver to reconstruct the original data if an error occurs during transmission.
Frequency Division Multiple Access (FDMA)	A multiple access technology that accommodates multiple users by allocating each user's traffic to one or more discrete frequency bands, channels, or subcarriers.
Frequency Division Multiplexing (FDM)	The transmission of multiple signals through the same medium at the same time. Each signal is on a separate frequency or assigned to its own channel. For example, an analog TV signal might be carried on CEA channel 7 (174 MHz-180 MHz), a 256-QAM digital video signal on channel 8 (180-186 MHz), and so on.
Frequency Response	A complex quantity describing the flatness of a channel or specified frequency range, and which has two components: amplitude (magnitude)-versus-frequency, and phase-versus-frequency.
Gigahertz (GHz)	One billion (10^9) hertz. See also *hertz*.
Group Delay (GD)	The negative derivative of phase with respect to frequency, expressed mathematically as $GD = -(d\varphi/d\omega)$ and stated in units of time such as nanoseconds or microseconds.
Group Delay Ripple	Group delay variation which has a sinusoidal or scalloped sinusoidal shape across a specified frequency range.

Group Delay Variation (GDV) or Group Delay Distortion	The difference in group delay between one frequency and another in a circuit, device, or system.
Guard Interval	In the time domain, the period from the end of one symbol to the beginning of the next symbol, which includes the cyclic prefix and applied transmit windowing. Also called guard time.
Guard Band	A narrow range of frequencies in which user data is not transmitted, located at the lower and upper edges of a channel, at the lower and upper edges of a gap within a channel, or in between channels. A guard band minimizes interference from adjacent signals, but is not needed in the case of adjoining OFDM channels that are synchronous with identical FFT size and cyclic prefix that would not mutually interfere.
Harmonic Related Carriers (HRC)	A method of spacing channels on a cable television system defined in [CEA-542], in which visual carriers are multiples of 6.0003 MHz. A variation of HRC channelization used in some European cable networks is based upon multiples of 8 MHz.
Headend	A central facility that is used for receiving, processing, and combining broadcast, narrowcast and other signals to be carried on a cable network. Somewhat analogous to a telephone company's central office. Location from which the DOCSIS cable plant fans out to subscribers. See also *distribution hub*.
Header	Protocol control information located at the beginning of a protocol data unit.
Hertz (Hz)	A unit of frequency equivalent to one cycle per second.
Hum Modulation	Amplitude distortion of a signal caused by the modulation of that signal by components of the power source (e.g., 60 Hz) and/or its harmonics.
Hybrid Fiber/Coax (HFC)	A broadband bidirectional shared-media transmission system or network architecture using optical fibers between the headend and fiber nodes, and coaxial cable distribution from the fiber nodes to the subscriber locations.
Impedance	The combined opposition to current in a component, circuit, device, or transmission line that contains both resistance and reactance. Represented by the symbol Z and expressed in ohms.
Impulse Noise	Noise that is bursty in nature, characterized by non-overlapping transient disturbances. May be periodic (e.g., automobile ignition noise or high-voltage power line corona noise), or random (e.g., switching noise or atmospheric noise from thunderstorms). Generally of short duration – from about 1 microsecond to a few tens of microseconds – with a fast risetime and moderately fast falltime.
Incremental Related Carriers (IRC)	A method of spacing channels on a cable television system defined in [CEA-542], in which all visual carriers except channels 5 and 6 are offset +12.5 kHz with respect to the standard channel plan. Channels 5 and 6 are offset +2.0125 MHz with respect to the standard channel plan. See also *standard frequencies*.
In-Phase (I)	The real part of a vector that represents a signal, with 0 degrees phase angle relative to a reference carrier. See also *quadrature (Q)*.
Interleaver	A subset or layer of the forward error correction process, in which the data to be transmitted is rearranged or mixed such that the original bits, bytes, or symbols are no longer adjacent. The latter provides improved resistance to various forms of interference, especially burst or impulse noise. Interleaving may be performed in the time domain, frequency domain, or both. A de-interleaver in the receiver rearranges the bits, bytes, or symbols into their original order prior to additional error correction.

International Electrotechnical Commission (IEC)	An organization that prepares and publishes international standards for electrical, electronic and related technologies.
International Organization for Standardization (ISO)	An organization that develops voluntary international standards for technology, business, manufacturing, and other industries.
Internet Engineering Task Force (IETF)	A body responsible, among other things, for developing standards used in the Internet.
Internet Protocol (IP)	A network layer protocol that supports connectionless internetwork service, and which contains addressing and control information that allows packets to be routed. Widely used in the public Internet as well as private networks. The vast majority of IP devices support IP version 4 (IPv4) defined in RFC-791, although support for IP version 6 (IPv6, RFC-2460) continues to increase.
Internet Protocol Detail Record	The record formatter and exporter functions of the CMTS that provides information about Internet protocol-based service usage, and other activities that can be used by operational support systems and business support systems.
Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform (IDFT)	Part of the family of mathematical methods known as Fourier analysis, which defines the "decomposition" of signals into sinusoids. Inverse discrete Fourier transform defines the transformation from the frequency to the time domain. See also *discrete Fourier transform*.
Inverse Fast Fourier Transform (IFFT)	An algorithm to compute the inverse discrete Fourier transform from the frequency domain to the time domain, typically far more efficiently than methods such as correlation or solving simultaneous linear equations. See also *discrete Fourier transform*, *fast Fourier transform*, and *inverse discrete Fourier transform*.
Jitter	The fluctuation in the arrival time of a regularly scheduled event such as a clock edge or a packet in a stream of packets. Jitter is defined as fluctuations above 10 Hz.
Kilohertz (kHz)	One thousand (10^3) hertz. See also *hertz*.
Latency	1) The time taken for a signal element to propagate through a transmission medium or device. 2) The delay between a device's request for network access and when permission is granted for transmission. 3) The delay from when a frame is received by a device to when the frame is forwarded via the device's destination port.
Layer	One of seven subdivisions of the Open System Interconnection reference model.
Linear Distortion	A class of distortions that occurs when the overall response of the system (including transmitter, cable plant, and receiver) differs from the ideal or desired response. This class of distortions maintains a linear, or 1:1, signal-to-distortion relationship (increasing signal by 1 dB causes distortion to increase by 1 dB), and often occurs when amplitude-versus-frequency and/or phase-versus-frequency depart from ideal. Linear distortions include impairments such as micro-reflections, amplitude ripple, and group delay variation, and can be corrected by an adaptive equalizer.
Low Density Parity Check (LDPC)	An error correction code used in DOCSIS 3.1. LDPC is more robust than Reed-Solomon error correction codes.
MAC Address	The "built-in" hardware address of a device connected to a shared medium.
MAC Frame	MAC header plus optional protocol data unit.
MAC Management Message (MMM)	Unclassified traffic between the CMTS and cable modem. Examples include MAC domain descriptor, ranging-request, ranging-response, and upstream channel descriptor messages.

Media Access Control (MAC)	A sublayer of the Open Systems Interconnection model's data link layer (Layer 2), which manages access to shared media such as the Open Systems Interconnection model's physical layer (Layer 1).
Megahertz (MHz)	One million (10^6) hertz. See also *hertz*.
Micro-reflection	A short time delay echo or reflection caused by an impedance mismatch. A micro-reflection's time delay is typically in the range from less than a symbol period to several symbol periods.
Microsecond (µs)	One millionth (10^{-6}) of a second
Millisecond (ms)	One thousandth (10^{-3}) of a second
Millivolt (mV)	One thousandth (10^{-3}) of a volt
Minislot	In DOCSIS 3.0 and earlier TDMA applications, a unit of time for upstream transmission that is an integer multiple of 6.25 µs units of time called "ticks." In DOCSIS 3.1 OFDMA applications, a group of dedicated subcarriers, all with the same modulation order, for upstream transmission by a given cable modem. For both TDMA and OFDMA, a cable modem may be assigned one or more minislots in a transmission burst.
Modulated Spectrum	1) Downstream modulated spectrum – Encompassed spectrum minus the excluded subcarriers within the encompassed spectrum, where excluded subcarriers include all the individually excluded subcarriers and all the subcarriers comprising excluded subbands. This also is the spectrum comprising all active subcarriers. Note: For this definition, the width of an active or excluded subcarrier is equal to the subcarrier spacing. 2) Upstream modulated spectrum – The spectrum comprising all non-zero-valued subcarriers of a cable modem's OFDMA transmission, resulting from the exercised transmit opportunities. Note: For this definition, the width of a transmitted subcarrier is equal to the subcarrier spacing.
Modulation Error Ratio (MER)	The ratio of average signal constellation power to average constellation error power – that is, digital complex baseband signal-to-noise ratio – expressed in decibels. In effect, MER is a measure of how spread out the symbol points in a constellation are. More specifically, MER is a measure of the cluster variance that exists in a transmitted or received waveform at the output of an ideal receive matched filter. MER includes the effects of all discrete spurious, noise, carrier leakage, clock lines, synthesizer products, linear and nonlinear distortions, other undesired transmitter and receiver products, ingress, and similar in-channel impairments.
Modulation Rate	The signaling rate of the upstream modulator (for example, 1280 to 5120 kHz). In S-CDMA it is the chip rate. In TDMA, it is the channel symbol rate.
Multiple Transmit Channel (MTC) [Mode]	Operational mode in a cable modem that enables the simultaneous transmission of more than one upstream channel.
Nanosecond (ns)	One billionth (10^{-9}) of a second.
National Television System Committee (NTSC)	The committee that defined the analog television broadcast standards (black and white in 1941, color in 1953) used in North America and some other parts of the world. The NTSC standards are named after the committee.
Next Codeword Pointer (NCP)	A message block used to identify where a codeword begins.
Node	An optical-to-electrical (RF) interface between a fiber optic cable and the coaxial cable distribution network. Also called fiber node.

Noise	Typically any undesired signal or signals—other than discrete carriers or discrete distortion products—in a device, communications circuit, channel or other specified frequency range. See also *impulse noise*, *phase noise*, and *thermal noise*.
Nonlinear Distortion	A class of distortions caused by a combination of small signal nonlinearities in active devices and by signal compression that occurs as RF output levels reach the active device's saturation point. Nonlinear distortions generally have a nonlinear signal-to-distortion amplitude relationship—for instance, 1:2, 1:3 or worse (increasing signal level by 1 dB causes distortion to increase by 2 dB, 3 dB, or more). The most common nonlinear distortions are even order distortions such as composite second order, and odd order distortions such as composite triple beat. Passive components can generate nonlinear distortions under certain circumstances.
Occupied Bandwidth	1) Downstream – The sum of the bandwidth in all standard channel frequency allocations (e.g., 6 MHz spaced CEA channels) that are occupied by the OFDM channel. Even if one active subcarrier of an OFDM channel is placed in a given standard channel frequency allocation, that standard channel frequency allocation in its entirety is said to be occupied by the OFDM channel. 2) Upstream – a) For a single OFDMA channel, the sum of the bandwidth in all the subcarriers of that OFDMA channel which are not excluded. The upstream occupied bandwidth is calculated as the number of subcarriers which are not excluded, multiplied by the subcarrier spacing. b) For the transmit channel set, the sum of the occupied bandwidth of all OFDMA channels plus the bandwidth of the legacy channels (counted as 1.25 times the modulation rate for each legacy channel) in a cable modem's transmit channel set. The combined bandwidth of all the minislots in the channel is normally smaller than the upstream occupied bandwidth due to the existence of unused subcarriers. The bandwidth occupied by an OFDMA probe with a skip value of zero is equal to the upstream occupied bandwidth.
Orthogonal	Distinguishable from or independent such that there is no interaction or interference. In OFDM, subcarrier orthogonality is achieved by spacing the subcarriers at the reciprocal of the symbol period (T), also called symbol duration time. This spacing results in the sinc (sin x/x) frequency response curves of the subcarriers lining up so that the peak of one subcarrier's response curve falls on the first nulls of the lower and upper adjacent subcarriers' response curves. Orthogonal subcarriers each have exactly an integer number of cycles in the interval T.
Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA)	An OFDM-based multiple-access scheme in which different subcarriers or groups of subcarriers are assigned to different users.
OFDMA Channel Bandwidth	Occupied bandwidth of an upstream OFDMA channel. See also occupied bandwidth.
Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM)	A data transmission method in which a large number of closely-spaced or overlapping very-narrow-bandwidth orthogonal QAM signals are transmitted within a given channel. Each of the QAM signals, called a subcarrier, carries a small percentage of the total payload at a very low data rate.
OFDM Channel Bandwidth	Occupied bandwidth of a downstream OFDM channel. See also occupied bandwidth.
OFDMA Frame	Group of a configurable number, K, of consecutive OFDMA symbols. A frame comprises either a group of probing symbols or a column of minislots across the spectrum of the OFDMA channel. Multiple modems can share the same OFDMA frame simultaneously by transmitting data and pilots on allocated subcarriers within the frame.

Phase Noise	Rapid, short-term, random fluctuations in the phase of a wave, caused by time domain instabilities.
PHY Link Channel (PLC)	A set of contiguous OFDM subcarriers (eight for 4K FFT and 16 for 8K FFT), constituting a "sub-channel" of the OFDM channel, which conveys physical layer parameters from the CMTS to cable modem.
PHY Link Channel Frame	In downstream OFDM transmission, a group of 128 consecutive OFDM symbols, beginning with the first OFDM symbol following the last OFDM symbol containing the PLC preamble.
Physical Layer (PHY)	Layer 1 in the Open System Interconnection architecture; the layer that provides services to transmit bits or groups of bits over a transmission link between open systems and which entails electrical, mechanical and handshaking procedures.
Picosecond (ps)	One trillionth (10^{-12}) of a second
Pilot	A dedicated OFDM subcarrier that may be used for such purposes as channel estimation (measurement of channel condition), synchronization, and other purposes. See also *complementary pilots*, *continuous pilots* and *scattered pilots*.
$\mathbf{P_{load\_min\_set}}$	Reduction of channel n maximum transmit power with respect to Phi_n, when multiple transmit channel mode is enabled. The value of Pload_min_set is sent by the CMTS to the cable modem.
$\mathbf{P_{load\_n}}$	Reduction of channel n reported transmit power with respect to P_{hi_n}, where $P_{hi\_n} = \min(P_{max} - G_{const})$ over all burst profiles used by the cable modem in channel n.
Preamble	A data sequence transmitted at or near the beginning of a frame, allowing the receiver time to achieve lock and synchronization of transmit and receive clocks.
Pre-equalizer	See *adaptive pre-equalizer*.
profile	A set of parameters that defines how information is transmitted from a CMTS to a cable modem, or from a cable modem to a CMTS. Examples of some of the parameters defined in a profile include modulation order, forward error correction, preamble, and guard interval.
Protocol	A description of a set of rules and formats that specify how devices on a network exchange data.
Pseudo Random Binary Sequence (PRBS)	A deterministic sequence of bits that appears to be random, that is, with no apparent pattern. Also called pseudo random bitstream.
QAM Signal	Analog RF signal that uses quadrature amplitude modulation to convey information such as digital data.
Quadrature (Q)	The imaginary part of a vector that represents a signal, with 90 degrees phase angle relative to a reference carrier. See also *in-phase (I)*.
Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (QAM)	A modulation technique in which an analog signal's amplitude and phase vary to convey information, such as digital data. The name "quadrature" indicates that amplitude and phase can be represented in rectangular coordinates as in-phase (I) and quadrature (Q) components of a signal.
Quadrature Phase Shift Keying (QPSK)	A form of digital modulation in which four phase states separated by 90 degrees support the transmission of two bits per symbol. Also called 4-QAM.
Radio Frequency (RF)	That portion of the electromagnetic spectrum from a few kilohertz to just below the frequency of infrared light.

Randomizer	A subset or layer of the forward error correction process, in which the data to be transmitted is randomized using a PRBS scrambler. Randomization spreads out the energy across the spectrum, ensures uniform population of all of the data constellation points, and minimizes the likelihood of long strings of all zeros or ones.
Receive Channel Set (RCS)	The combination of legacy SC-QAM and OFDM channels that the cable modem has been configured to receive by the CMTS
Reed-Solomon (R-S)	A class of error correction codes named after the inventors Irving Reed and Gustave Solomon. The forward error correction in DOCSIS 3.0 and earlier uses Reed-Solomon error correction codes.
Return	See *upstream*.
Return Loss (R)	The ratio of incident power P_I to reflected power P_R, expressed mathematically as $R = 10\log_{10}(P_I/P_R)$, where R is return loss in decibels.
Reverse	See *upstream*.
RF Channel	See *channel*.
Roll-off Period (RP)	Duration in microseconds, or the equivalent number of IFFT output sample periods, used for the ramping up (or ramping down) transition region of the Tukey raised-cosine window, which is applied at the beginning (and end) of an OFDM symbol. A sampling rate of 102.4 MHz is assumed for the upstream and 204.8 MHz is assumed for the downstream. The roll-off period contains an even number of samples with weighting coefficients between, but not including, 0 and 1. The rolloff, which ramps down at the end of a symbol, overlaps the mirror-image rolloff which ramps up at the beginning of the following symbol, and the two segments add to unity. In the case of no transmit windowing, the roll-off duration is zero and there are no samples in the roll-off period.
Root Mean Square (RMS)	A statistical measure of the magnitude of a varying quantity such as current or voltage, where the RMS value of a set of instantaneous values over, say, one cycle of alternating current is equal to the square root of the mean value of the squares of the original values.
Scattered Pilots	Pilots that do not occur at the same frequency in every symbol, and which may be used for channel estimation. The locations of scattered pilots change from one OFDM symbol to another.
Scrambler	See *randomizer*.
Signal-To-Composite Noise (SCN)	The ratio of signal power to composite noise power in a defined measurement bandwidth, where composite noise is the combination of thermal noise and composite intermodulation distortion (noise-like distortion).
Single Carrier Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (SC-QAM)	Data transmission method used in DOCSIS 1.x, 2.0 and 3.0, in which each downstream or upstream RF channel slot carries only one QAM signal.
Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers (SCTE)	A non-profit professional association that specializes in professional development, standards, certification, and information for the cable telecommunications industry.
Spectral Edge	For OFDM or OFDMA channel: The center frequency of the channel's lowest active subcarrier minus half the subcarrier spacing; and the center frequency of the channel's highest active subcarrier plus half the subcarrier spacing. For OFDM or OFDMA exclusion band: The center frequency of the channel's highest active subcarrier plus half the subcarrier spacing adjacent to the beginning of an exclusion band, and the center frequency of the channel's lowest active subcarrier minus half the subcarrier spacing adjacent to the end of the same exclusion band.

Standard Frequencies (STD)	Method of spacing channels on a cable television system defined in [CEA-542]. Channels 2-6 and 7-13 use the same frequencies as over-the-air channels 2-6 and 7-13. Other cable channels below Ch. 7 down to 91.25 MHz and above Ch. 13 are spaced in 6 MHz increments.
Subcarrier	One of a large number of closely spaced or overlapping orthogonal narrow-bandwidth data signals within an OFDM channel. Also called a tone. See also *excluded subcarrier*, *unused subcarrier*, and *used subcarrier*.
Subcarrier Clock Frequency	Frequency of the clock associated with the composite generation of all subcarrier signals in an OFDM/OFDMA symbol transmission, nominally 25 kHz or 50 kHz; the subcarrier clock frequency determines the subcarrier spacing (in the frequency domain).
Subcarrier Spacing	The frequency spacing between centers of adjacent subcarriers in an OFDM/OFDMA symbol, nominally equal to 25 kHz or 50 kHz.
Sublayer	A subdivision of a layer in the Open System Interconnection reference model.
Subscriber	End user or customer connected to a cable network.
Subslot	A subdivision or subunit of a minislot that fits within a minislot's boundaries, used to provide multiple transmission opportunities for bandwidth requests. Data subcarriers within a subslot use QPSK, and are not FEC encoded.
Symbol Duration	Sum of the FFT duration and cyclic prefix duration. Symbol duration is greater than FFT duration, because symbol duration includes a prepended cyclic prefix.
Synchronous Code Division Multiple Access (S-CDMA)	A multiple access physical layer technology in which different transmitters can share a channel simultaneously. The individual transmissions are kept distinct by assigning each transmission an orthogonal "code." Orthogonality is maintained by all transmitters being precisely synchronized with one another.
Tap	(1) In the feeder portion of a coaxial cable distribution network, a passive device that comprises a combination of a directional coupler and splitter to "tap" off some of the feeder cable RF signal for connection to the subscriber drop. So-called self-terminating taps used at feeder ends-of-line are splitters only and do not usually contain a directional coupler. Also called a multitap. (2) The part of an adaptive equalizer where some of the main signal is "tapped" off, and which includes a delay element and multiplier. The gain of the multipliers is set by the equalizer's coefficients. (3) One term of the difference equation in a finite impulse response or an infinite impulse response filter. The difference equation of a FIR follows: $y(n) = b_0x(n) + b_1x(n-1) + b_2x(n-2) + \ldots + b_Nx(n-N)$.
Thermal Noise	The fluctuating voltage across a resistance due to the random motion of free charge caused by thermal agitation. Also called Johnson-Nyquist noise. When the probability distribution of the voltage is Gaussian, the noise is called additive white Gaussian noise (AWGN).
Time Division Multiple Access (TDMA)	A multiple access technology that enables multiple users to access, in sequence, a single RF channel by allocating unique time slots to each user of the channel.
Transit Delay	The time required for a signal to propagate or travel from one point in a network to another point in the network, for example, from the CMTS to the most distant cable modem. Also called propagation delay.
Transmit Channel Set (TCS)	The combination of legacy SC-QAM channels and OFDMA channels that may be transmitted by a cable modem.
Transmit Pre-Equalizer	See *adaptive pre-equalizer*.

Under-Grant Hold Bandwidth (UGHB)	The minimum grant bandwidth that can be allocated beyond which the spurious emissions limits (in dBc) are no longer relaxed as the based on grant size continues to decrease. Defined mathematically as UGHB = (100% grant spectrum)/(under-grant hold number of users).
Under-Grant Hold Number of Users (UGHU)	The maximum number of equal-size grants that can be allocated beyond which the spurious emissions limits (in dBc) are no longer relaxed as the number of based on grants size continues to increase. Defined mathematically as UGHU = floor[$0.2 + 10^{((-44 - \text{SpurFloor})/10)}$].
Unused Subcarrier	Subcarriers in an upstream OFDMA channel which are not excluded, but are not assigned to minislots. For example, unused subcarriers may occur when the number of subcarriers between excluded subcarriers is not divisible by the fixed number of consecutive subcarriers which comprise every OFDMA minislot. Thus, after constructing minislots from a group of consecutive non-excluded subcarriers, the remainder will become unused subcarriers. Unused subcarriers are not used for data transmission, but still carry power during probe transmission.
Upstream	1) The direction of RF signal transmission from subscriber to headend or hub site. Also called return or reverse. In most North American cable networks, the legacy upstream spectrum occupies frequencies from 5 MHz to as high as 42 MHz. 2) The DOCSIS 3.1 upstream is 5-204 MHz, with support for 5-42 MHz, 5-65 MHz, 5-85 MHz and 5-117 MHz.
Upstream Channel	A portion of the electromagnetic spectrum used to convey one or more RF signals from the subscriber premises to the headend or hub site. For example, a commonly used DOCSIS 3.0 upstream channel bandwidth is 6.4 MHz. A DOCSIS 3.1 upstream OFDMA channel bandwidth may be as much as 96 MHz.
Upstream Channel Descriptor (UCD)	The MAC management message used to communicate the characteristics of the upstream physical layer to the cable modems.
Used Subcarrier	An upstream subcarrier that is part of a minislot. The cable modem transmits data, ranging, and probes on these subcarriers when instructed to do so by MAP messages. MULPI term.
Useful Symbol Duration	See *FFT duration*.
Vector	A quantity that expresses magnitude and direction (or phase), and is represented graphically using an arrow.
Windowing	A technique to shape data in the time domain, in which a segment of the start of the IFFT output is appended to the end of the IFFT output to taper or roll-off the edges of the data using a raised cosine function. Windowing maximizes the capacity of the channel by sharpening the edges of the OFDM/A signal in the frequency domain.
Word	Information part of a codeword, without parity. See also *codeword*.
Zero Bit-Loaded-Subcarrier	A subcarrier with power but not carrying user data, although it could be modulated by a PRBS.
Zero-Valued Subcarrier	A subcarrier with no power. See also *excluded subcarrier*.
Zero-Valued Minislot	A minislot composed of zero-valued subcarriers and no pilots.

4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

This specification uses the following abbreviations and acronyms:

μs	Microsecond
ANSI	American National Standards Institute
AWGN	additive white Gaussian noise
BCH	Bose, Ray-Chaudhuri, Hocquenghem [codes]
BER	1) bit error ratio; 2) bit error rate
BPSK	binary phase shift keying
BW	bandwidth
CableLabs	Cable Television Laboratories, Inc.
CEA	Consumer Electronics Association
ceil	ceiling
CENELEC	European Committee for Electrotechnical Standardization
CER	codeword error ratio
CL	1) convergence layer; 2) CableLabs
CM	cable modem
CMCI	cable modem-to-customer premises equipment interface
CMTS	cable modem termination system
CNR	carrier to noise ratio
CP	1) cyclic prefix; 2) complementary pilot
CPE	customer premises equipment
CPU	central processing unit
CRC	cyclic redundancy check
CS	cyclic suffix
CSO	composite second order
CTB	composite triple beat
CW	1) continuous wave; 2) codeword
dB	decibel
dBc	decibel carrier
dBmV	decibel millivolt
dBr	decibel reference
DCID	downstream channel identifier
DEPI	downstream external PHY interface
DFT	discrete Fourier transform
DHCP	dynamic host configuration protocol
DLS	DOCSIS light sleep [mode]
DOCSIS	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications
DOCSIS 1.x	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications version 1.0 or 1.1
DOCSIS 2.0	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications version 2.0
DOCSIS 3.0	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications version 3.0

DOCSIS 3.1	Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications version 3.1
DRFI	[DOCSIS] Downstream Radio Frequency Interface [Specification]
DRW	dynamic range window
DS	downstream
DSG	DOCSIS Set-top Gateway [Interface Specification]
DTI	DOCSIS Timing Interface [Specification]
DVB	Digital Video Broadcasting [Project]
DVB-C2	"Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Frame structure channel coding and modulation for a second generation digital transmission system for cable systems (DVB-C2)"
eDOCSIS	embedded Data-Over-Cable Service Interface Specifications
EM	energy management [message]
EMC	electromagnetic compatibility
EN	European Standard (*Européen Norme*)
EQAM	edge quadrature amplitude modulation [modulator]
ERMI	Edge Resource Manager Interface [Specification]
ETSI	European Telecommunications Standards Institute
FCC	Federal Communications Commission
FDM	frequency division multiplexing
FDMA	frequency division multiple access
FEC	forward error correction
FFT	fast Fourier transform
FIR	finite impulse response
FR	fine ranging
ft	1) foot; 2) feet
FTTH	fiber to the home
GB	[Chinese] national standard (*guobiao*)
GB/T	[Chinese] recommended national standard (*guobiao tuijian*)
GF	Galois field
GHz	gigahertz
GT	guard time
HFC	hybrid fiber/coax
HRC	harmonic related carriers
Hz	hertz
I	in-phase
ICI	inter-carrier interference
I-CMTS	integrated cable modem termination system
ID	identifier
IDFT	inverse discrete Fourier transform
IEC	International Electrotechnical Commission
IETF	Internet Engineering Task Force
IFFT	inverse fast Fourier transform
IP	Internet protocol

IPDR	Internet protocol detail record
IPv4	Internet protocol version 4
IPv6	Internet protocol version 6
IR	initial ranging
IRC	incremental related carriers
ISI	inter-symbol interference
ISO	International Organization for Standardization
ITU	International Telecommunication Union
ITU-T	ITU Telecommunication Standardization Sector
kb	kilobit
kHz	kilohertz
L2VPN	layer 2 virtual private network
LAN	local area network
LDPC	low-density parity check
LFSR	linear feedback shift register
LLR	log-likelihood ratio
log	logarithm
LSB	least significant bit
LTE	long term evolution
MAC	media access control
MB	message block
MC	message channel
M-CMTS	modular cable modem termination system
MER	modulation error ratio
MHz	megahertz
ms	millisecond
MSB	most significant bit
MSM	maximum scheduled minislots
Msym/s	megasymbols per second
MTC	multiple transmit channel [mode]
MULPI	MAC and upper layer protocols interface
NCP	next codeword pointer
NMS	network management system
ns	nanosecond
NSI	network side interface
NTSC	National Television System Committee
OFDM	orthogonal frequency division multiplexing
OFDMA	orthogonal frequency division multiple access
OOB	out-of-band
OSSI	operations support system interface
P	pilot

PAPR	peak-to-average power ratio
PDU	protocol data unit
PER	packet error ratio
PHY	physical layer
pk-pk	peak-to-peak
Pkt	packet
PLC	PHY link channel
PN	pseudorandom number
PRBS	pseudo-random binary sequence
Pre-eq	pre-equalization
ps	picosecond
PSD	power spectral density
Ptr	pointer
Q	quadrature
QAM	quadrature amplitude modulation
QC-LDPC	quasi-cyclic low-density parity check
QoS	quality of service
QPSK	quadrature phase shift keying
RC	raised cosine
RCS	receive channel set
REQ	request
RF	radio frequency
RFC	request for comments
RFI	radio frequency interface
RFoG	radio frequency over glass
RMS	root mean square
RP	roll-off period
R-S	Reed-Solomon
RX	1) receive; 2) receiver
s	second
SAC	Standardization Administration of the People's Republic of China
S-CDMA	synchronous code division multiple access
SCN	signal-to-composite noise [ratio]
SC-QAM	single carrier quadrature amplitude modulation
SCTE	Society of Cable Telecommunications Engineers
SEC	security
SID	service identifier
SNMP	simple network management protocol
SNR	signal-to-noise ratio
TCM	Trellis coded modulation
TCS	transmit channel set

TDM	time division multiplexing
TDMA	time division multiple access
TEI	TDM emulation interface
TS	time stamp
TV	television
TX	1) transmit; 2) transmitter
UCD	upstream channel descriptor
UGHB	under-grant hold bandwidth
UGHU	under-grant hold number of users
UID	unique identifier
URL	uniform resource locator
US	upstream
XOR	exclusive or

5 OVERVIEW AND FUNCTIONAL ASSUMPTIONS

This section describes the characteristics of a cable television plant, assumed to be for the purpose of operating a data-over-cable system.

The cable plants have very diverse physical topologies. These topologies range from fiber to the home node architectures as well as fiber nodes with many actives in cascade. The plant characteristics described in this section covers the great majority of plant scenarios.

This section is not a description of CMTS or CM parameters. The data-over-cable system MUST be interoperable within the environment described in this section.

Whenever a reference in this section to frequency plans, or compatibility with other services, conflicts with any legal requirement for the area of operation, the latter shall take precedence. Any reference to National Television System Committee (NTSC) analog signals in 6 MHz channels does not imply that such signals are physically present.

5.1 Overview

This specification defines the PHY layer protocol of DOCSIS 3.1. It also describes the channel assumptions over which DOCSIS 3.1 systems are expected to operate.

DOCSIS 3.1 ultimate service goal of multi-gigabit per second in the downstream direction and gigabit per second in the upstream direction resulted in significant changes in the PHY layer approach compared to earlier DOCSIS versions in addition to changes on the cable network assumptions. DOCSIS 3.1 focuses on the eventual use of the entire spectrum resources available in cable environment by the CMTS and CM and on scalable cost effective techniques to achieve full spectrum use.

DOCSIS 3.1 assumes Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiplexing (OFDM) downstream signals and Orthogonal Frequency Division Multiple Access (OFDMA) upstream signals to achieve robust operation and provide more efficient use of the spectrum than previous DOCSIS versions. In order to reach the target service goal in the upstream direction, plant changes on the upstream/downstream spectrum split are expected. The DOCSIS 3.1 system will have options of several split configurations that can be exercised based on traffic demand, services offered and the capability of the cable plant. In the downstream direction, HFC plant spectrum extended beyond the current 1002 MHz is expected.

The DOCSIS 3.0 systems and earlier versions are sometimes referred to in this document as single carrier QAM (SC-QAM) systems in contrast to the multicarrier DOCSIS 3.1 OFDM/OFDMA system.

The OFDM downstream multicarrier system is composed of a large number of subcarriers that have either 25 kHz or 50 kHz spacing. These subcarriers are grouped into independently configurable OFDM channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 192 MHz in the downstream, totaling 7680 25 kHz subcarriers or 3840 50 kHz subcarriers; of which up to 7600 (25 kHz) or 3800 (50 kHz) active subcarriers span 190 MHz. The OFDMA upstream multicarrier system is also composed of either 25 kHz or 50 kHz subcarriers. In the upstream, the subcarriers are grouped into independently configurable OFDMA channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 96 MHz, totaling 3840 25 kHz spaced subcarriers or 1920 50 kHz spaced subcarriers. Many parameters of these channels can be independently configured thereby optimizing configuration based on channel conditions.

The cable topologies have been evolving to smaller node architectures with fewer amplifiers in cascade. This natural cable network evolution and gradual reduction in node sizes bring a corresponding improvement in channel conditions. A DOCSIS 3.1 goal is to leverage the expected network improvements and achieve higher efficiency levels corresponding to improvement in channel conditions. In the downstream and in the upstream directions, profiles can be defined to match the transmission configuration to the channel conditions with greater granularity. DOCSIS 3.1 technology is able to operate in classic cable network topologies, but those networks may not be able to achieve full capabilities of DOCSIS 3.1 bandwidth efficiencies.

An assumption in the topology configuration of DOCSIS 3.1 is that the CM is predominantly placed in a gateway architecture configuration. Specifically the CM is located either at the drop-home boundary or after the first two-way splitter within the customer premises. This configuration limits potential attenuation within the home environment. This reduced attenuation is leveraged to enable higher efficiencies intended in DOCSIS 3.1.

Another intent of DOCSIS 3.1 is to leverage the granularity from multiple narrowband subcarriers to exclude unwanted spectrum regions from transmission so that interferers can be avoided. Leveraging the same mechanism, coexistence with existing systems can be implemented by carving out a portion of the spectrum to allow for another transmission to co-exist.

It is expected that CMs and CMTSs are able to operate in multiple modes. A mode could be pure Single Carrier Quadrature Amplitude Modulation (SC-QAM), pure OFDM transmission or a combination of the two. This flexibility enables a smooth transition between SC-QAM and OFDM systems.

DOCSIS 3.1 uses Low-Density-parity-Check (LDPC) Forward Error Correction (FEC) coding instead of the Reed-Solomon used in DOCSIS 3.0 and earlier versions. Long FEC codeword types are defined in the upstream and downstream to optimize efficiency. LDPC FEC along with frequency and time interleaving is used to provide robustness against narrowband interferers and burst events.

In several instances equivalent characterization and metrics to those used in DOCSIS 3.0 and earlier versions have been devised to facilitate comparison of requirements among different versions of the specification.

The DOCSIS 3.1 suite of specifications includes considerations to improve and optimize operation under special modes. One mode is a light sleep mode that is introduced to minimize CM power consumption. Also, some features are defined primarily operation in fiber to the home (FTTH) network architectures configured for RFoG.

5.2 Functional Assumptions

5.2.1 Equipment Assumptions

5.2.1.1 Frequency Plan

In the downstream direction, the cable system is assumed to have a pass band with a lower edge of either 54 MHz, 87.5 MHz, 108 MHz or 258 MHz, and an upper edge that is implementation-dependent but is typically in the range of 550 to 1002 MHz. Upper frequency edges extending to 1218 MHz, 1794 MHz and others are expected in future migrations of the plants. Within that pass band, NTSC analog television signals in 6 MHz channels are assumed present on the standard, HRC or IRC frequency plans of [CEA-542], as well as other narrowband and wideband digital signals.

In the upstream direction, the cable system may have a 5-42 MHz, 5-65 MHz, 5-85 MHz, 5-117, 5-204 MHz or pass bands with an upper band edge beyond 204 MHz. NTSC analog television signals in 6 MHz channels may be present, as well as other signals.

5.2.1.2 Compatibility with Other Services

The CM MUST coexist with any services on the cable network.

The CMTS MUST coexist with any services on the cable network.

In particular:

- The CMTS MUST be interoperable in the cable spectrum assigned for CMTS and CM interoperation while the balance of the cable spectrum is occupied by any combination of television and other signals.
- The CM MUST be interoperable in the cable spectrum assigned for CMTS and CM interoperation while the balance of the cable spectrum is occupied by any combination of television and other signals.
- The CMTS MUST NOT cause harmful interference to any other services that are assigned to the cable network in spectrum outside of that allocated to the CMTS.
- The CM MUST NOT cause harmful interference to any other services that are assigned to the cable network in spectrum outside of that allocated to the CM.

Harmful interference is understood as:

- No measurable degradation (highest level of compatibility),

- No degradation below the perceptible level of impairments for all services (standard or medium level of compatibility), or
- No degradation below the minimal standards accepted by the industry (for example, FCC for analog video services) or other service provider (minimal level of compatibility).

5.2.1.3 Fault Isolation Impact on Other Users

As CMTS transmissions are on a shared-media, point-to-multipoint system, fault-isolation procedures should take into account the potential harmful impact of faults and fault-isolation procedures on numerous users of the data-over-cable, video and other services.

For the interpretation of harmful impact, see Section 5.2.1.2 above.

5.2.1.4 Cable System Terminal Devices

The CM is expected to meet and preferably exceed all applicable regulations for Cable System Termination Devices and Cable Ready Consumer Equipment as defined in FCC Part 15 [FCC15] and Part 76 [FCC76]. None of these specific requirements may be used to relax any of the specifications contained elsewhere within this document.

5.2.2 RF Channel Assumptions

The data-over-cable system, configured with at least one set of defined physical-layer parameters (e.g., modulation, interleaver depth, etc.) from the range of configurable settings described in this specification, is expected to be interoperable on cable networks having characteristics defined in this section. This is accomplished in such a manner that the forward error correction provides for equivalent operation in a cable system both with and without the impaired channel characteristics described below.

5.2.2.1 Transmission Downstream

The RF channel transmission characteristics of the cable network in the downstream direction are described in Table 5–1. These numbers assume total average power of a digital signal in a 192 MHz channel bandwidth for subcarrier levels unless indicated otherwise. For impairment levels, the numbers in Table 5–1 assume average power in a bandwidth in which the impairment levels are measured in a standard manner for cable TV systems. For analog signal levels, the numbers in Table 5–1 assume peak envelope power in a 6 MHz channel bandwidth. All conditions are present concurrently. It is expected that the HFC plant will have better conditions for DOCSIS 3.1 to provide the higher throughput and capacities anticipated.

Table 5–1 - Typical Downstream RF Channel Transmission Characteristics

Parameter	Value
Frequency range	Cable system normal downstream operating range is from 54 MHz to 1002 MHz. Extended operating ranges include lower downstream edges of 108 MHz and 258 MHz and upper downstream edges of 1218 MHz and 1794 MHz.
RF channel spacing (design bandwidth)	24 to 192 MHz
One way transit delay from headend to most distant customer	≤ 0.400 ms (typically much less)
Signal to Composite Noise Ratio	≥ 35 dB
Carrier-to-Composite triple beat distortion ratio	Not less than 41 dB
Carrier-to-Composite second order distortion ratio	Not less than 41 dB
Carrier-to-Cross-modulation ratio	Not less than 41 dB
Carrier-to-any other discrete interference (ingress)	Not less than 41 dB
Maximum amplitude variation across the 6 MHz channel (digital channels)	≤ 1.74 dB pk-pk/6 MHz

Parameter	Value
Group Delay Variation	≤113 ns over 24 MHz
Micro-reflections bound for dominant single echo	-20 dBc for echos ≤ 0.5 µs -25 dBc for echos ≤ 1.0 µs -30 dBc for echos ≤ 1.5 µs -35 dBc for echos > 2.0 µs -40 dBc for echos > 3.0 µs -45 dBc for echos > 4.5 µs -50 dBc for echos > 5.0 µs
Carrier hum modulation	Not greater than -30 dBc (3%)
Maximum analog video carrier level at the CM input	17 dBmV
Maximum number of analog carriers	121
NOTE: Cascaded group delay could possibly exceed the ≤113 ns value within approximately 30 MHz above the downstream spectrum's lower band edge, depending on cascade depth, diplex filter design, and actual band split.	

5.2.2.2 Transmission Upstream

The RF channel transmission characteristics of the cable network in the upstream direction are described in Table 5–2. No combination of the following parameters will exceed any stated interface limit defined elsewhere in this specification. Transmission is from the CM output at the customer location to the headend.

Table 5–2 - Typical Upstream RF Channel Transmission Characteristics

Parameter	Value
Frequency range	Cable standard upstream frequency range is from a lower band-edge of 5 MHz to upper band-edges to 42 MHz and 65 MHz. Extended upstream frequency ranges include upper upstream band-edges of 85 MHz, 117 MHz and 204 MHz.
One way transit delay from most distant customer to headend.	≤ 0.400 ms (typically much less)
Carrier-to-interference plus ingress (the sum of noise, distortion, common-path distortion and cross modulation and the sum of discrete and broadband ingress signals, impulse noise excluded) ratio	Not less than 25 dB
Carrier hum modulation	Not greater than -26 dBc (5.0%)
Maximum amplitude variation across the 6 MHz channel (digital channels)	≤ 2.78 dB pk-pk/6 MHz
Group Delay Variation	≤163 ns over 24 MHz
Micro-reflections bound for dominant single echo	-16 dBc for echos ≤ 0.5 µs -22 dBc for echos ≤ 1.0 µs -29 dBc for echos ≤ 1.5 µs -35 dBc for echos > 2.0 µs -42 dBc for echos > 3.0 µs -51 dBc for echos > 4.5 µs
Seasonal and diurnal reverse gain (loss) variation	Not greater than 14 dB min to max
NOTE: Cascaded group delay could possibly exceed the ≤163 ns value within approximately 10 MHz of the upstream spectrum's lower and upper band edges, depending on cascade depth, diplex filter design, and actual band split.	

5.2.2.2.1 Availability

Cable network availability is typically greater than 99.9%.

5.2.3 Transmission Levels

The nominal power level of the upstream CM signal(s) will be as low as possible to achieve the required margin above noise and interference. Uniform power loading per unit bandwidth is commonly followed in setting upstream signal levels, with specific levels established by the cable network operator to achieve the required carrier-to-noise and carrier-to-interference ratios.

5.2.4 Frequency Inversion

There will be no frequency inversion in the transmission path in either the downstream or the upstream directions, i.e., a positive change in frequency at the input to the cable network will result in a positive change in frequency at the output.

6 PHY SUBLAYER FOR SC-QAM

6.1 Scope

This section applies to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM or CMTS is operating with SC-QAM operation only, with no OFDM/OFDMA operation and for the SC-QAM channels with simultaneous operation of SC-QAM and OFDM/OFDMA channels unless otherwise noted. As such, it represents backward compatibility requirements when operating with DOCSIS 3.0 systems or with the new DOCSIS 3.1 PHY disabled. It also applies only to the first technology option referred to in Section 1.1; for the second option refer to Annex C; and for the third option refer to Annex D.

This specification defines the electrical characteristics and signal processing operations for a CM and CMTS. It is the intent of this specification to define an interoperable CM and CMTS such that any implementation of a CM can work with any CMTS. It is not the intent of this specification to imply any specific implementation.

As the requirements for a DOCSIS 3.1 CM and CMTS are largely unchanged relative to DOCSIS 3.0 devices for SC-QAM operation, this section is comprised primarily of references to the appropriate DOCSIS 3.0 specification sections for the specific requirements for a DOCSIS 3.1 CM and CMTS, as well as any deltas relative to those requirements (the primary difference being that a DOCSIS 3.1 CM and CMTS are required to support a minimum of 24 downstream and 8 upstream channels instead of 4 downstream and 4 upstream as in DOCSIS 3.0 devices).

A DOCSIS 3.1 CM MUST comply with the referenced requirements in the PHYv3.0 and DRFI specifications noted in this section, with the exception of any deltas called out in this section (which will be identified with separate requirement statements). A DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS MUST comply with the referenced requirements in the PHYv3.0 and DRFI specifications noted in this section, with the exception of any deltas called out in this section (which will be identified with separate requirement statements).

6.2 Upstream Transmit and Receive

This section is based on section 6.2 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.1 Overview

See section 6.2.1 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0], with the exceptions noted below.

A CM MUST support at least eight (8) active upstream channels (which are referred to as the Transmit Channel Set for that CM).

A CMTS MUST support at least eight (8) active upstream channels.

A CMTS MAY support S-CDMA mode. If a CMTS implements S-CDMA mode, the CMTS MUST comply with S-CDMA requirements defined in [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

A CM MAY support S-CDMA mode. If a CM implements S-CDMA mode, the CM MUST comply with S-CDMA requirements defined in [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.2 Signal Processing Requirements

See section 6.2.2 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.3 Modulation Formats

See section 6.2.3 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.4 R-S Encode

See section 6.2.4 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.5 Upstream R-S Frame Structure (Multiple Transmit Enabled)

See section 6.2.5 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.6 Upstream R-S Frame Structure (Multiple Transmit Disabled)

See section 6.2.6 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.7 TDMA Byte Interleaver

See section 6.2.7 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.8 Scrambler (randomizer)

See section 6.2.8 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.9 TCM Encoder

See section 6.2.9 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.10 Preamble Prepend

See section 6.2.10 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.11 Modulation Rates

See section 6.2.11 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.12 S-CDMA Framer and Interleaver

See section 6.2.12 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.13 S-CDMA Framer

See section 6.2.13 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.14 Symbol Mapping

See section 6.2.14 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.15 S-CDMA Spreader

See section 6.2.15 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.16 Transmit Pre-Equalizer

See section 6.2.16 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.17 Spectral Shaping

See section 6.2.17 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.18 Relative Processing Delays

See section 6.2.18 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.19 Transmit Power Requirements

Applies only to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CMTS or where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CM.

See section 6.2.19 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.20 Burst Profiles

See section 6.2.20 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.21 Burst Timing Convention

See section 6.2.21 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.22 Fidelity Requirements

Applies only to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CMTS or where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CM.

See section 6.2.22 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.23 Upstream Demodulator Input Power Characteristics

See section 6.2.23 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.24 Upstream Electrical Output from the CM

Applies only to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CMTS or where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CM.

See section 6.2.23 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.2.25 Upstream CM Transmitter Capabilities

Applies only to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CMTS or where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CM.

See section 6.2.25 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.3 Downstream Transmit

This section is based on section 6.3 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.1 Downstream Protocol

See section 6.3.1 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.2 Spectrum Format

See section 6.3.2 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.3 Scaleable Interleaving to Support Video and High-Speed Data Services

See section 6.3.3 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.4 Downstream Frequency Plan

See section 6.3.4 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.5 DRFI Output Electrical

Applies only the case where a DOCSIS 3.1 device is operating in DOCSIS 3.0 mode only.

For legacy, SC-QAMs, the EQAM and CMTS MUST support the electrical output requirements specified in the following sections and tables of [DOCSIS DRFI]:

- Section 6.3.5, DRFI Output Electrical
- Section 6.3.5.1, CMTS or EQAM Output Electrical

- Table 6-3, RF Output Electrical Requirements
- Section 6.3.5.1.1, Power per Channel CMTS or EQAM
- Table 6-4, DRFI Device Output Power
- Section 6.3.5.1.2, Independence of Individual Channels within the Multiple Channels on a Single RF Port
- Section 6.3.5.1.3, Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Requirements for CMTS or EQAM
- Table 6-5, EQAM or CMTS Output Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Emissions Requirements for N ≤ 8
- Table 6-6, EQAM or CMTS Output Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Emissions Requirements N ≥ 9 and N' ≥ N/4
- Table 6-7, EQAM or CMTS Output Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Emissions Requirements N>=9 and N'<N/4

6.3.6 CMTS or EQAM Clock Generation

Applies only the case where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating in a DOCSIS 3.0 mode only.

See section 6.3.6 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.7 Downstream Symbol Clock Jitter for Synchronous Operation

Applies only the case where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating in a DOCSIS 3.0 mode only.

See section 6.3.7 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.8 Downstream Symbol Clock Drift for Synchronous Operation

Applies only the case where a DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS is operating in a DOCSIS 3.0 mode only.

See section 6.3.8 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.3.9 Timestamp Jitter

See section 6.3.9 of [DOCSIS DRFI].

6.4 Downstream Receive

This section is based on section 6.3 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.4.1 Downstream Protocol and Interleaving Support

See section 6.3.1 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.4.2 Downstream Electrical Input to the CM

See section 6.3.2 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0], with the exception noted below.

A CM MUST support at least 24 active downstream channels.

A CMTS MUST support at least 24 active downstream channels.

6.4.3 CM BER Performance

See section 6.3.3 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.4.4 Downstream Multiple Receiver Capabilities

See section 6.3.4 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

6.4.5 Non-Synchronous DS Channel Support

Applies only to the case where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM operating with a DOCSIS 3.0 CMTS.

See section 6.3.5 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

7 PHY SUBLAYER FOR OFDM

7.1 Scope

This specification defines the electrical characteristics and signal processing operations for a cable modem (CM) and Cable Modem Termination System (CMTS). It is the intent of this specification to define an interoperable CM and CMTS such that any implementation of a CM can work with any CMTS. It is not the intent of this specification to imply any specific implementation.

This section describes CM and CMTS physical layer requirements for DOCSIS 3.1 compliant devices.

7.2 Upstream and Downstream Frequency Plan

The following spectrum definitions are based on the system requirement that the downstream transmission frequencies always reside above the upstream transmission frequencies in the cable plant.

7.2.1 Downstream CM Spectrum

The CM MUST support a minimum of two independently configurable OFDM channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 192 MHz in the downstream.

The CM MUST support a downstream upper band edge of 1.218 GHz.

The CM MAY support a downstream upper band edge of 1.794 GHz.

The CM MUST support a downstream lower band edge of 258 MHz.

The CM SHOULD support a downstream lower band edge of 108 MHz when the CM is configured to use an upstream upper band edge of 85 MHz or less.

7.2.2 Downstream CMTS Spectrum

The CMTS MUST support a minimum of two independently configurable OFDM channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 192 MHz in the downstream.

The CMTS MUST support a downstream upper band edge of 1.218 GHz.

The CMTS MAY support a downstream upper band edge of 1.794 GHz.

The CMTS MUST support a downstream lower band edge of 258 MHz.

The CMTS SHOULD support a downstream lower band edge of 108 MHz.

7.2.3 Upstream CM Spectrum

The CM MUST support a minimum of two independently configurable OFDMA channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 96 MHz in the upstream.

The CM MAY support more than two independently configurable OFDMA channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 96 MHz in the upstream.

The CM modulator MUST support upstream transmissions from 5 to at least 204 MHz and agile placement of the OFDMA channels within that range.

Individual CM implementations may limit the spectrum over which the CM is able to transmit upstream signals. As a result, in order to be compliant with this specification a CM MUST support one or more of the following upstream upper band edges, as long as one of the upstream upper band edges supported is 85 MHz or greater: 42 MHz; 65 MHz, 85 MHz, 117 MHz, and/or 204 MHz.

The CM MUST be configurable to operate with any supported upstream upper band edge. The nature and operation of this configurability is vendor-specific. Possible forms of configurability include a hardware switch on the modem housing, a software-controlled diplex filter responsive to OSSI commands, or other forms.

The CM MAY support additional spectrum beyond 204 MHz for the upstream.

The CM MUST NOT cause harmful interference to any downstream signals that might exist above its configured upstream upper band edge.

The CM MUST be capable of transmitting 192 MHz of active channels when operating with the 204 MHz upstream upper band edge.

In DOCSIS 3.1 upstream mode the CM MUST be capable of transmitting OFDMA channels and legacy SC-QAM channels at the same time (as controlled by the CMTS). In all cases the CM is not required to transmit legacy SC-QAM channels above a frequency of 85 MHz.

7.2.4 Upstream CMTS Spectrum

The CMTS MUST support a minimum of two independently configurable OFDMA channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 96 MHz in the upstream.

The CMTS MAY support more than two independently configurable OFDMA channels each occupying a spectrum of up to 96 MHz in the upstream.

The CMTS MUST support upstream transmissions from 5 to at least 204 MHz and agile placement of the OFDMA blocks within that range.

The CMTS MAY support additional spectrum beyond 204 MHz for the upstream.

The CMTS MUST capable of receiving 192 MHz of active channels when operating with the 204 MHz upstream upper band edge. In DOCSIS 3.1 upstream mode the CM is capable of transmitting OFDMA channels and legacy SC-QAM channels at the same time (as controlled by the CMTS). In all cases, the CMTS MUST NOT configure the CM to transmit legacy SC-QAM channels above a frequency of 85 MHz.

7.2.5 Channel Band Rules[3]

During OFDM/OFDMA channel planning, the following rules are to be observed to ensure proper operation of DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS and CM.

The CMTS MUST ensure that the configured OFDM/OFDMA channels are aligned with the rules specified in Sections 7.2.5.2, 7.2.5.3, and 7.2.5.4.

7.2.5.1 Downstream Channel Bandwidth Rules

The CMTS MUST ensure that the encompassed spectrum of a 192 MHz downstream OFDM channel does not exceed 190 MHz. Therefore the CMTS MUST ensure that the number of contiguous active subcarriers in a downstream OFDM channel does not exceed 3800 for 4K FFT and 7600 for 8K FFT. When configured for 4K FFT, the CMTS MUST only use subcarriers in the range $148 <= k <= 3947$, where k is the spectral index of the subcarrier in the IDFT equation defining the OFDM signal. When configured for 8K FFT, the CMTS MUST only use subcarriers in the range $296 <= k <= 7895$, where k is the spectral index of the subcarrier in the IDFT equation defining the OFDM signal.

The CMTS MUST ensure that there is at least 1 MHz of exclusion band between the spectral edge of a legacy SC-QAM channel and the center frequency of the nearest OFDM subcarrier. This SC-QAM channel may be external to the OFDM channel or may be embedded within the OFDM channel.

The CMTS MUST also ensure that there is at least 2 MHz exclusion band between any two adjacent asynchronous OFDM channels. In other words the CMTS MUST ensure that the frequency separation between the highest frequency active subcarrier of one OFDM channel and the lowest frequency active subcarrier of the adjacent asynchronous OFDM channel is not less than 2 MHz.

Such an exclusion band is not needed if the two OFDM channels are fully synchronous. The term synchronous here implies that both OFDM channels have the same FFT length, the same cyclic prefix, and are synchronized in time, frequency and phase. For example, the CMTS may use a single 16K FFT with a sample rate of 409.6 MHz to construct two 8K FFT OFDM channels each with sample rate 204.8 MHz. The use of a single FFT guarantees that

[3] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1201-1 on 12/11/14 and per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

all synchronization criteria are met. The CMTS may place 15200 contiguous active subcarriers, with an encompassed spectrum of 380 MHz, anywhere within this 16K FFT. These 15200 subcarriers may be partitioned equally between two adjacent downstream 8K FFT OFDM channels.

7.2.5.2 Downstream Exclusion Band Rules

The CM and CMTS are not expected to meet performance and fidelity requirements when the system configuration does not comply with the downstream exclusion band rules listed below. These rules apply to each OFDM channel and also to the composite downstream inclusive of OFDM and non-OFDM channels.

- There has to be at least one contiguous modulated OFDM bandwidth of 22 MHz or greater.
- Exclusion bands separate contiguous modulation bands.
- The minimum contiguous modulation band has to be 2 MHz.
- Exclusion bands and individually excluded subcarriers are common to all downstream profiles.
- Exclusion bands are a minimum of 1 MHz but increment above 1 MHz by granularity of individual subcarrier (25 kHz for 8k FFT and 50 kHz for 4K FFT).
- The ONLY exception to the above is for exclusion bands that are allowed to occupy the following frequency ranges in alignment with FCC regulations.
- 121.400 MHz to 121.600 MHz
- 156.750 MHz to 156.850 MHz
- 242.950 MHz to 243.050 MHz
- 405.925 MHz to 406.176 MHz

Unique spurious emissions requirements exist for these bands separate from the general exclusion bands requirements.

- Exclusion bands plus individually excluded subcarriers are limited to 20% or less of spanned modulation spectrum, where the spanned modulation spectrum is defined as: frequency of maximum active subcarrier – frequency of minimum active subcarrier.
- The number of individually excluded subcarriers is limited by the following:
- The total spectrum of individually excluded subcarriers cannot exceed 5% of any contiguous modulation spectrum.
- The total spectrum of individually excluded subcarriers cannot exceed 5% of a 6 MHz moving window across the contiguous modulation spectrum.
- The total spectrum of individually excluded subcarriers cannot exceed 20% of a 1 MHz moving window across the contiguous modulation spectrum.
- The 6 MHz of contiguous spectrum reserved for the PLC cannot have any exclusion bands or excluded subcarrier.

7.2.5.3 Upstream Channel Bandwidth Rules

The CMTS MUST ensure that the encompassed spectrum of a 96 MHz upstream OFDMA channel does not exceed 95 MHz. Therefore, the number of contiguous active subcarriers in an upstream OFDMA channel MUST NOT exceed 1900 for 2K FFT and 3800 for 4K FFT. When configured for 2K FFT, the CMTS MUST only use subcarriers in the range $74 <= k <= 1973$, where k is the spectral index of the subcarrier in the IDFT equation defining the OFDMA signal. When configured for 4K FFT, the CMTS MUST only use subcarriers in the range $148 <= k <= 3947$, where k is the spectral index of the subcarrier in the IDFT equation defining the OFDMA signal.

7.2.5.4 Upstream Exclusions and Unused Subcarriers Rules[4]

- Subcarriers which lie outside the Encompassed Spectrum are excluded.
- Excluded and unused subcarriers within the Encompassed Spectrum are not allowed within minislots. There is no restriction on the number or placement of excluded and unused subcarriers between minislots.

7.3 OFDM Numerology

7.3.1 Downstream OFDM Numerology

DOCSIS 3.1 uses OFDM for downstream modulation.

Two modes of operation are defined for the downstream: 4K FFT and 8K FFT modes for a sampling rate of 204.8 MHz. These are described in Section 7.5.7.

Table 7–1 summarizes the numerical values for the downstream OFDM parameters; a more detailed description of the parameters is given in the sections which follow.

Table 7–1 - Downstream OFDM parameters

Parameter	4K mode	8K mode
Downstream master clock frequency	10.24 MHz	
Downstream Sampling Rate (fs)	204.8 MHz	
Downstream Elementary Period (Tsd)	1/(204.8 MHz)	
Channel bandwidths	24 MHz … 192 MHz	
IDFT size	4096	8192
Subcarrier spacing	50 kHz	25 kHz
FFT duration (Useful symbol duration) (Tu)	20 µs	40 µs
Maximum number of active subcarriers in signal (192 MHz channel) Values refer to 190 MHz of used subcarriers.	3800	7600
Maximum spacing between first and last active subcarrier	190 MHz	
Cyclic Prefix	0.9375 µs (192 * T_{sd}) 1.25 µs (256 * T_{sd}) 2.5 µs (512 * T_{sd}) 3.75 µs (768 * T_{sd}) 5 µs (1024 * T_{sd})	
Windowing	Tukey raised cosine window, embedded into cyclic prefix 0 µs (0 * T_{sd}) 0.3125 µs (64 * T_{sd}) 0.625 µs (128 * T_{sd}) 0.9375 µs (192 * T_{sd}) 1.25 µs (256 * T_{sd})	

The downstream OFDM channel bandwidth can vary from 24 MHz to 192 MHz. Smaller bandwidths than 192 MHz are achieved by zero-valuing the subcarriers prior to the IDFT, i.e., by adjusting the equivalent number of active subcarriers while maintaining the same subcarrier spacing of 25 kHz or 50 kHz.

7.3.2 Upstream OFDMA Numerology

DOCSIS 3.1 uses OFDMA (orthogonal frequency-division multiple access) for upstream modulation. OFDMA is a multi-user version of OFDM, and assigns subsets of subcarriers to individual CMs. The upstream OFDMA parameters are derived from the downstream parameters, and are summarized in Table 7–2. A more detailed description of the parameters is given in the sections which follow.

[4] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1201-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Table 7–2 - Upstream OFDMA Parameters

Parameter	2k Mode	4k Mode
Upstream Sampling Rate (f_{su})	102.4 MHz	
Upstream Elementary Period Rate (T_{su})	1/102.4 MHz	
Channel bandwidths	10 MHz, …, 96 MHz	6.4 MHz, …, 96 MHz
IDFT size (depending on channel bandwidth)	2048	4096
Subcarrier spacing	50 kHz	25 kHz
FFT duration (Useful symbol duration) (T_u)	20 µs	40 µs
Maximum number of active subcarriers in signal (96 MHz channel) Values refer to 95 MHz of active subcarriers	1900	3800
Upstream Cyclic Prefix	0.9375 µs (96 * T_{su}) 1.25 µs (128 * T_{su}) 1.5625 µs (160 * T_{su}) 1.875 µs (192 * T_{su}) 2.1875 µs (224 * T_{su}) 2.5 µs (256 * T_{su}) 2.8125 µs (288 * T_{su}) 3.125 µs (320 * T_{su}) 3.75 µs (384 * T_{su}) 5.0 µs (512 *Tsu) 6.25 µs (640 *Tsu)	
Upstream window size	Tukey raised cosine window, embedded into cyclic prefix 0 µs (0 * T_{su}) 0.3125 µs (32 * T_{su}) 0.625 µs (64 * T_{su}) 0.9375 µs (96 * T_{su}) 1.25 µs (128 * T_{su}) 1.5625 µs (160 * T_{su}) 1.875 µs (192 * T_{su}) 2.1875 µs (224 * T_{su})	

7.3.3 Subcarrier Clocking

The "locking" of subcarrier "clock and carrier" are defined and characterized by the following rules:

- Each OFDM symbol is defined with an FFT duration (equal to subcarrier clock period) of nominally 20 µs or 40 µs. For each OFDM symbol, the subcarrier clock period (µs) may vary from nominal with limits defined in Section 7.5.3.
- The number of cycles of each subcarrier generated by the CMTS during one period of the subcarrier clock (for each OFDM symbol) MUST be an integer number.

  The CMTS subcarrier clock MUST be synchronous with the 10.24 MHz Master Clock defined by:

  subcarrier clock frequency = (M/N)*Master Clock frequency where M = 20 or 40, and N = 8192
- The limitation on the variation from nominal of the subcarrier clock frequency at the output connector is defined in Section 7.5.3.
- Each OFDM symbol has a cyclic prefix which is an integer multiple of $1/64^{th}$, of the subcarrier clock period.
- Each OFDM symbol duration is the sum of one subcarrier clock period and the cyclic prefix duration.
- The number of cycles of each subcarrier generated by the CMTS during the OFDM symbol duration (of each symbol) MUST be K+K*L/64, where K is an integer related to the subcarrier index and frequency upconversion

of the OFDM channel, and L is an integer related to the cyclic prefix. (K is an integer related to the subcarrier index and increases by 1 for each subcarrier).

- The phase of each subcarrier within one OFDM symbol is the same, when each is assigned the same constellation point (I + jQ), relative to the Reference Time of the OFDM symbol. There is nominally no change in phase on each subcarrier for every cycle of 64 OFDM symbols, when both are assigned the same I + jQ, and referenced to the Reference Time of their respective OFDM symbol.

7.4 Upstream Transmit and Receive

7.4.1 Signal Processing Requirements

Upstream transmission uses OFDMA frames. Each OFDMA frame is comprised of a configurable number of OFDM symbols, *K*. Several transmitters may share the same OFDMA frame by transmitting data and pilots on allocated subcarriers of the OFDMA frame. There are several pilot patterns as described in Section 7.4.16.

The structure of an OFDMA frame is depicted in Figure 7-1. The upstream spectrum is divided into groups of subcarriers called minislots. Minislots have dedicated subcarriers, all with the same modulation order ("bit loading"). A CM is allocated to transmit one or more minislots in a Transmission Burst. The modulation order of a minislot, as well as the pilot pattern to use may change between different transmission bursts and are determined by a transmission profile.

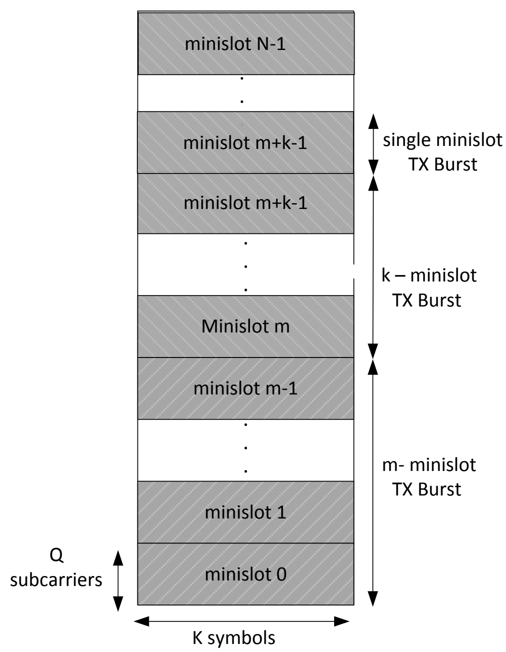


Figure 7-1 - OFDMA Frame Structure

Serial data signals received from the PHY-MAC Convergence Layer are received and processed by the PHY as illustrated in Figure 7-2. This process yields a transmission burst of a single or multiple OFDMA minislots, as allocated by the PHY-MAC Convergence Layer. Each minislot is comprised of pilots, complementary pilots, and data subcarriers, as described in Section 8.2.3. Subcarriers that are not used for data or pilots are set to zero.

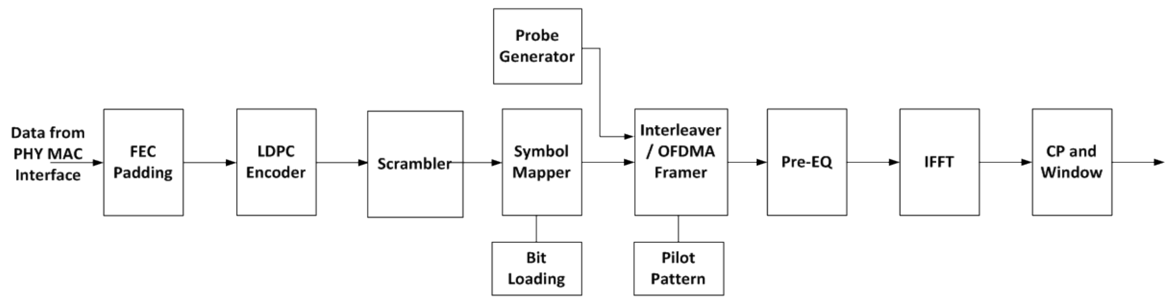


Figure 7-2 - Upstream transmitter block diagram

This section briefly describes the process and provides links to the specific requirements for each process described in this specification.

7.4.1.1 Framing

Figure 7-3 describes how the received bits from the PHY-MAC Convergence layers are framed before being converted into constellation symbols. The number of FEC codewords, corresponding codeword lengths and zero-padding bits are calculated by the PHY-MAC Convergence layer as described in Section 7.4.3.1 according to the allocation of minislot and the profile received by the grant message.

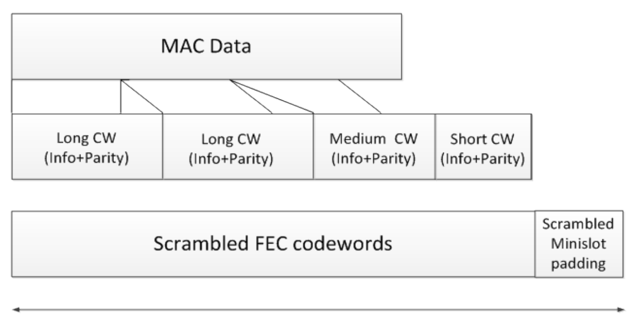


Figure 7-3 - Upstream Transmitter Block Diagram

7.4.1.2 Forward Error Correction Encoding[5]

Data received from the PHY-MAC Convergence layer interface, along with the FEC padding, is LDPC encoded. The upstream has three LDPC codes: a long, medium, and short FEC code, as described in Section 7.4.3. Prior to encoding, the transmitter is to decide on the configuration of the codewords as described in Section 7.4.3.1 and codeword shortening as described in Section 7.4.3.3. If required, zero-padding has to be applied to complete the number of minislots in the grant.

7.4.1.3 Randomizer and Symbol Mapper

The encoded bits are then randomized (scrambled) using the PRBS scrambler as specified in Section 7.4.4. The scrambler output bits are converted into constellation symbols according to the corresponding modulation order of the minislot. All subcarriers of a given type (Pilots, Complementary Pilots, Data subcarriers) in a minislot have the same modulation order. The Symbol Mapper is described in Section 7.4.6.

[5] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

7.4.1.4 OFDMA framer and Interleaver

Constellation symbols then enter the OFDMA framer and Interleaver block. The OFDMA framer adds pilots according to the pilot pattern associated with the transmission burst minislot. The constellation symbols are written to subcarriers associated with the transmission burst minislots and are then interleaved in time and frequency as described in Section 7.4.5.

7.4.1.5 Pre-Equalization

The upstream transmitter applies pre-equalization as described in Section 7.4.17 in order to pre-distort the transmitted signals according to coefficients received from the CMTS to compensate for the channel response.

7.4.1.6 IFFT Transformation

In this stage each pre-equalized symbol is transformed into the time domain using the IFFT block. IFFT inputs that are not used (that is, that do not correspond to any of the minislots used by the transmission burst) are set to zero.

The transmitter converts the output of the IFFT from parallel to serial and performs cyclic prefix addition and Windowing in the time domain.

7.4.1.7 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing

A segment at the end of the IFFT output is prepended to the IFFT output; this is referred to as the Cyclic Prefix (CP) of the OFDM symbol. For windowing purposes, another segment at the start of the IFFT output is appended to the end of the IFFT output—the roll-off period (RP).

The addition of a cyclic prefix enables the receiver to overcome the effects of inter-symbol-interference caused by micro-reflections in the channel. Windowing maximizes channel capacity by sharpening the edges of the spectrum of the OFDM signal. Spectral edges occur at the two ends of the spectrum of the OFDM symbol, as well as at the ends of internal exclusion bands.

These topics are discussed in detail in Section 7.4.10.

7.4.2 Time and Frequency Synchronization[6]

CM upstream frequency and timing of transmissions is based on downstream tracking, and in the case of timing, also based upon receiving and implementing timing adjustments from the CMTS. This section describes the CM upstream transmission performance requirements on frequency and timing which are based upon tracking the downstream input to the CM, and implementing and operating upon commands from the CMTS.

7.4.2.1 Channel Frequency Accuracy

The CM MUST lock the frequency of the upstream subcarrier clock (25 kHz or 50 kHz) to the 10.24 MHz Master Clock derived from the downstream OFDM or legacy SC-QAM signal. The CM MUST also lock each upstream subcarrier frequency to the same derived 10.24 MHz Master Clock.

All upstream subcarrier frequency specifications assume a downstream input to the CM per Sections 7.5.9, 7.5.3 and a downstream received signal per Section 7.5.12.1 but with a CNR of at least 32 dB and received signal level of at least -15 dBmV for P_{6AVG} for OFDM downstream, or for legacy SC-QAM with received signal level -15 dBmV and with 23.5 dB Es/No for 64-QAM or 33 dB Es/No with 256-QAM.

The frequency of the upstream subcarrier clock (or upstream subcarrier spacing) is required to be accurate within 0.4 ppm and each subcarrier frequency accurate within 30 Hz, both relative to the Master Clock reference, and both for five sigma of the upstream OFDMA transmissions, for subcarrier frequencies up to 204 MHz. The measurements of the frequency of the upstream subcarrier clock, and the subcarrier frequencies, are averaged over the duration of an upstream single frame grant. A constant temperature is maintained during the measurements within a range of 20 ºC ± 2 ºC. A minimum warm up time of 30 minutes occurs before the CM frequency measurements are made.

NOTE: As an example, upstream subcarrier clock is linked with upstream FFT duration (and subcarrier spacing in the frequency domain), and is at least one component in developing each upstream subcarrier frequency.

[6] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1181-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Other components may also contribute to upstream subcarrier frequency, for example, an upconversion process from complex baseband or low intermediate frequency may contribute. All such components must be locked to the derived Master Clock at the CM. The accuracy requirements for the subcarrier clock and for each individual subcarrier frequency necessary to support 4K-QAM upstream are not necessarily the same, as shown in the requirements above.

7.4.2.2 Channel Timing Accuracy

For OFDMA upstream, regardless of what is used for the timing master, the ranging time offset will be given as described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

Specifically, this timestamp has an integer portion of 10.24 MHz clocks. It also has an integer portion of counting $1/20^{th}$s duration of 10.24 MHz clock period (this integer portion counts up to 20), and then it has a 4 bit binary fractional portion so the CM's timing resolution MUST be (1/10.24 MHz) x (1/20) x (1/16) = 305 ps.

The CMTS MUST be able to send timing adjustment commands with a resolution of 305 ps or an integer submultiple of 305 ps.

The CM MUST implement the OFDMA Timing Adjust to within +/- 10 ns. For example, the average error as measured at the CMTS over 35 s has to be within +/- 10 ns.

7.4.2.3 Modulation Timing Jitter

The CM MUST implement the upstream timing so that the OFDMA clock timing error (with the mean error subtracted out) relative to the CMTS master clock as measured at the CMTS will be within +/-10 ns in each burst measured within 35 s measurement duration.

This applies to the worst-case jitter and frequency drift specified for the CMTS Master clock and the CMTS downstream symbol clock in the requirements above.

The mean error is the result of the adjustment implemented by the CM as specified in Section 7.4.2.2.

7.4.3 Forward Error Correction

DOCSIS 3.1 uses three Quasi-Cyclic Low-Density Parity-Check codes (QC-LDPC) for the upstream transmission, as depicted in Table 7–3.

Table 7–3 - Upstream Codeword Parameters

Code	Code rate	Codeword size in bits (N_i)	Information bits (K_i)	Parity bits (P_i)
Long code	89% (8/9)	16200	14400	1800
Medium code	85% (28/33)	5940	5040	900
Short code	75% (3/4)	1120	840	280

Before FEC encoding, the CM MUST first map the input byte stream into a bit-stream such that the MSB of the first byte is the first bit of the bit-stream.

7.4.3.1 FEC Codeword Selection

The choice of codeword sizes to be used in any given burst is based on the grant in the MAP message. The grant indicates which minislots are assigned to a given burst and which upstream profile is to be used. The CM and CMTS use this information to determine the total number of bits in the grant which are available to be used for FEC information or parity.

The CM MUST follow the FEC codeword selection algorithm defined by Matlab code in Section 7.4.3.1.1 to determine the exact number, type, and size of the codewords to be used, and in what order.

The CMTS MUST follow the FEC codeword selection algorithm defined by the Matlab code in Section 7.4.3.1.1 to determine the exact number, type, and size of the codewords to be used, and in what order.

Codewords are filled and transmitted in the following order, with codeword shortening applied according to rules defined in Section 7.4.3.3:

- Full long codewords (if present)
- Shortened long codeword (if present)
- Full medium codewords (if present)
- Shortened medium codeword (if present)
- Full short codewords (if present)
- Shortened short codewords (if present)
- Zero-pad (if present)

7.4.3.1.1 FEC Codeword Selection Algorithm

The FEC codeword selection algorithm is given by:

```
% The total number of bits in the grant is given by rgrant_size
% set values for codeword sizes
% total bits = size including parity
% info bits = information bits only
% thresholds - if more bits than threshold, shorten this cw instead of
% using a smaller one

% short codeword
SHORT_TOTAL_BITS = 1120;
SHORT_INFO_BITS = 840;
SHORT_PARITY_BITS = SHORT_TOTAL_BITS - SHORT_INFO_BITS;
SHORT_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS = SHORT_PARITY_BITS + 1;
SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS = SHORT_INFO_BITS / 2;

% medium codeword
MED_TOTAL_BITS = 5940;
MED_INFO_BITS = 5040;
MED_PARITY_BITS = MED_TOTAL_BITS - MED_INFO_BITS;
MED_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS = 3421;

% long codeword
LONG_TOTAL_BITS = 16200;
LONG_INFO_BITS = 14400;
LONG_PARITY_BITS = LONG_TOTAL_BITS - LONG_INFO_BITS;
LONG_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS = 11881;

% variable rgrant_size is input
% set rgrant_size to desired input value in workspace
% initialize output variables
rlong_cws = 0;
rshortened_long_cws = 0;
rmed_cws = 0;
rshortened_med_cws = 0;
rshort_cws = 0;
rshortened_short_cws = 0;
rother_shortened_cw_bits = 0;
rshortened_cw_bits = 0;
rpad_bits = 0;

% intermediate variable to track type of last full codeword
rlast_full_cw = '';

% now begin calculation
    bits_remaining = rgrant_size;
```

```
% if we don't have enough space to make at least a min size shortened
% short cw, then this grant is nothing but pad bits.
% NOTE: in the case, the CM should ignore the grant and should not
% transmit any bits at all in the grant.

if rgrant_size < SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS + SHORT_PARITY_BITS
    rpad_bits = rgrant_size;
    bits_remaining = 0;
end

% make as many full long cws as possible
while bits_remaining >= LONG_TOTAL_BITS
    rlong_cws = rlong_cws + 1;
    bits_remaining = bits_remaining - LONG_TOTAL_BITS;
    rlast_full_cw = 'Long';
end

% if remaining bits can make a shortened long codeword, do so
if bits_remaining >= LONG_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS
    rshortened_long_cws = 1;
    rshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
    bits_remaining = 0;
end

% if not, make as many med cws as possible with remaining bits
while bits_remaining >= MED_TOTAL_BITS
    rmed_cws = rmed_cws + 1;
    bits_remaining = bits_remaining - MED_TOTAL_BITS;
    rlast_full_cw = 'Medium';
end

% if remaining bits can make a shortened med cw, do so
if bits_remaining >= MED_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS
    rshortened_med_cws = 1;
    rshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
    bits_remaining = 0;
end

% if not, make as many short cws as possible with remaining bits
while bits_remaining >= SHORT_TOTAL_BITS
    rshort_cws = rshort_cws + 1;
    bits_remaining = bits_remaining - SHORT_TOTAL_BITS;
    rlast_full_cw = 'Short';
end

% if remaining bits can make a shortened short cw, do so
     if bits_remaining >= SHORT_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS
    rshortened_short_cws = 1;

    % at this point we are definitely making this cw; however, we need
    % at least SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS to put in it.  If we do not have
    % that many, we will have to borrow from the last full cw, making
    % it also a shortened cw.

    if (bits_remaining - SHORT_PARITY_BITS) >= SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS
        % no need to borrow bits
        rshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
        bits_remaining = 0;
    else
        % identify type/size of last full cw, then borrow
        % SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS from it
        switch rlast_full_cw
            case 'Long'
```

```
                % change last full cw to a shortened cw
                rlong_cws = rlong_cws - 1;
                rshortened_long_cws = rshortened_long_cws + 1;
                % number of bits in that cw is reduced by
                % SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS
                rother_shortened_cw_bits = LONG_TOTAL_BITS - ...
                    SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                % put those bits plus bits_remaining into the last
                % shortened cw
                rshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS + ...
                    bits_remaining;
                bits_remaining = 0;
            case 'Medium'
                % same steps as for long, just substitute medium
                rmed_cws = rmed_cws - 1;
                rshortened_med_cws = rshortened_med_cws + 1;
                rother_shortened_cw_bits = MED_TOTAL_BITS - ...
                    SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                rshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS + ...
                    bits_remaining;
                bits_remaining = 0;
            case 'Short'
                % again, same steps as for long - now substitute short
                rshort_cws = rshort_cws - 1;
                rshortened_short_cws = rshortened_short_cws + 1;
                rother_shortened_cw_bits = SHORT_TOTAL_BITS - ...
                    SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                rshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS + ...
                    bits_remaining;
                bits_remaining = 0;
        end
    end
end

% any space left over at this point has to be filled with pad bits (it
% cannot fit any cws)
if bits_remaining > 0
    rpad_bits = bits_remaining;
    bits_remaining = 0;
end
```

Based on the algorithm above, the minimum grant size allowed is:

SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS + SHORT_PARITY_BITS = SHORT_INFO_BITS / 2 + SHORT_PARITY_BITS = 420 + 280 bits = 700 bits. This grant is sufficient for 52 bytes of information.

The CM SHOULD NOT transmit in any grant smaller than the minimum allowed grant size specified above.

In some cases, the total number of information bits derived from the algorithm above will not be an integer number of bytes. In such cases there are 1-7 leftover bits that are not enough to form the last information byte. The CM MUST set the values of information bits left over after the FEC Codeword Selection Algorithm forms bytes, to 1. These bits will be discarded by the CMTS after decoding.

The FEC codeword selection algorithm follows the procedure below:

- If there are enough bits in the grant to create a full long codeword, do so. Continue creating full long codewords until there are not enough bits remaining.
- If the number of bits remaining is greater than or equal to the minimum allowed size for a shortened long codeword, create such a codeword and end the burst.
- Otherwise, if there are enough bits remaining to create a full medium codeword, do so. Continue creating full medium codewords until there are not enough bits remaining.

- If the number of bits remaining is greater than or equal to the minimum allowed size for a shortened medium codeword, create such a codeword and end the burst.
- Otherwise, if there are enough bits remaining to create a full short codeword, do so. Continue creating full short codewords until there are not enough bits remaining.
- If there are enough bits remaining to create a shortened short codeword containing at least the minimum allowed number of information bits, do so and end the burst.
- Otherwise, if there are enough bits remaining to create a shortened short codeword with fewer than the minimum allowed number of information bits, remove a number of bits equal to the minimum allowed number of short codeword information bits from the last full codeword, changing it to a shortened codeword. Add this number of bits to the bits remaining and create a shortened short codeword using these bits, and end the burst.
- Otherwise, there are not enough bits remaining to create a shortened short codeword (i.e., fewer bits than the number required for one information bit plus the applicable number of parity bits). These bits will be padded with zeros by the CM and will be ignored by the CMTS.
- If a grant does not contain enough bits to create any codewords, the CM should not transmit in the grant.

The reverse calculation to determine the grant size required to hold the desired number of bits, number of codewords and codeword sizes is given in Appendix IV.

7.4.3.2 FEC Encoding

All three LDPC encoders are systematic. Every encoder encodes N-M information bits $i_0, \cdots, i_{N-M-1}$ into a codeword $c = (i_0, \cdots, i_{N-M-1}, p_0, \cdots, p_{M-1})$ by adding m parity bits obtained so that $Hc^T = 0$, where H is an m×n parity check matrix. The parity-check matrix can be divided into blocks of L∗L submatrices, where L represents the submatrix size or lifting factor. The parity-check matrix in compact circulant form is represented by an m×n block matrix:

$$H = \begin{bmatrix} H_{1,1} & H_{1,2} & H_{1,3} & \cdots & H_{1,n} \\ H_{2,1} & H_{2,2} & H_{2,3} & \cdots & H_{2,n} \\ H_{3,1} & H_{3,2} & H_{3,3} & \cdots & H_{3,n} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ H_{m,1} & H_{m,2} & H_{m,3} & \cdots & H_{m,n} \end{bmatrix}$$

Each submatrix $H_{i,j}$ is an L×L all-zero submatrix or a cyclic right-shifted identity submatrix. The last $n-m$ sub-matrix columns represent the parity portion of the matrix. In this specification, the L×L sub-matrix $H_{i,j}$ is represented by a value in {-, 0,…, L-1}, where a '-' value represents an all-zero submatrix, and the remaining values represent an L×L identity submatrix cyclically right-shifted by the specified value. The code rate is (n–m)/n and a codeword length is N=n×L bits.

The CM MUST employ the following matrix table for the long code rate:

Rate= 89% (16200, 14400) code, m=5 rows × n=45 columns, L=360

93	271	-	83	26	208	245	200	-	175	331	17	86	-	337	-	238	81	-	307	-	165	-	47	76	73	150	349	139	331	118	345	27	294	-	145	279	97	106	160	143	-	-	-	-
274	115	329	338	124	-	293	-	69	64	342	-	88	139	-	137	212	-	157	195	357	81	194	1	159	56	72	126	277	156	32	111	175	-	306	224	-	206	-	29	106	334	-	-	-
134	355	175	24	253	242	-	187	94	26	87	302	-	191	323	22	-	245	294	240	84	76	342	345	174	269	329	-	214	-	-	-	-	218	104	40	197	73	229	63	-	270	72	-	-
-	-	184	70	247	14	22	7	285	54	-	352	26	108	10	298	123	139	117	-	336	49	202	359	342	-	224	106	-	273	177	245	98	355	178	176	147	-	280	-	-	-	221	208	-
253	273	90	-	-	151	311	320	339	-	295	148	48	91	62	100	232	146	200	135	12	-	179	-	-	232	-	21	331	313	349	34	97	187	38	-	235	52	170	58	-	-	-	257	0

The CM MUST employ the following matrix table for the medium code rate:

Rate= 85% (5940, 5040) code, m=5 rows × n=33 columns, L=180

142	158	113	124	92	44	93	70	172	3	25	44	141	160	50	45	118	84	-	64	66	97	1	115	8	108	-	-	22	-	-	-	-
54	172	145	28	55	19	159	22	96	12	85	-	128	5	158	120	51	171	65	141	-	42	83	7	-	39	121	84	101	171	-	-	-
63	11	112	114	61	123	72	55	114	20	53	114	42	33	4	66	163	50	46	17	175	-	-	-	92	-	41	138	-	34	74	-	-
28	160	102	44	8	84	126	9	169	174	147	24	145	-	26	-	-	-	67	82	4	177	151	131	139	117	36	18	-	-	23	8	-
52	159	75	74	46	71	42	11	108	153	-	72	-	163	-	9	2	168	158	-	1	49	89	63	179	10	75	161	-	-	-	177	19

The CM MUST employ the following matrix table for the short code rate:

Rate= 75% (1120, 840) code, m=5 rows × n=20 columns, L=56

5	14	12	1	2	37	45	26	24	0	3	-	34	7	46	10	-	-	-	-
0	35	1	26	0	10	16	16	34	4	2	23	0	51	-	49	20	-	-	-
12	28	22	46	3	16	51	2	25	29	19	18	52	-	37	-	34	39	-	-
0	51	16	31	13	39	27	33	8	27	53	13	-	52	33	-	-	38	7	-
36	6	3	51	4	19	4	45	48	9	-	11	22	23	43	-	-	-	14	1

7.4.3.3 Shortening of LDPC Codewords

Shortening of LDPC codewords is useful in order to optimize FEC protection for the payload. If a shortened codeword is required, the CM MUST construct it as follows:

1. Binary zeros are appended to a reduced number of information bits at the input of the encoder.
2. The encoder calculates the parity bits.
3. The appended binary zeros are removed from the transmitted shortened codeword.

7.4.4 Data Randomization

The CM MUST implement a randomizer in the upstream modulator shown in Figure 7-4 where the 23-bit seed value is programmable.

At the beginning of each grant, the register is cleared and the seed value is loaded. The CM MUST use the seed value to calculate the scrambler bit which is combined in an XOR with the first bit of data of each grant.

The CM MUST configure the randomizer seed value in response to the Upstream Channel Descriptor provided by the CMTS.

The CM MUST use x^23+x^18+1 for the data randomizer polynomial.

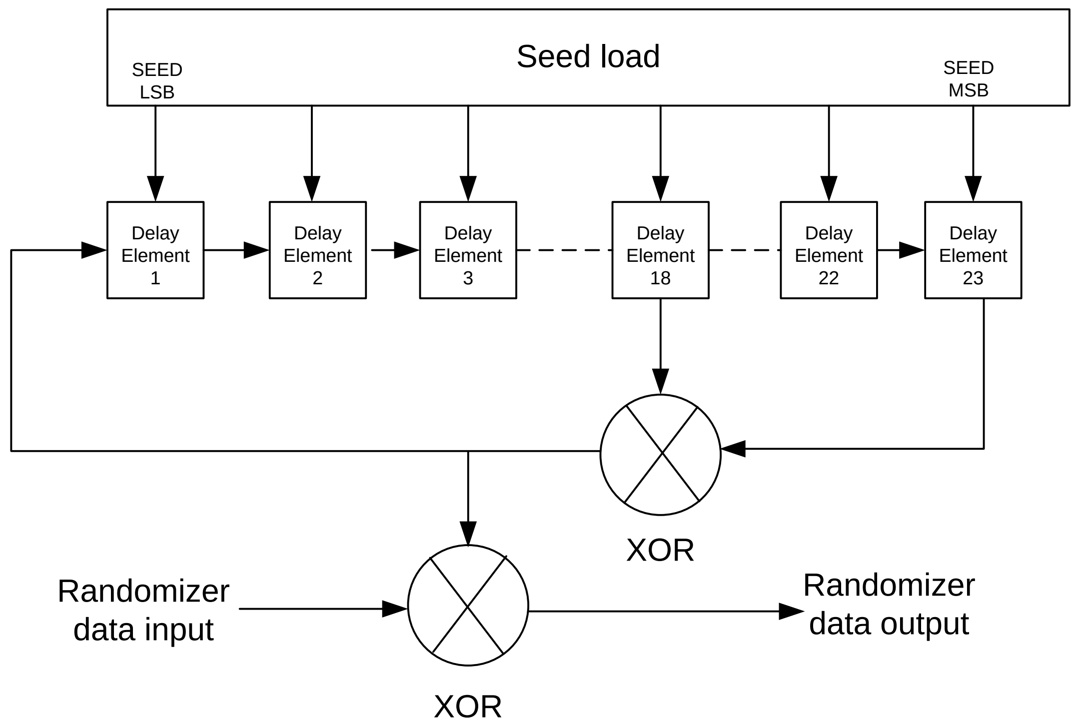


Figure 7-4 - Upstream Data Randomizer

7.4.5 Time and Frequency Interleaving and De-interleaving

Upstream transmissions can be affected by burst noise that reduces the SNR of all the subcarriers of a few successive OFDMA symbols. Upstream transmissions may also be impacted by ingress, i.e., relatively narrowband interferers, that can last for several symbol periods and therefore reduce the SNR of a subset of subcarriers over an entire OFDMA frame. The purpose of the interleaver is to distribute the affected subcarriers over a number of FEC blocks, enabling the FEC at the receiver to correct the corrupt data.

Time and frequency interleaving in the upstream are applied together in the CM as a single operation and hence referred to as upstream interleaving. Similarly, time and frequency de-interleaving are performed together as a single operation in the CMTS, and hence referred to here as upstream de-interleaving.

The CM MUST apply interleaving to upstream OFDMA subcarriers. The interleaving is applied after the randomizer in conjunction with the bits being allocated to QAM subcarriers, and before the OFDMA IFFT operation.

The CM MUST exclude any zero-valued minislots from the interleaving process.

The CM MUST apply interleaving to a sequence of minislots of an OFDMA frame of a specific grant, not exceeding 24, as described in this section.

The CMTS MUST apply de-interleaving which is the inverse of the CM interleaving function carried out by the CM.

The maximum number of minislots over which interleaving is applied is equal to 24. If the number of minislots of a specific grant in one OFDMA frame is less than or equal to 24, then interleaving is applied over all of these minislots.

If the number of minislots in a specific grant in one OFDMA frame is more than 24, say N_{MS_Total}, then the CM MUST partition these N_{MS_Total} minislots into ceil(N_{MS_Total} / 24) blocks of minislots, as uniformly as possible, without the number of minislots in any block exceeding 24, using the algorithm given in the flow diagram shown in Figure 7-5.

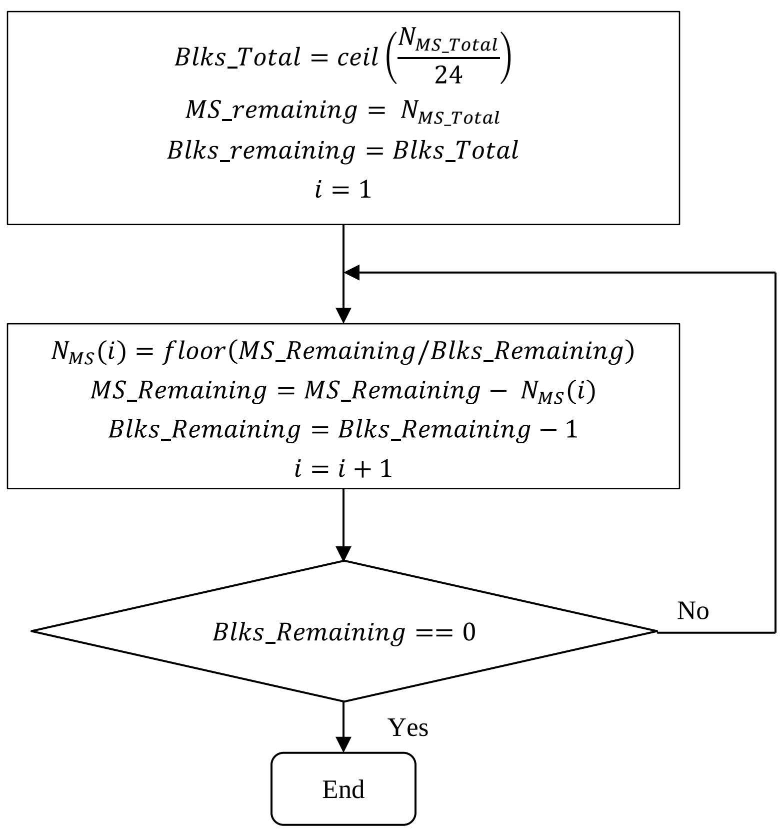


Figure 7-5 - Calculating Number of Minislots in Each Block for Upstream Interleaving

The described algorithm in Figure 7-5 yields the sequence:

$$\{N_{MS}(i),\ \ for\ \ i = 1, 2, \ldots, Blks\_Total\}$$

There are *Blks_Total* of blocks of minislots, and in each block there are $N_{MS}(i)$ minislots. For each block of $N_{MS}(i)$ minislots the CM MUST apply interleaving as described in this section.

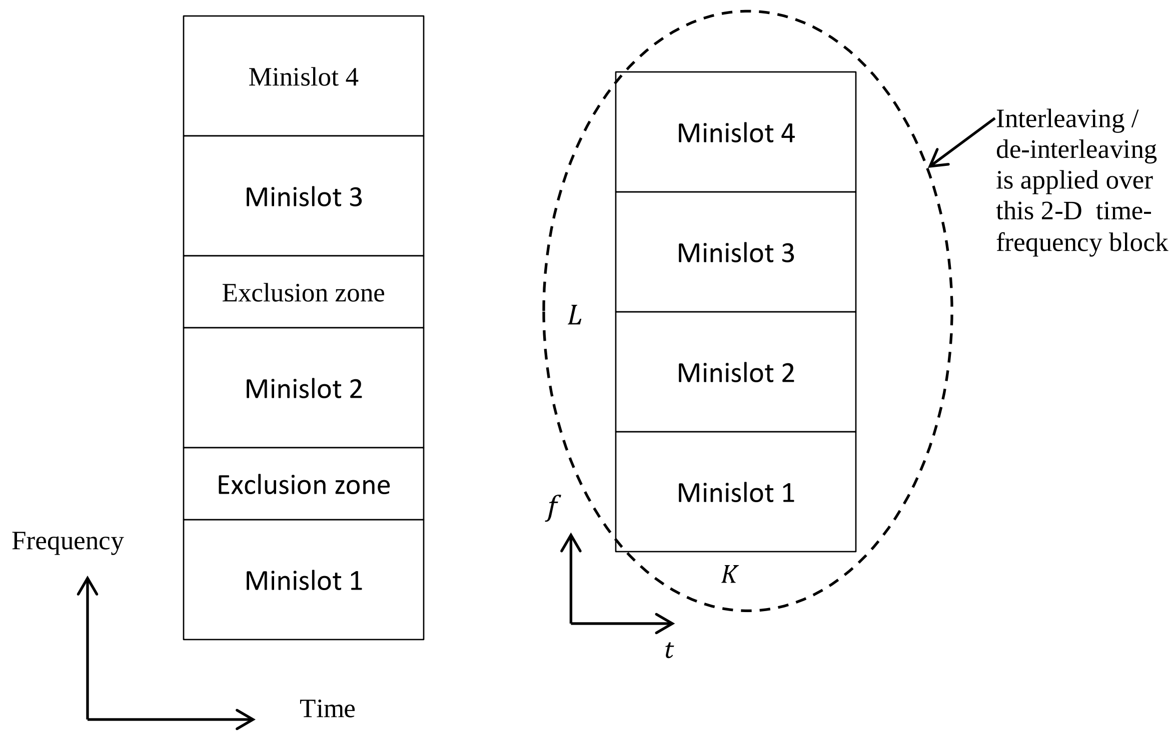


Figure 7-6 - Illustrating Minislots of a Grant over which Interleaving is Performed

Figure 7-6 shows an example of a block of four minislots over which interleaving is applied. The horizontal axis is time. Every vertical column constitutes a segment of an OFDMA symbol. The vertical axis is frequency. Each horizontal line is a set of subcarriers at a specific frequency over several symbols.

In the illustration in Figure 7-6, there is an exclusion zone between minislots 1 and 2. There is also an exclusion zone between minislots 2 and 3. All four minislots are merged to form a two-dimensional grant for the purpose of interleaving and de-interleaving. In the CM, the interleaving is applied first and then the exclusion zones are introduced in mapping of the interleaved subcarriers onto OFDMA symbols.

Interleaving and de-interleaving are two-dimensional operations in the time-frequency plane.

7.4.5.1 Time and Frequency Interleaving

The system block diagram for interleaving is illustrated in Figure 7-7.

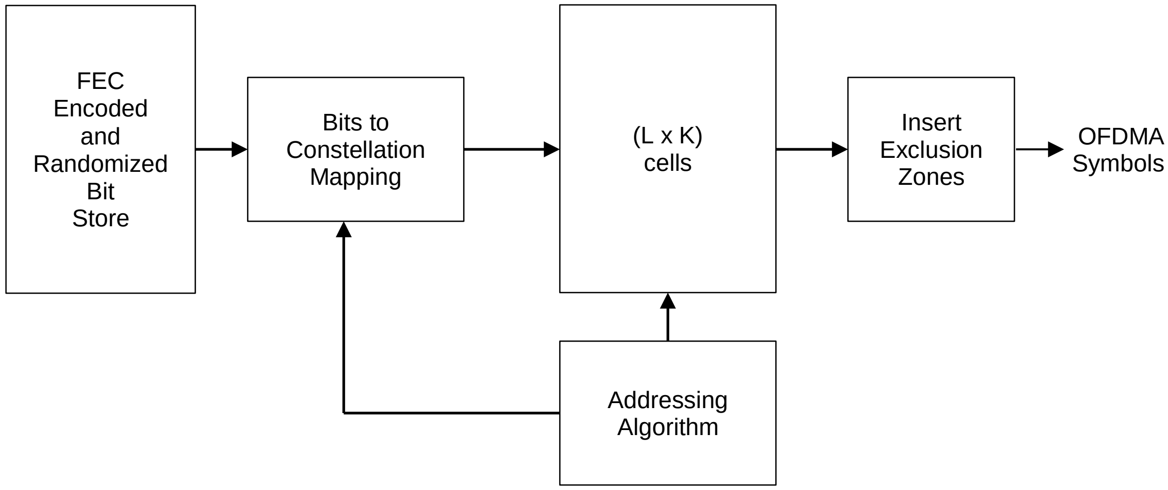


Figure 7-7 - Sample Interleaver Block Diagram

The two-dimensional array is addressed by coordinate pair (t, f). The horizontal dimension is *K*, which is the number of OFDMA symbols in the frame. The vertical dimension is *L*, which is the total number of subcarriers in all the minislots that make up the grant in the current frame. Each element in this two-dimensional array is a member of the set:

{Data subcarrier, Complementary data subcarrier, Pilot}

All data subcarriers in a minislot will have the same QAM constellation. All complementary data subcarriers in a minislot will also have the same QAM constellation, but this will be lower in order than that of the data subcarriers in that minislot.

Furthermore, the QAM constellations of data and complementary pilots need not be the same for all minislots in the grant.

Interleaving involves the following two stages.

- Writing the subcarriers in the cells of the two dimensional array of size (*L* x *K*). The CM MUST follow the algorithm given in this section for placing data subcarriers and complementary data subcarriers in the cells of this two-dimensional array. The CM MUST NOT place any data subcarriers or complementary pilots at locations corresponding to pilots which are also part of this two-dimensional array.
- Reading data subcarriers as well as pilots along vertical columns of the two-dimensional array, in the ascending order of the time dimension coordinate t, inserting exclusion zones, if any, and passing these segments of OFDMA symbols to the IFFT processor.

Figure 7-6 is for illustration only. An implementation may not necessarily have a separate FEC Encoded bit store. The FEC encoded and randomized output may be mapped directly into QAM subcarriers and placed in the cells of the *(L x K)* two-dimensional array. In that way the two-dimensional array may form the output buffer for the FEC encoder.

The Address Generation and the Bit Mapping algorithms need to know:

a) Values of *K* and *L*

b) Locations of pilots

c) Locations of complementary pilots

d) QAM constellations for data subcarriers of all minislots of the grant in the frame

e) QAM constellations for complementary pilots of all minislots of the grant in the frame

f) Minislot boundaries along the frequency dimension of the *(L x K)* array

The interleaving algorithm follows the flow diagram in Figure 7-8.

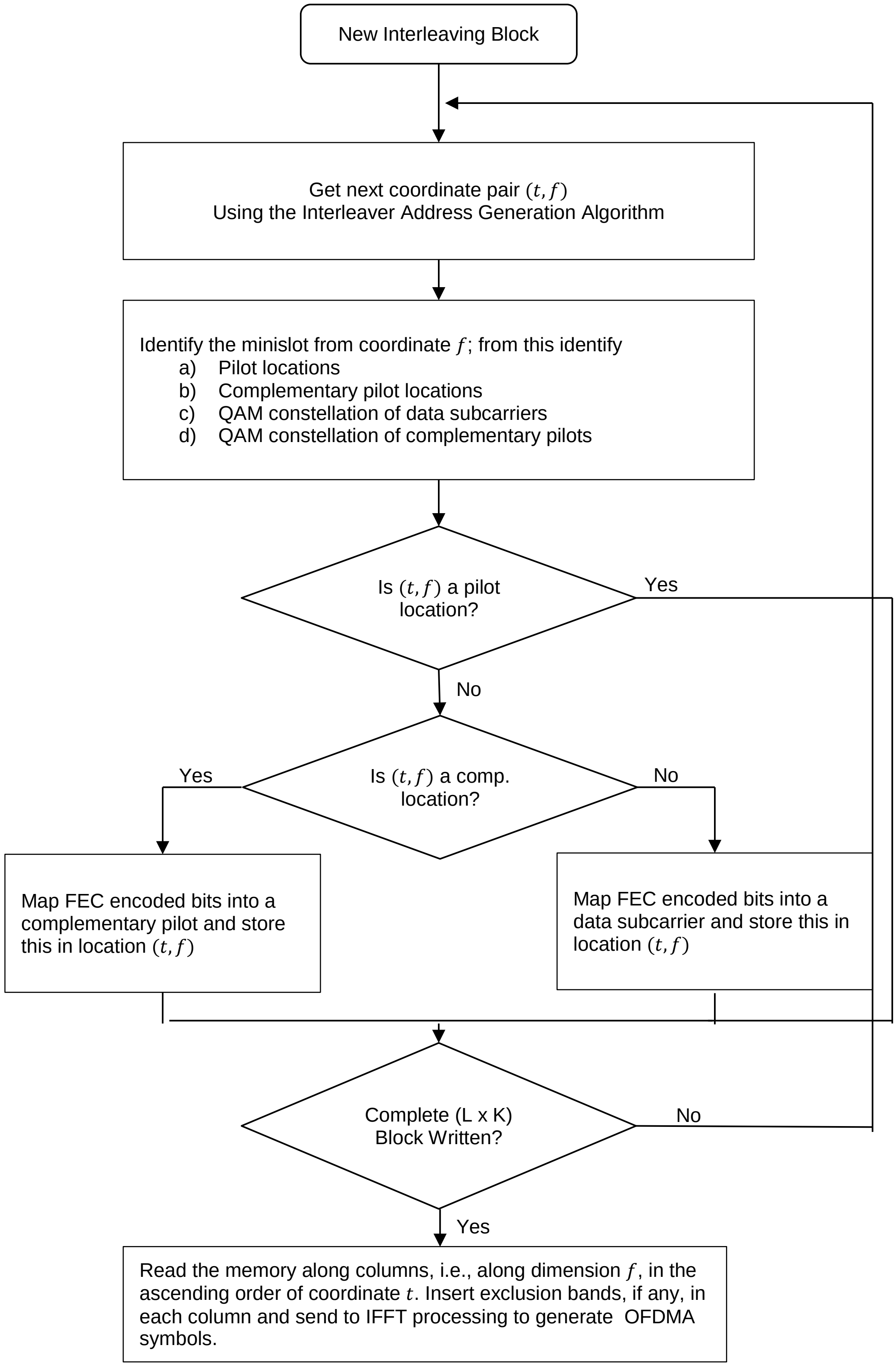


Figure 7-8 - Interleaving a Grant within an OFDMA Frame

The address generation algorithm for getting the next coordinate pair *(t, f)* is described below. This makes use of three bit-reverse counters.

1) Count_t

2) Count_f

3) Count_diagonal

The third counter is used to count the diagonals. This is because subcarriers are written in the two-dimensional *t-f* array along diagonals. To write along diagonals in natural order, both the counters *Count_t* and *Count_f* have to be incremented at the same time. Once one diagonal is written, the third counter *Count_diagonal* is incremented by one.

However, in order to maximize the separation of successive subcarriers in the time-frequency plane, bit-reversed counting is used in all of the above three counters. This ensures that successive subcarriers are not written on successive locations in the diagonals.

The algorithm for generating the sequence of addresses *(t, f)* is described below with sample C code given in Appendix III.

Initialize three counters, *Count_t, Count_f* and *Count_diagonal*, to zero.

For each value of OFDM symbol index *idx_t* going from 0 to (K-1), implement the following 4 steps:

1) For each value subcarrier index *idx_f* going from 0 to (L-1) implement the following 4 sub-steps:
   a) Generate the component t of (t, f) by passing Count_t and parameter K to the Bit-Reverse counter defined in the flow diagram of Figure 7-9. This returns t and a new counter value for Count_t.
   b) Generate the component f of (t, f) by passing Count_f and parameter L to the Bit-Reverse counter defined in the flow diagram of Figure 7-9. This returns f and a new counter value for Count_f.
   c) Increment Count_t by one modulo K1
   d) Increment Count_f by one modulo L1

2) Increment Count_diagonal by one modulo K1

3) Pass Count_diagonal and parameter K to the Bit-Reverse counter defined in the flow diagram of Figure 7-9. This returns a new counter value for Count_diagonal.

4) Set Count_t to the value of Count_diagonal. Set Count_f to zero. Return to step 1.

The pseudo code given in Appendix III will generate the entire sequence of addresses. This is for illustration purposes only. In the actual implementation, the code may be modified to generate one address at a time, so that data may be saved in the memory in parallel with address generation.

The pseudo code in Appendix III contains a call to the function called Bit_Reverse_Count. The algorithm implemented by this function is explained below with reference to the flow diagram of Figure 7-9. With no loss of generality, this explanation uses the function call for *Count_t*.

The parameter K_1 is defined as the smallest power of 2 that is equal to or greater than K. The minimum number of binary bits needed to represent K is k_1. In this case then, $K_1 = 2^{k_1}$. Similarly, parameter L_1 is defined as the smallest power of 2 greater than L.

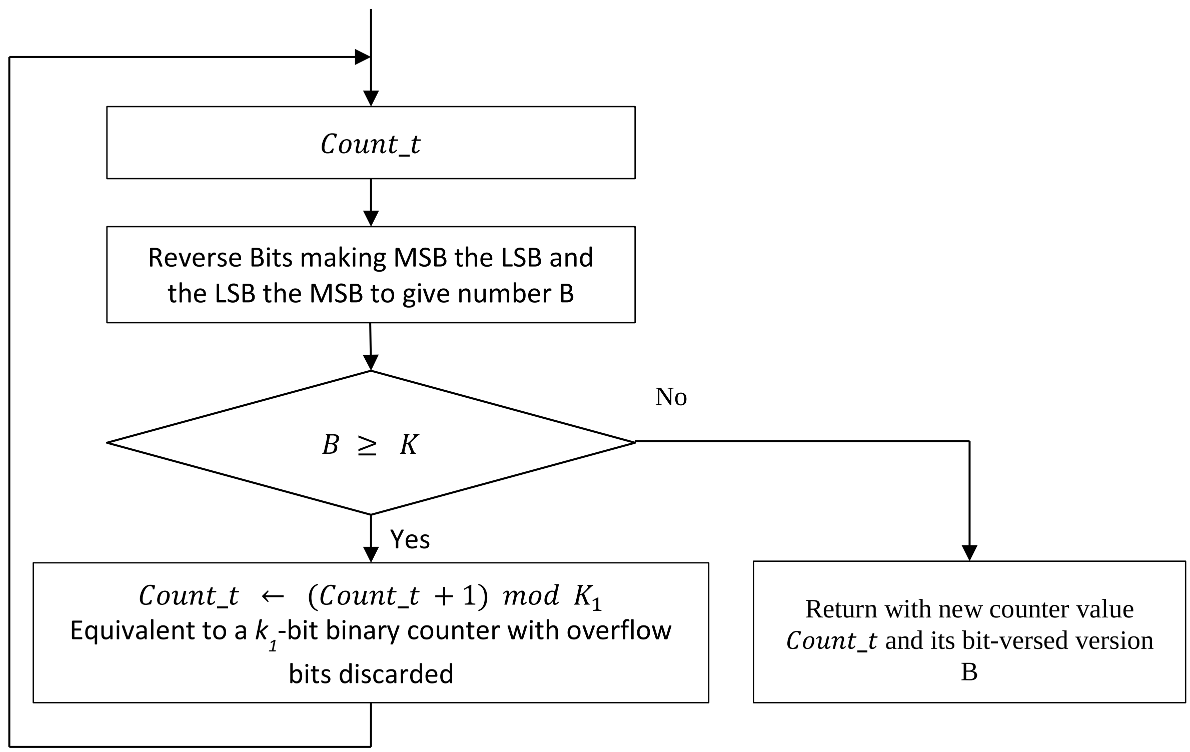


Figure 7-9 - Bit-Reversed Counter Implementation

Bit-reverse counting employs a modulo 2^{k_1} counter. This is equivalent to a k_1-bit counter with overflow bits discarded. In bit-reversed counting the above counter is incremented beginning from its current value until the bit-reversed version of the counter value is in the range [0, (K-1)].

The term bit-reversion is defined below. Let A be the value of *Count_t* and let B be its bit-reversed value. Let the binary representation of A be given by:

$$A = \sum_{i=0}^{k_1-1} a_i 2^i$$

Then B is given by:

$$B = \sum_{i=0}^{k_1-1} b_i 2^i = \sum_{i=0}^{k_1-1} a_i 2^{k_1-1-i}$$

7.4.6 Mapping of Bits to Cell Words

CMs are granted transmission opportunities by minislots, and minislots are associated with subcarriers. All subcarriers of a specific type (data subcarriers, pilots, complementary pilots) within a minislot have the same modulation order, although different minislots may have different modulation orders; the modulation order to be used is determined by the Profile associated with the minislot.

The CM MUST modulate the incoming serial binary bitstream from the data scrambler to constellation symbols using the constellation mapping described in Section 7.4.7.2.

The CM MUST map the incoming bitstream {a0, a1, a2, …} to {y0, y1, …} for each QAM symbol such that the first incoming bit is the most-significant bit of the constellation symbol when bits are mapped into constellation symbols.

The CM MUST have the same nominal average power for all constellations.

7.4.7 Mapping and De-mapping Bits to/from QAM Subcarriers

CMs are granted transmission opportunities by minislots, and minislots are associated with subcarriers. All subcarriers of a specific type (i.e., data subcarriers, pilots, complementary pilots or zero-valued subcarriers) within a minislot have the same modulation order, although different minislots may have different modulation orders; the modulation order to be used is determined by the Profile associated with the minislot.

Some minislots may be specified as zero-valued in some profiles. The CM MUST NOT transmit anything in the minislots of these profiles. The CM MUST set all subcarriers, including data subcarriers, pilots and complementary pilots to zero in these minislots of these profiles. A zero-valued minislot in one profile may not be zero-valued in another profile.

7.4.7.1 Modulation Formats

The CM modulator MUST support zero valued subcarriers of upstream OFDMA channels.

The CM modulator MUST support BPSK, QPSK, 8-QAM, 16-QAM, 32-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, and 4096-QAM for subcarriers of upstream OFDMA channels. BPSK is used for pilots and complementary pilots only, and not used for data transmission.

The CMTS demodulator MUST support zero valued subcarriers of upstream OFDMA channels.

The CMTS demodulator MUST support BPSK, QPSK, 8-QAM, 16-QAM, 32-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, and 1024-QAM for subcarriers of upstream OFDMA channels. BPSK is used for pilots and complementary pilots only, and not used for data transmission.

The CMTS demodulator SHOULD support 2048-QAM and 4096-QAM for subcarriers of upstream OFDMA channels.

7.4.7.2 Constellation Mapping

The CM MUST encode the bitstream such that the first bit is the most-significant bit of the first QAM subcarrier constellation m-tuple.

$\longrightarrow$ Time

$x_0\ x_1\ \dots\ x_{m-1}\ x_m\ x_{m+1}\ \dots\ x_{2m-1}\ x_{2m}\ \dots$

	MSB	LSB
QAM m-tuple 1:	$x_0\ x_1\ \dots\ x_{m-1}$	
QAM m-tuple 2:	$x_m\ x_{m+1}\ \dots\ x_{2m-1}$	
QAM m-tuple 3:	$x_{2m}\ x_{2m+1}\ \dots\ x_{3m-1}$	

Figure 7-10 - Bitstream to QAM M-Tuple Mapping

The CM MUST modulate the interleaved m-tuples onto subcarriers using QAM constellation mappings described in Annex A.

The CM MUST ensure that subcarriers of all QAM constellations have the same nominal average power using the scaling factors given in Table A–1 of Annex A.

The CMTS receiver MUST demodulate the incoming QAM constellation subcarriers of a minislot according to the Profile associated with the minislot, with the first demapped value associated with the most-significant bit of the constellation point.

7.4.8 REQ Messages

REQ messages are short messages used by the CM to request transmission opportunities from the CMTS. These messages have a different structure than the data messages: they are always 56 bits long, they always use QPSK modulation, do not apply any FEC and are block interleaved.

REQ message processing is described in Figure 7-11.

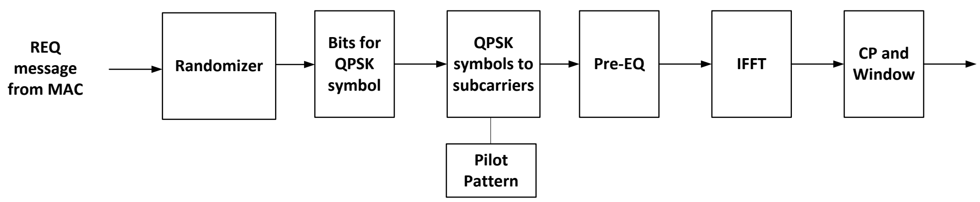


Figure 7-11 - REQ Messages Processing

The CM MUST randomize REQ messages using the randomizer described in Section 7.4.4.

The CM MUST modulate REQ messages using QPSK.

The CM MUST use the subslot minislots with the pilot patterns as specified in Sections 7.4.16.4 and 7.4.16.5 for 25 KHz and 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

The CM MUST write the REQ messages QPSK symbols into subslots as described in Section 8.2.4.2.

The CM MUST use the same CP size and RP size used for the data transmission.

7.4.9 IDFT

The upstream OFDMA signal transmitted by the CM is described using the following IDFT equation:

$$x(i) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} X(k) \exp(j \frac{2\pi i \left(k - \frac{N}{2}\right)}{N}), \quad for \ \ i = 0, 1, \dots, (N-1)$$

Where N equals 2048 with 50 KHz subcarrier spacing and 4096 with 25 KHz subcarrier spacing. The resulting time domain discrete signal, $x(i)$, is a baseband complex-valued signal, sampled at 102.4 Msamples per second.

In this definition of the IDFT $X(0)$ is the lowest frequency component; and $X(N\text{-}1)$ is the highest frequency component.

The IDFT operation is illustrated in Figure 7-12.

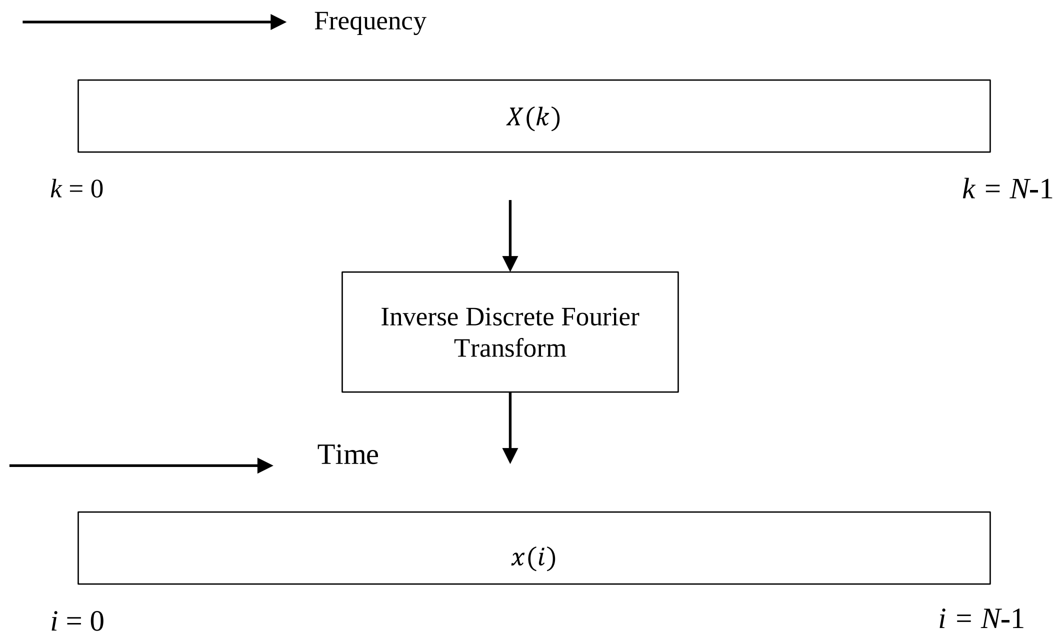


Figure 7-12 - Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform

7.4.10 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing[7]

Cyclic prefix and windowing are applied in the upstream transmission. Cyclic prefix is added in order to enable the receiver to overcome the effects of inter-symbol interference (ISI) and caused by micro-reflections in the channel. Windowing is applied in order to maximize channel capacity by sharpening the edges of the spectrum of the OFDMA signal. Spectral edges occur at the two ends of the spectrum of the OFDM symbol, as well as at the ends of internal exclusion bands.

In the presence of a micro-reflection in the transmission medium, the received signal is the sum of the main signal and the delayed and attenuated micro-reflection. As long as this delay (τ) is less than the time duration of the cyclic prefix (T_{CP}), the CMTS receiver can trigger the FFT to avoid any inter-symbol or inter-carrier interference due to this micro reflection, as shown in Figure 7-13.

[7] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1197-2 on 12/11/14 by JB.

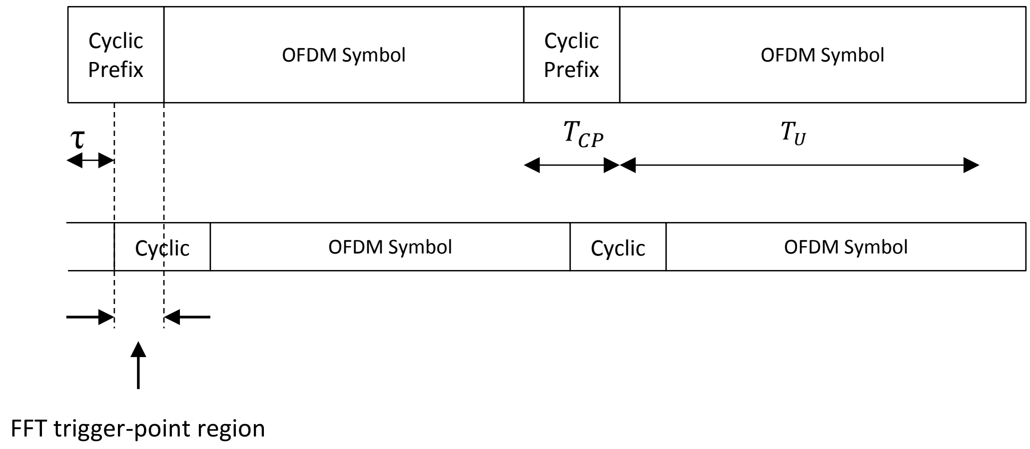


Figure 7-13 - Signal with Micro-Reflection at the Receiver

If the delay of the micro-reflection exceeds the length of the cyclic prefix, the ISI resulting from this micro-reflection is:

$$ISI = \frac{(\tau - T_{CP})A^2}{T_U}$$

where:

τ is the delay introduced by the micro-reflection

T_{CP} is the cyclic prefix length in µs

A is the relative amplitude of the micro-reflection

T_U is FFT duration (20 or 40 µs)

The inter-carrier-interference introduced by this micro-reflection is of the same order as the ISI.

The CM transmitter MUST apply the configured CP and Windowing as described in Section 7.4.10.1.

The CM transmitter MUST support the cyclic prefix values defined in Table 7–4.

The CMTS receiver MUST support the cyclic prefix values defined in Table 7–4.

Table 7–4 - Upstream Cyclic Prefix (CP) Values

Cyclic Prefix (µs)	Cyclic Prefix Samples (N_{cp})
0.9375	96
1.25	128
1.5625	160
1.875	192
2.1875	224
2.5	256
2.8125	288
3.125	320
3.75	384

Cyclic Prefix (µs)	Cyclic Prefix Samples (N_{cp})
5.0	512
6.25	640

In Table 7–4 the cyclic prefix (in µs) is converted into samples using the sample rate of 102.4 Msamples/s.

Windowing is applied in the time domain by tapering (or rolling off) the edges using a raised cosine function.

The CMTS MUST support the eight roll-off period values listed in Table 7–5.

The CM MUST support the eight roll-off period values listed in Table 7–5.

The CMTS MUST only allow a configuration in which the Roll-Off Period value is smaller than the Cyclic Prefix value, except for Initial Ranging transmissions. For Initial Ranging the CM MUST use Roll-Off Period values as defined in Table 7–15.

Table 7–5 - Upstream Roll-Off Period (RP) Values

Roll-Off Period (µs)	Roll-Off Period Samples (N_{RP})
0	0
0.3125	32
0.625	64
0.9375	96
1.25	128
1.5625	160
1.875	192
2.1875	224

The Roll-Off Period is given in µs and in number of samples using the sample rate of 102.4 Msamples/s.

7.4.10.1 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing Algorithm

The algorithm for cyclic prefix extension and windowing is described here with reference to Figure 7-14.

The CM MUST support cyclic prefix extension and windowing as described in this section.

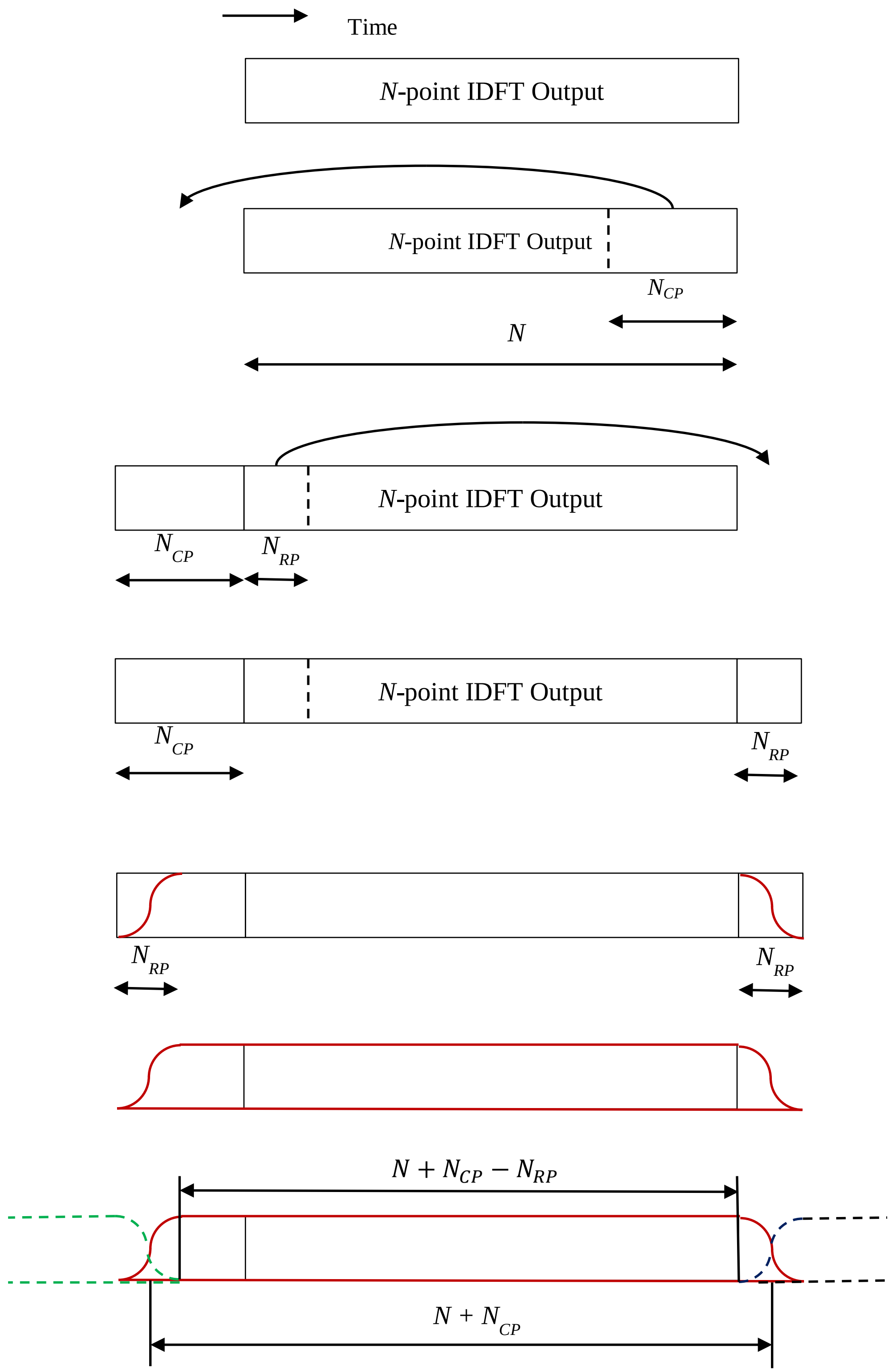


Figure 7-14 - Cyclic Prefix and Windowing Algorithm

Processing begins with the N-point output of the IDFT. Let this be:

$$\{\, x(0),\ x(1), \dots\ , x(N-1)\}$$

The N_{CP} samples at the end of this N-point IDFT are copied and prepended to the beginning of the IDFT output to give a sequence of length (N+N_{CP}):

$$\{x(N-N_{CP}),\ x(N-N_{CP}+1), \dots,\ x(N-1),\ x(0),\ x(1), \dots\ , x(N-1)\}$$

The N_{RP} samples at the start of this N-point IDFT are copied and appended to the end of the IDFT output to give a sequence of length (N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}):

$$\{x(N-N_{CP}),\ x(N-N_{CP}+1), \dots,\ x(N-1),\ x(0),\ x(1), \dots\ , x(N-1), x(0), x(1),\ \dots\ , x(N_{RP}-1)\}$$

Let this extended sequence of length (N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}) be defined as:

$$\{y(i),\ \ i=0,\ 1, \dots\ , (N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}-1)\}$$

N_{RP} samples at both ends of this extended sequence are subject to tapering. This tapering is achieved using a raised-cosine window function; a window is defined to be applied to this entire extended sequence. This window has a flat top and raised-cosine tapering at the edges, as shown in Figure 7-15.

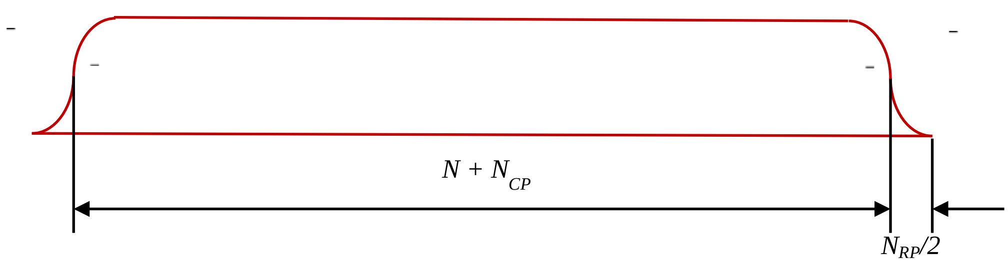


Figure 7-15 - Tapering Window

The window function $w(i)$ is symmetric at the center; therefore, only the right half of the window is defined in the following equation:

$$w\left(\frac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}+i\right)=1.0\,,\ \ for\ \ i=0,1, \dots\ , \left(\frac{N+N_{CP}-N_{RP}}{2}-1\right)$$

$$w\left(i+\frac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}\right)\ =\ \frac{1}{2}\left(1-\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{\alpha(N+N_{CP})}\left(i-\frac{N+N_{CP}}{2}+1/2\right)\right)\right),$$

for $i=\left(\frac{N+N_{CP}-N_{RP}}{2}\right), \dots\ , \left(\frac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}-1\right)$

Here,

$$\alpha\ =\ \frac{N_{RP}}{N+N_{CP}}$$

defines the window function for $(N+N_{CP}+N_{RP})/2$ samples. The complete window function of length (N + N_{CP} + N_{RP}) is defined using the symmetry property as:

$$w\left(\frac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}-i-1\right)\ =w\left(\frac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}+i\right),$$

for $i=0,1, \dots, \dfrac{N+N_{CP}+N_{RP}}{2}-1$

This yields a window function (or sequence): $\{w(i),\ i = 0, 1, \ldots\ , (N + N_{CP} + N_{RP} - 1)\}$. The length of this sequence is an even-valued integer.

The above window function is applied to the sequence $\{y(i)\}$:

$$z(i) = \ y(i)\, w(i), \quad for\ i = 0, \qquad 1, \ldots\ , (N + N_{CP} + N_{RP} - 1)$$

Each successive set of N samples at the output of the IDFT yields a sequence $z(i)$ of length $(N + N_{CP} + N_{RP})$. Each of these sequences is overlapped at each edge by N_{RP} samples with the preceding and following sequences, as shown in the last stage of Figure 7-14. Overlapping regions are added together.

To define this "overlap and add" function mathematically, consider two successive sequences $z_1(i)$ and $z_2(i)$. The overlap and addition operations of these sequences are defined using the following equation:

$$z_1(N + N_{CP} + i) + z_2(i), \ \text{ for } i = 0, 1, \ldots, N_{RP} - 1$$

That is, the last N_{RP} samples of sequence $z_1(i)$ are overlapped and added to the first N_{RP} samples of sequence $z_2(i)$.

7.4.10.2 Parameter Optimization

7.4.10.2.1 Impacts of Cyclic Prefix and Windowing

The combination of cyclic prefix insertion and windowing can impact OFDM symbol duration: once the CP and RP additions have been made, the length of the extended OFDM symbol is ($N + N_{CP} + N_{RP}$) samples. Of this, ($N_{RP}/2$) samples are within the preceding symbol, and ($N_{RP}/2$) samples are within the following symbol. This yields a symbol period of ($N + N_{CP}$) samples.

In addition, successive symbols interfere with each other by ($N_{RP}/2$) samples. Therefore, the non-overlapping flat segment of the transmitted symbol = ($N + N_{CP} - N_{RP}$).

There are eleven possible values for N_{CP} and eight possible values for N_{RP}. This gives 88 possible values for α. However, combinations $N_{RP} \geq N_{CP}$ are not permitted. This limits the number of possible combinations for α.

The user would normally select the cyclic prefix length N_{CP} to meet a given delay spread requirement in the channel. Then the user would select the N_{RP} to meet the roll-off (i.e., the α parameter) requirement. Increasing α parameter leads to sharper spectral edges in the frequency domain.

However, increasing N_{RP} for a given N_{CP} reduces the non-overlapping flat region of the symbol, thereby reducing the ability of the receiver to overcome inter-symbol-interference. Similarly, increasing N_{CP} for a given N_{RP} does reduce the roll-off parameter α.

7.4.10.2.2 Joint Optimization of Cyclic Prefix and Windowing Parameters

It is clear from the section above that the parameters N_{CP} and N_{RP} have to be jointly optimized for given channel, taking into account the following properties of the channel:

a) Bandwidth of the transmitted signal

b) Number of exclusion zones in the transmitted bandwidth

c) Channel micro-reflection profile

d) QAM constellation

The QAM constellation defines the tolerable inter-symbol and inter-carrier interference. This in turn defines the cyclic prefix for a given micro-reflection profile. The bandwidth of the transmitted signal and the number of exclusion zones define the sharpness of the spectral edges, and hence the amount of tapering. However, the amount of tapering and the flat region of the cyclic prefix are not independent variables. Therefore, an optimization program is needed to identify optimum values for N_{CP} and N_{RP} for the above parameters. This optimization is important because it does have significant impact on channel capacity, i.e., the bit rate.

The joint optimization of N_{CP} and N_{RP} is left to the network operator.

7.4.11 Burst Timing Convention

The start time of an OFDMA transmission by a CM is referenced to an OFDMA frame boundary that corresponds to the starting minislot of the transmission opportunity.

For all transmissions, except Fine Ranging and Requests in subslots not at the start of a frame, the CM transmits the first sample of the CP of the first symbol at the starting frame boundary. For fine ranging, the CM starts transmission one OFDMA symbol (including the CP) after the start of the first OFDMA frame of the ranging opportunity. Request opportunities in subslots not at the start of a frame are referenced to the symbol boundary at the start of the subslot.

7.4.11.1 Upstream Time Reference of an OFDMA Frame

The upstream time reference is defined as the first sample of the first symbol of an OFDMA frame, pointed to by the dashed arrow of Figure 7-16. The parameter N_{FFT} refers to the length of the FFT duration which is either 2048 or 4096, and the parameter N_{CP} is the length of the configurable cyclic prefix. The sample rate is 102.4 Msamples per second.

7.4.11.2 Upstream Time Reference of an OFDMA Symbol

The upstream time reference for construction of each OFDMA symbol is defined as the first sample of each FFT duration of each OFDMA symbol, pointed to by the dotted arrow of Figure 7-16.

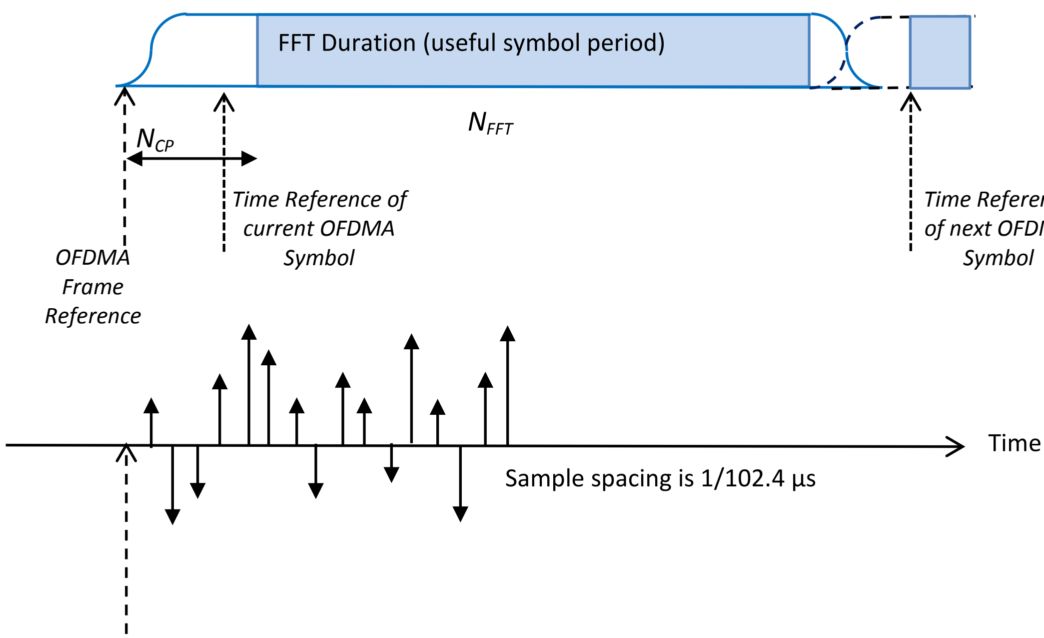


Figure 7-16 - Time References for OFDMA Symbol and Frame

7.4.12 Fidelity Requirements

A DOCSIS 3.1 CM is required to generate up to 8 channels of legacy DOCSIS plus up to 2 OFDMA channels as defined in Sections 6.2.1 and 7.2.1.

A CM's Transmit Channel Set (TCS) is the combination of legacy channels and OFDMA channels being transmitted by the CM.

With BW_{legacy} being the combined occupied bandwidth of the legacy channel(s) in its TCS, and BW_{OFDMA} being the combined occupied bandwidth of the OFDMA channel(s) in its TCS, the CM is said to have N_{eq} = ceil(BW_{legacy}

(MHz)/1.6 MHz) + ceil(BW_{OFDMA} (MHz)/1.6 MHz) "equivalent DOCSIS channels" in its TCS. BW_{OFDMA} (MHz) is the sum of the bandwidth of the maximum modulated spectrum of all the OFDMA channels that are active.

"Equivalent channel power" of a legacy DOCSIS channel refers to the power in 1.6 MHz of spectrum.

The "equivalent channel power" of an OFDMA channel is the average power of the OFDMA subcarriers of the channel normalized to 1.6 MHz bandwidth. This equivalent channel power of an OFDMA channel is denoted as $P_{1.6}$. The TCS has N legacy (N from zero to eight) plus zero, one, or two OFDMA channels, but also is described as having N_{eq} number of equivalent DOCSIS channels.

Each channel in the TCS is described by its reported power, which is the power of the channel when it is fully granted. Each channel is also characterized by its "equivalent channel power," which is the channel power normalized to 1.6 MHz (Power Spectral Density of the average power of the channel multiplied by 1.6 MHz).

7.4.12.1 Maximum Scheduled Minislots

While transmitting on the large upstream spectrum supported by DOCSIS 3.1, a CM can encounter large upstream attenuation and can have a power deficit when attempting to reach the CMTS receiver at the nominal OFDMA channel set power. A CMTS has several options in dealing with such CMs: it can limit the TCS to the channel set that will enable the CM to reach the CMTS receiver at the nominal set power; it can assign the CM a profile which includes reduced modulation depth enabling proper reception even at lower received power; or, it can operate that CM under Maximum Scheduled Minislots (MSM).

Complete control of MSM operation is under the CMTS. The CMTS does not inform the CM when it decides to assign it to MSM operation in a specific OFDMA channel. Instead, the CMTS instructs the CM to transmit with a higher power spectral density than the CM is capable of with a 100% grant. In addition, the CMTS limits the number of minislots concurrently scheduled to the CM, such that the CM is not given transmit opportunities on that OFDMA channel that will result in overreaching its reported transmission power capability. The CMTS also optimizes the power used by the CM to probe an OFDMA channel, for which the CM is operating under MSM, by using the Power Control parameters in the Probe Information Element directed to that CM. Refer to Section 7.4.12.3 for details.

Note that when operating under MSM, it is expected that a CM that normally meets the fidelity and performance requirements will only exhibit graceful degradation. Refer to Section 7.4.12.2 for details. Also note that the CMTS is expected to discriminate between a CM whose fidelity degrades gracefully and a CM whose fidelity does not, and provide the capability to disallow a CM whose fidelity does not degrade gracefully from operating under MSM.

7.4.12.2 Transmit Power Requirements

The transmit power requirements are a function of the number and occupied bandwidth of the OFDMA and legacy channels in the TCS. The minimum highest value of the total power output of the CM P_{max} is 65 dBmV, although higher values are allowed. The total maximum power is distributed among the channels in the TCS, based on equal power spectral density (PSD) when the OFDMA and legacy channels are fully granted to the CM. Channels can then be reduced in power from their max power that was possible based on equal PSD allocated (with limits on the reduction). This ensures that each channel can be set to a power range (within the DRW) between its maximum power, $P_{1.6h}$, and minimum power, $P_{1.6low}$, and that any possible transmit grant combination can be accommodated without exceeding the transmit power capability of the CM.

Maximum equivalent channel power ($P_{1.6Max}$) is calculated as $P_{1.6Max} = P_{max}$ dBmV – $10\log_{10}(N_{eq})$.

NOTE: For DOCSIS 3.1 $P_{1.6hi} = P_{1.6Max.}$

For a CM operating in DOCSIS 3.1 mode, even on a SC-QAM channel, the CMTS MUST limit the commanded $P_{1.6Max}$ to no more than 53.2 dBmV+ (P_{max} - 65) if the bandwidth of the modulated spectrum is ≤ 24 MHz. This enforces a maximum power spectral density of P_{max} dBmV per 24 MHz. This limit on power spectral density does not apply for a CM operating in DOCSIS 3.0 mode, where the fidelity requirements are the DOCSIS 3.0 fidelity requirements and not the fidelity requirements of the DOCSIS 3.1 mode.

SC-QAM channels that are 6.4 MHz in BW have a power of $P_{1.6r\_n}$ + 6 dB. The minimum equivalent channel power ($P_{1.6Min}$) for OFDMA channels with non-boosted pilots is $P_{1.6Min}$ = 17 dBmV. For OFDMA channels with boosted pilots, prior to pre-equalization, $P_{1.6Min}$ is 18 dBmV with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing and 17.5 dBmV with 25 kHz spacing. For Initial Ranging and before completion of Fine Ranging, transmissions may use power per subcarrier which is as much as 9 dB lower than indicated by $P_{1.6Min}$. These transmissions are prior to any data grant transmissions from the CM and as such the CM analog and digital gain balancing may be optimized for these transmissions. These transmissions, while possibly at very low power, are acceptable because, for example, they are not requiring severe underloading of a DAC.

The CMTS SHOULD NOT command the CM to set $P_{1.6r\_n}$ on any channel in the TCS to a value higher than the top of the DRW or lower than the bottom of the DRW, unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel.

If the CMTS does issue such a command, fidelity and performance requirements on the CM do not apply. Note that when operating under MSM, it is expected that a CM that normally meets the fidelity and performance requirements, will only exhibit graceful degradation. Also note that the CMTS is expected to discriminate between a CM that does meet such expectations and a CM that does not, and provide the capability to disallow a CM that does not meet such expectations to operate under MSM.

If the CM is commanded to transmit on any channel in the TCS at a value higher than $P_{1.6hi}$ or lower than $P_{1.6low\_n}$, the cable modem indicates an error condition by setting the appropriate bit in the SID field of RNG-REQ messages for that channel until the error condition is cleared [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

The CMTS sends transmit power level commands and pre-equalizer coefficients to the CM [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] to compensate for upstream plant conditions. The top edge of the DRW is set to a level, $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$, close to the highest $P_{1.6}$ transmit channel to optimally load the DAC. In extreme tilt conditions, some of the channels will be sent commands to transmit at lower $P_{1.6}$ values that use up a significant portion of the DRW. Additionally, the pre-equalizer coefficients of the OFDMA channels will also compensate for plant tilts. The CMTS normally administers a DRW of 12 dB [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] which is sufficient to accommodate plant tilts of up to 10 dB from lower to upper edge of the upstream band. Since the fidelity requirements are specified in flat frequency conditions from the top of the DRW (Dynamic Range Window), it is desirable to maintain CM transmission power levels as close to the top of the DRW as possible. When conditions change sufficiently to warrant it, a global reconfiguration time should be granted and the top of the DRW adjusted to maintain the best transmission fidelity and optimize system performance.

7.4.12.2.1 Transmit Power Requirements with Multiple Transmit Channel Mode Enabled[8]

The following requirements apply with Multiple Transmit Channel mode enabled. Requirements with Multiple Transmit Channel mode disabled are addressed in [DOCSIS PHYv3.0].

The CM MUST support varying the amount of transmit power. Requirements are presented for 1) range of reported transmit power per channel; 2) step size of power commands; 3) step size accuracy (actual change in output power per channel compared to commanded change); and 4) absolute accuracy of CM output power per channel. The protocol by which power adjustments are performed is defined in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. Such adjustments by the CM MUST be within the ranges of tolerances described below. A CM MUST confirm that the transmit power per channel limits are met after a RNG-RSP is received for each of the CM's active channels that is referenced and indicate that an error has occurred in the next RNG-REQ messages for the channel until the error condition is cleared [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. An active channel for a CM is defined as any channel which has been assigned to the CM's Transmit Channel Set either in Registration Response Message or a DBC-REQ Message, and prior to registration the channel in use is an (the) active channel. After registration, the set of "active channels" is also called the Transmit Channel Set. If the CMTS needs to add, remove, or replace channels in the CM's Transmit Channel Set, it uses the Dynamic Bonding Request (DBC-REQ) Message with Transmit Channel Configuration encodings to define the new desired Transmit Channel Set. Note that the set of channels actually bursting upstream from a CM is a subset of the active channels on that CM; often one or all active channels on a CM will not be bursting, but such quiet channels are still "active channels" for that CM.

Transmit power per channel is defined as the average RF power in the occupied bandwidth (channel width), assuming equally likely QAM symbols, measured at the F-connector of the CM as detailed below. Reported power for a SC-QAM channel is expressed in terms of $P_{1.6r\_n}$, i.e., the actual channel power for a 6.4 MHz channel would be 6 dB higher than the reported power (neglecting reporting accuracy). For a 1.6 MHz channel, the actual channel

[8] Revised per PHY3.1-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by PO.

power would be equal to the reported power (neglecting reporting accuracy). For SC-QAM signals, the reported power differs from the actual power in one respect for modulations other than 64-QAM, and that is the constellation gain as defined in Table 6-7, Table 6-8, and Table 6-9 of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0]. Reported transmit power for an OFDMA channel is also expressed as of $P_{1.6r\_n}$ and is defined as the average RF power of the CM transmission in the OFDMA channel, when transmitting in a grant comprised of 64 25 kHz subcarriers or 32 50 kHz subcarriers, for OFDMA channels which do not use boosted pilots. For OFDMA channels which have boosted pilots and 50 kHz subcarrier spacing, reported power is 1 dB higher than the average RF power of the CM transmission with a probe comprised of 32 subcarriers. For OFDMA channels which have boosted pilots and 25 kHz subcarrier spacing, reported power is 0.5 dB higher than the average RF power of the CM transmission with a probe comprised of 64 subcarriers. The additions to the probe power account for the maximum possible number of boosted pilots in each OFDMA symbol when the OFDMA channel uses boosted pilots. Equivalent channel power for an OFDMA channel is the reported transmit power normalized to 1.6 MHz bandwidth (four minislots). Total transmit power is defined as the sum of the transmit power per channel of each channel transmitting a burst at a given time.

The CM's actual transmitted power per equivalent channel MUST be within +/- 2 dB of the target power, $P_{1.6r\_n}$, with Pre-Equalization off taking into account whether pilots are present and symbol constellation values. The CM's target transmit power per channel MUST be variable over the range specified in Section 7.4.12.3. The CM's target transmit power per channel MAY be variable over a range that extends above the maximum levels specified in Section 7.4.12.3. Note that all fidelity requirements specified in Section 7.4.12.3 still apply when the CM is operating over its extended transmit power range, but the fidelity requirements do not apply when the CM is commanded to transmit at power levels which exceed the top of the DRW.

The CM communicates its ability to transmit above 65 dBmV to the CMTS via a modem capability encoding as defined in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. When the CM indicates that it supports the extended range and the CMTS disables this capabilitythe CM MUST use the default value of 65 dBmV for the maximum transmit power. If the CMTS disables the extended range capability, the CMTS MUST use the default value of 65 dBmV for the maximum transmit power.

With Multiple Transmit Channel mode enabled, let $P_{1.6load} = P_{1.6max} - P_{1.6r}$, for each channel, using the definitions for $P_{1.6max}$ and $P_{1.6r}$ in the following subsections of 7.4.12. The channel corresponding to the minimum value of $P_{1.6load}$ is called the highest loaded channel, and its value is denoted as $P_{1.6load\_1}$, in this specification even if there is only one channel in the Transmit Channel Set. A channel with high loading has a low $P_{1.6load\_n}$ value; the value of $P_{1.6load\_n}$ is analogous to an amount of back-off for an amplifier from its max power output, except that it is normalized to 1.6 MHz of bandwidth. A channel has lower power output when that channel has a lower loading (more back-off) and thus a higher value of $P_{1.6load\_n}$. Note that the highest loaded channel is not necessarily the channel with the highest transmit power, since a channel's max power depends on the bandwidth of the channel. The channel with the second lowest value of $P_{1.6load}$ is denoted as the second highest loaded channel, and its loading value is denoted as $P_{1.6load\_2}$; the channel with the nth lowest value of $P_{1.6load}$ is the nth highest loaded channel, and its loading value is denoted as $P_{1.6load\_n}$.

$P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ defines the upper end of the DRW for the CM with respect to $P_{1.6hi}$ for each channel. $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ will limit the maximum power possible for each active channel to a value less than $P_{1.6max}$ when $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ is greater than zero. $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ is a value commanded to the CM from the CMTS when the CM is given a TCC in registration and RNG-RSP messages [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$, $P_{1.6load\_ n}$, $P_{1.6hi}$, $P_{1.6\ r\_n}$, etc., are defined only when Multiple Transmit Channel mode is enabled.

The CMTS SHOULD command the CM to use a non-negative value for $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ such that $P_{1.6hi} - P_{1.6load\_min\_set} \geq P_{1.6low\ \_n}$ for each active channel, or equivalently:

$$0 \leq P_{1.6load\_min\_set} \leq P_{1.6hi} - P_{1.6low\_n.}$$

A value is computed, P_{low_multi}, which sets the lower end of the transmit power DRW for that channel, given the upper end of the range which is determined by $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$.

$$P_{1.6low\_multi} = P_{1.6hi} - P_{1.6load\_min\_set} - 12 \text{ dB}$$

The effect of $P_{1.6low\_multi}$ is to restrict the dynamic range required (or even allowed) by a CM across its multiple channels, when operating with multiple active channels.

Unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel in which case the fidelity performance of the CM is potentially degraded, the CMTS SHOULD command a $P_{1.6r\_n}$ consistent with the $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ assigned to the CM and with the following limits:

$$P_{1.6load\_min\_set} \le P_{1.6hi} - P_{1.6r\_n} \le P_{1.6load\_min\_set} + 12 \text{ dB}$$

and the equivalent:

$$P_{1.6hi} - (P_{1.6load\_min\_set} + 12 \text{ dB}) \le P_{1.6r\_n} \le P_{1.6hi} - P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$$

When the CMTS sends a new value of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ to the CM, there is a possibility that the CM will not be able to implement the change to the new value immediately, because the CM may be in the middle of bursting on one or more of its upstream channels at the instant the command to change $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ is received at the CM. Some amount of time may elapse before the CMTS grants global reconfiguration time to the CM. Similarly, commanded changes to $P_{1.6r\_n}$ may not be implemented immediately upon reception at the CM if the n^{th} channel is bursting. Commanded changes to $P_{1.6r\_n}$ may occur simultaneously with the command to change $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$. The CMTS SHOULD NOT issue a change in $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ after commanding a change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ until after also providing a sufficient reconfiguration time on the n^{th} channel. The CMTS SHOULD NOT issue a change in $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ after commanding a prior change in $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ until after also providing a global reconfiguration time for the first command. Also, the CMTS SHOULD NOT issue a change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ until after providing a global reconfiguration time following a command for a new value of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ and until after providing a sufficient reconfiguration time on the n^{th} channel after issuing a previous change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$. In other words, the CMTS is to avoid sending consecutive changes in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ and/or $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ to the CM without a sufficient reconfiguration time for instituting the first command. When a concurrent new value of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ and change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ are commanded, the CM MAY wait to apply the change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ at the next global reconfiguration time (i.e., concurrent with the institution of the new value of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$) rather than applying the change at the first sufficient reconfiguration time of the n^{th} channel. The value of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ which applies to the new $P_{1.6r\_n}$ is the concurrently commanded $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ value. If the change to $P_{1.6r\_n}$ falls outside the DRW of the old $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$, then the CM MUST wait for the global reconfiguration time to apply the change in $P_{1.6r\_n}$.

Unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel in which case the fidelity performance of the CM is potentially degraded, the CMTS SHOULD NOT command the CM to increase the per channel transmit power if such a command would cause $P_{1.6load\_n}$ for that channel to drop below $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$. Note that the CMTS can allow small changes of power in the CM's highest loaded channel, without these fluctuations impacting the transmit power dynamic range with each such small change. This is accomplished by setting $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ to a smaller value than normal, and fluctuation of the power per channel in the highest loaded channel is expected to wander.

The CMTS SHOULD NOT command a change of per channel transmit power which would result in $P_{1.6r\_n}$ falling below the DRW, $P_{1.6r\_n} < P_{low\_multi}$. Unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel in which case the fidelity performance of the CM is potentially degraded, the CMTS SHOULD NOT command a change in $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ such that existing values of $P_{1.6r\_n}$ would fall outside the new DRW.

The following paragraphs define the CM and CMTS behavior in cases where there are DRW violations due to indirect changes to $P_{1.6max}$, or addition of a new channel with incompatible parameters without direct change of $P_{1.6r\_n}$ or $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$.

Adding or removing a channel from the TCS changes $P_{1.6max}$ of the existing active channels (due to different $P_{1.6max}$ calculation tables for different number of active channels). Prior to changing the channels in the TCS, the CMTS SHOULD change $P_{1.6r\_n}$ of all current active channels, if necessary, to fit in the new expected DRW.

When adding a new active channel to the transmit channel set, the new channel's power is calculated according to the offset value defined in TLV 46.8.4 [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1], if it is provided. The CMTS SHOULD NOT set an offset value that will result in a $P_{1.6r\_n}$ for the new channel outside the DRW. In the absence of the TLV, the new channel's power is initially set by the CM at the minimum allowable power, i.e., the bottom of the DRW.

If the CMTS changes the symbol rate for a SC-QAM channel, the CM maintains constant total power for the channel by adjusting $P_{1.6r\_n}$ for that channel. The CMTS SHOULD NOT send a UCD change for the n^{th} active channel that violates $P_{1.6load\_n} - P_{1.6load\_min\_set} \ge 0$. If a UCD changes the $P_{1.6r\_n}$ for the n^{th} active channel [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1], the CM adjusts $P_{1.6r\_n}$ for that channel, when the change count of the MAP matches the change count in the new UCD. The CM adjusts $P_{1.6load\_n}$ at the time the MAP change count matches the new UCD change count, and calculates a new $P_{1.6r\_n}$ and target power for the channel, to be applied for bursts granted in the MAP with change count matching the change count in the new UCD. The spurious performance requirements of Sections 7.4.11 do not apply if $P_{1.6load\_n}$ becomes negative for a channel or if $P_{1.6load\_n} – P_{load\_min\_set}$ becomes negative for a channel.

The CM's actual transmitted power per channel, within a burst, MUST be constant to within 0.1 dB peak to peak, even in the presence of power changes on other active channels. This excludes the amplitude variation, which is theoretically present due to QAM amplitude modulation, pulse shaping, pre-equalization, and varying number of allocated minislots with OFDMA or varying number of spreading codes in S-CDMA channels.

The CM MUST support the transmit power calculations defined in Section 7.4.12.3.

7.4.12.3 OFDMA Transmit Power Calculations[9]

In OFDMA mode the CM determines its target transmit power per channel $P_{1.6t\_n}$, as follows, for each channel which is active. Define for each active channel, for example, upstream channel n:

$P_{1.6r\_n}$ = reported power level (dBmV) of CM for channel n.

$P_{1.6hi} = P_{max}$ dBmV – $10\log_{10}(Neq)$

$P_{1.6low\_n} = P_{1.6low}$.

The CM updates its reported power per channel in each channel by the following steps:

1. $P_{1.6r\_n} = P_{1.6r\_n} + \Delta P$ //Add power level adjustment (for each channel) to reported power level for each channel.
   The CMTS SHOULD ensure the following:
2. $P_{1.6r\_n} \le P_{1.6hi}$ //Clip at max power limit per channel unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel in which case the fidelity performance of the CM is potentially degraded.
3. $P_{1.6r\_n} \ge P_{1.6low}$ //Clip at min power limit per channel.
4. $P_{1.6r\_n} \ge P_{1.6min\_multi}$ //Power per channel from this command would violate the set DRW.
5. $P_{1.6r} \le P_{1.6hi}-P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$ //Power per channel from this command would violate the set DRW, unless the CMTS is using MSM to accommodate a need to increase the PSD for the channel in which case the fidelity performance of the CM is potentially degraded.

The CM then transmits each data subcarrier with target power:

$$P_{t\_sc\_i} = P_{1.6r\_n} – P_{1.6delta\_n} + \text{Pre-Eq}_i - 10 \log(\text{number\_of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz } \{32 \text{ or } 64\})$$

where Pre-Eq_i is the magnitude of the i^{th} subcarrier pre-equalizer coefficient (dB), and $P_{1.6delta\_n}$ equals 0 dB for non-boosted channels, 0.5 dB for boosted channels with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing and 1 dB for boosted channels with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

That is, the reported power for channel n, normalized to 1.6 MHz, minus compensation for the presence of boosted pilots plus the pre-equalization for the subcarrier, less a factor taking into account the number of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz.

Probe_{delta_n} for the n^{th} OFDMA channel is the change in subcarrier power for probes compared to subcarrier power for data depending on the mode as defined in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] in addition to Pre-Equalization on or off.

The CM transmits probes with the same target power as given above + Probe_{delta_n} when Pre-EQ is enabled for probes in the P-MAP which provides the probe opportunity:

$$P_{t\_sc\_i} = P_{1.6r\_n} – P_{1.6delta\_n} + \text{Probe}_{delta\_n} + \text{Pre-Eq}_i - 10 \log(\text{number\_of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz } \{32 \text{ or } 64\})$$

When the Pre_EQ is disabled for the probe opportunity in the P-MAP, the CM then transmits probe subcarrier with target power:

[9] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 by JB on 2/27/15.

$$P_{t\_sc\_i} = P_{1.6r\_n} – P_{1.6delta\_n} + Probe_{delta\_n} - 10 \log_{10}(\text{number\_of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz } \{32 \text{ or } 64\})$$

where $P_{1.6delta\_n}$ equals 0 dB for non-boosted channels, 0.5 dB for boosted channels with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing and 1 dB for boosted channels with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

That is, the reported power for channel n, normalized to 1.6 MHz, minus compensation for the presence of boosted pilots less a factor taking into account the number of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz.

For Channels with boosted pilots, the CM then transmits each boosted pilot with target power:

$$P_{t\_pilot} = P_{1.6r\_n} – P_{1.6delta\_n} + Pre\text{-}Eq_i - 10 \log_{10}(\text{number\_of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz } \{32 \text{ or } 64\}) +10\log_{10}(3)$$

where $Pre\text{-}Eq_i$ is the magnitude of the i^{th} subcarrier pre-equalizer coefficient (dB), and $P_{1.6delta\_n}$ equals 0.5 dB for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing and 1 dB for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

That is, the reported power for channel n, normalized to 1.6 MHz, minus compensation for the presence of boosted pilots plus the pre-equalization for the subcarrier, less a factor taking into account the number of subcarriers in 1.6 MHz, plus the pilot boost in power by a factor of 3.

The total transmit power in channel n, P_{t_n}, in a frame is the sum of the individual transmit powers P_{t,sc_i} of each subcarrier in channel n, where the sum is performed using absolute power quantities [non-dB domain].

The transmitted power level in channel n varies dynamically as the number and type of allocated subcarriers varies.

7.4.12.4 Global Reconfiguration Time for OFDMA Channels[10]

"Global reconfiguration time" is defined as the inactive time interval provided between active upstream transmissions, which simultaneously satisfies the requirement in Section 6.2.20 for all TDMA channels in the TCS and the requirement in Section 6.2.20 for all S-CDMA channels in the TCS and the requirement here for OFDMA.

Global "quiet" across all active channels requires the intersection of ungranted burst intervals across all active OFDMA channels to be at least 20 microseconds. Even with a change or re-command of $P_{1.6load\_min\_set}$, the CM MUST be able to transmit consecutive bursts as long as the CMTS allocates at least one frame in between bursts, across all OFDMA channels in the Transmit Channel Set, where the quiet lapses in each channel contain an intersection of at least 20 microseconds. (From the end of a burst on one channel to the beginning of the next burst on any channel, there is to be at least 20 microseconds duration to provide a "global reconfiguration time" for OFDMA channels.)

With mixed channels operating in the upstream, the Global Reconfiguration times for DOCSIS 3.0 CMs remain the same as defined in [DOCSIS PHYv3.0]. For DOCSIS 3.1 CMs operating in a mixed upstream, the requirements for the intersection of quiet times for all channels in the TCS is that it be at least 10 microseconds plus 96 symbols on each of the SC-QAM channels.

With Multiple Transmit Channel mode enabled, the CMTS SHOULD provide global reconfiguration time to a CM before (or concurrently as) the CM has been commanded to change any upstream channel transmit power by ±3 dB cumulative since its last global reconfiguration time.

7.4.12.5 OFDMA Fidelity Requirements [11]

The following requirements assume that any pre-equalization is disabled, unless otherwise noted.

When channels in the TCS are commanded to the same equivalent channel powers, the reference signal power in the "dBc" definition is to be interpreted as the measured average total transmitted power. When channels in the TCS are commanded to different equivalent channel powers, the commanded total power of the transmission is computed, and a difference is derived compared to the commanded total power which would occur if all channels had the same $P_{1.6}$ as the highest equivalent channel power in the TCS, whether or not the channel with the largest equivalent channel power is included in the grant. Then this difference is added to the measured total transmit power to form the reference signal power for the "dBc" spurious emissions requirements.

[10] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[11] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1166-1 on 12/10/14 and PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

For purposes of the OFDMA fidelity requirements, even if Maximum Scheduled Minislots (MSM) is enabled in a CM, the 100% Grant Spectrum for spurious emissions calculations is unchanged by application of MSM.

7.4.12.5.1 Spurious Emissions[12]

The noise and spurious power generated by the CM MUST NOT exceed the levels given in Table 7–6, Table 7–7, and Table 7–8. Up to five discrete spurs can be excluded from the emissions requirements listed in Table 7–6, Table 7–7 and Table 7–8 and have to be less than -42 dBc relative to a single subcarrier power level.

SpurFloor is defined as:

$$\text{SpurFloor} = \max\{ -57 + 10*\log_{10}(100\%\ \text{Grant Spectrum}/192\ \text{MHZ}), -60\}\ \text{dBc}$$

Under-grant Hold Number of Users is defined as:

$$\text{Under-grant Hold Number of Users} = \text{Floor}\{ 0.2 + 10\char`^((-44 - \text{SpurFloor})/10) \}$$

Under-grant Hold Bandwidth is defined as:

$$\text{Under-grant Hold Bandwidth} = (100\%\ \text{Grant Spectrum})/(\text{Under-grant Hold Number of Users})$$

When Multiple Transmit Channel mode is enabled, these spurious performance requirements only apply when the CM is operating within certain ranges of values for P_{load_n}, for n = 1 to the number of upstream channels in the TCS, and for granted bandwidth of Under-grant Hold Bandwidth or larger; where P_{load_1} the highest loaded channel in this specification (i.e., its power is the one closest to P_{hi}).

When a modem is transmitting over a bandwidth of less than Under-grant Hold Bandwidth the spurious emissions requirement limit is the power value (in dBmV), corresponding to the specifications for the power level associated with a grant of bandwidth equal to Under-grant Hold Bandwidth. In addition, when a modem is transmitting over a bandwidth such that the total power of the modem is less than 17 dBmV, but other requirements are met, then the modem spurious emissions requirements limits is the power value (in dBmV) computed with all conditions and relaxations factored in, plus an amount X dB where:

X dB = 17 dBmV – modem transmit power

When Multiple Transmit Channel mode is enabled and there are two or more channels in the TCS, the CM's spurious performance requirements MUST be met only when the equivalent DOCSIS channel powers ($P_{1.6}$) are within 6 dB of $P_{load\_min\_set}$ ($P_{load\_min\_set} + 6 \geq P_{load\_n} \geq P_{load\_min\_set}$).

Further, the CM's spurious emissions requirements MUST be met with two or more channels in the TCS only when $P_{load\_1} = P_{load\_min\_set}$. When $P_{load\_1} < P_{load\_min\_set}$, the spurious emissions requirements in absolute terms are relaxed by $P_{load\_1} - P_{load\_min\_set}$.

When a modem is transmitting with any equivalent DOCSIS channel power with loading $P_{load\_min\_set}$ + 16 dB or lower ($P_{load>}$ $P_{load\_min\_set}$+ 16 dB), the spurious emissions requirement limits are not enforced.

With Multiple Transmit Channel mode enabled, the spurious performance requirements do not apply to any upstream channel from the time the output power on any active upstream channel has varied by more than ±3 dB since the last global reconfiguration time through the end of the next global reconfiguration time changes, excluding transmit power changes due to UCD-induced change in P_{hi} [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

In Table 7–6, inband spurious emissions includes noise, carrier leakage, clock lines, synthesizer spurious products, and other undesired transmitter products. It does not include ISI. The measurement bandwidth for inband spurious for OFDM is equal to the Subcarrier Clock Frequency (25 kHz or 50 kHz) and is not a synchronous measurement. The signal reference power for OFDMA inband spurious emissions is the total transmit power measured and adjusted (if applicable) as described in Section 7.4.12.5, and then apportioned to a single data subcarrier.

For S-CDMA and TDMA, the measurement bandwidth is the modulation rate (*e.g.*, 1280 to 5120 kHz), and the requirement is ≤ -50 dBc. All requirements expressed in dBc are relative to the largest equivalent DOCSIS channel power in the TCS, whether it is being transmitted or not.

[12] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

The measurement bandwidth is 160 kHz for the Between Bursts (none of the channels in the TCS is bursting) specs of Table 7–6, except where called out as 4 MHz or 250 kHz. The signal reference power for Between Bursts transmissions is the total transmit power measured and adjusted (if applicable) as described in Section 7.4.12.5.

The Transmitting Burst specs apply during the minislots granted to the CM (when the CM uses all or a portion of the grant), and for 20 µs before and after the granted minislot for OFDMA. The Between Bursts specs apply except during a used grant of minislots on any active channel for the CM, and 20 us before and after the used grant for OFDMA. The signal reference power for Transmitting Burst transmissions, other than inband, is the total transmit power measured and adjusted (if applicable) as described in Section 7.4.12.5.

For the purpose of spurious emissions definitions, a granted burst refers to a burst of minislots to be transmitted at the same time from the same CM; these minislots are not necessarily contiguous in frequency.

For Initial Ranging and before completion of Fine Ranging, spurious emissions requirements use Table 7–6, Table 7–7; and Table 7–8, with 100% Grant Spectrum equal to the bandwidth of the modulation spectrum of the transmission, and if transmissions use subcarrier power which is X dB lower than indicated by $P_{1.6low}$, then the spurious emissions requirements in absolute terms are relaxed by X dB.

Spurious emissions requirements for grants of 10% or less of the TCS (100% grant spectrum) may be relaxed by 2 dB in an amount of spectrum equal to:

- measurement BW * ceil(10% of the TCS / measurement BW)
- anywhere in the whole upstream spectrum for emission requirements specified in Table 7–7 for Table 7–8

A 2 dB relief applies in the measurement bandwidth. This relief does not apply to between bursts emission requirements.

Table 7–6 - Spurious Emissions

Parameter	Transmitting Burst	Between Bursts[3]
Inband	-45 dBc OFDMA 100% grant4,5,6 -51 dBc OFDMA 5% grant [4,5,6] -50 dBc S-CDMA/TDMA (NOTE: also see MER requirement)	-72 dBc
Adjacent Band	See Table 7–8	-72 dBc
Within the upstream operating range 5-42 MHz or 5-85 MHz, or 5-204 MHz (excluding assigned channel, adjacent channels)	See Table 7–7	-72 dBc
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-42 MHz: CM Integrated Spurious Emissions Limits (all in 4 MHz, includes discretes)[1] 42 to 54 MHz 54 to 60 MHz 60 to 88 MHz 88 to 1218 MHz	 -40 dBc -35 dBmV -40 dBmV -45 dBmV	 -26 dBmV -40 dBmV -40 dBmV max(-45 dBmV, -40 dB ref downstream)[2]
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-42 MHz: CM Discrete Spurious Emissions Limits[1] 42 to 54 MHz 54 to 88 MHz 88 to 1218 MHz	 -50 dBc -50 dBmV -50 dBmV	 -36 dBmV -50 dBmV -50 dBmV

Parameter	Transmitting Burst	Between Bursts[3]
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-85 MHz: CM Integrated Spurious Emissions Limits (all in 4 MHz, includes discrete spurs)[1] 85 to 108 MHz 85 to 108 MHz (Should) 108 to 136 MHz 136 to 1218 MHz	-45 dBc -50 dBc -40 dBmV -45 dBmV	-31 dBmV -36 dBmV -40 dBmV max(-45 dBmV, -40 dB ref downstream)2
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-85 MHz: CM Discrete Spurious Emissions Limits[1] 85 to 108 MHz 108 to 1218	-50 dBc -50 dBmV	-36 dBmV -50 dBmV
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-204 MHz: CM Integrated Spurious Emissions Limits (all in 4 MHz, includes discrete spurs)[1] 204 to 258 MHz 204 to 258 MHz (Should) 258 to 1218 MHz	-50 dBc -60 dBc -45 dBmV	-72 dBc -72 dBc max(-45 dBmV, -40 dB ref downstream)[2]
For the case where the upstream operating range is 5-204 MHz: CM Discrete Spurious Emissions Limits[1] 204 to 258 MHz 258 to 1218 MHz	-50 dBc -50 dBmV	-36 dBmV -50 dBmV

Table Notes:

Note 1 These spec limits exclude a single discrete spur related to the tuned received channel; this single discrete spur is to be no greater than -40 dBmV.

Note 2 "dB ref downstream" is relative to the received downstream signal level. Some spurious outputs are proportional to the receive signal level.

Note 3 Relative to the previous transmission.

Note 4 Up to 5 subcarriers within the entire upstream bandwidth with discrete spurs may be excluded from the MER calculation if they fall within transmitted minislots. These 5 spurs are the same spurs that may be excluded for spurious emissions and not an additional or different set.

Note 5 This value is to be met when Pload = Pload_min_set.

Note 6 Receive equalization is allowed if an MER test approach is used, to take ISI out of the measurement; measurements other than MER-based to find spurs or other unwanted power may be applied to this requirement.

7.4.12.5.1.1 Spurious Emissions in the Upstream Frequency Range

Table 7–7 lists the required spurious level in a measurement interval. The initial measurement interval at which to start measuring the spurious emissions (from the transmitted burst's modulation edge) is 400 kHz from the edge of the transmission's modulation spectrum. Measurements should start at the initial distance and be repeated at increasing distance from the carrier until the upstream band edge or spectrum adjacent to other modulated spectrum is reached.

For OFDMA transmissions with non-zero transmit windowing, the CM MUST meet the required performance measured within the 2.0 MHz adjacent to the modulated spectrum using slicer values from a CMTS burst receiver or equivalent, synchronized to the downstream transmission provided to the CM.

In the rest of the spectrum, the CM MUST meet the required performance measured with a bandpass filter (e.g., an unsynchronized measurement).

For OFDMA transmissions with zero transmit windowing, CM MUST meet the required performance using synchronized measurements across the complete upstream spectrum.

For legacy transmissions, the measurement is performed in the indicated bandwidth and distance from the transmitted legacy channel edge.

Spurious emissions allocation for far out spurious emissions =

$$\text{Round}\{\ \text{SpurFloor} + 10^*\log_{10}(\text{Measurement bandwidth/Under-grant hold Bandwidth}),0.1\}.$$

For transmission bursts with modulation spectrum less than the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth, the spurious power requirement is calculated as above, but increased by $10^*\log_{10}$ (Under-grant Hold Bandwidth/Grant Bandwidth).

Table 7–7 - Spurious Emissions Requirements in the Upstream Frequency Range for Grants of Under-grant Hold Bandwidth and Larger[1]

100% Grant Spectrum (MHz)	SpurFloor (dBc)	Under-grant Hold #Users	Under-grant Hold Bandwidth (MHz)	Measurement Bandwidth (MHz)[2]	Specification in the Interval (dBc)
Up to 64	-60.0	40	100% Grant Spectrum/40	1.6	Round{ SpurFloor + 10*log$_{10}$(Measurement Bandwidth/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth),0.1}
[e.g., 22 MHz]			[0.55 MHz]		[-55.4]
[e.g., 46 MHz]			[1.15 MHz]		[-58.6]
Greater than 64, up to 96	-60.0	40	100% Grant Spectrum/40	3.2	Round{ SpurFloor + 10*log$_{10}$(Measurement Bandwidth/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth),0.1
[e.g., 94 MHz]			[2.35 MHz]		[-58.7]
Greater than 96, up to 192	max{ -57 + 10*log$_{10}$(100% Grant Spectrum/192 MHZ), -60}	Floor{ 0.2 + 10^((-44 - SpurFloor)/10) }	100% Grant Spectrum)/(Under-grant Hold Number of Users)	9.6	Round{ SpurFloor + 10*log$_{10}$(Measurement Bandwidth/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth),0.1}
[e.g.,142 MHz]	[-58.3]	[27]	[5.3]		[-55.7]
[e.g., 190 MHz]	[-57.0]	[20]	[9.5]		[-57.0]
Greater than 192	max{ -57 + 10*log$_{10}$(100% Grant Spectrum/192 MHZ), -60}	Floor{ 0.2 + 10^((-44 - SpurFloor)/10) }	100% Grant Spectrum)/(Under-grant Hold Number of Users)	12.8	Round{ SpurFloor + 10*log$_{10}$ (Measurement Bandwidth/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth),0.1}
[e.g., 200 MHz]	[-56.8]	[19]	[10.5]		[-55.9]

Note 1 Spurious Emissions Requirements in the Upstream Frequency Range Relative to the Per Channel Transmitted Burst Power Level for Each Channel for Grants of Under-grant Hold Bandwidth and Larger.

Note 2 The measurement bandwidth is a contiguous sliding measurement window.

The CM MUST control transmissions such that within the measurement bandwidth of Table 7–7, spurious emissions measured for individual subcarriers contain no more than +3 dB power larger than the required average power of the spurious emissions in the full measurement bandwidth. When non synchronous measurements are made, only 25 kHz measurement bandwidth is used.

For legacy transmissions, and optionally for OFDMA transmissions, bandpass measurements rather than synchronous measurements may be applied.

As an example illustrating use of Table 7–7 for legacy channels, consider a TCS with a single 1.6 MHz SC-QAM channel (1.28 Msym/s) and a single 6.4 MHz SC-QAM channel (5.12 Msym/s). The grant BW is then 8.0 MHz and the 100% grant spectrum is 8.0 MHz. So the spurfloor is -60 dBc, and the emissions specification is -51 dBc or equivalently -44 dBr.

As an example illustrating the smaller measurement bandwidth requirements, consider 94 MHz 100% grant spectrum, with -58.7 dBc spurious emissions allowed in 3.2 MHz measurement bandwidth, with the measurement bandwidth starting as close as 400 kHz from the modulation edge of the transmitted burst. If the subcarrier spacing is 25 kHz, there are 128 subcarriers in the 3.2 MHz measurement bandwidth. Each subcarrier has, on average, a requirement of -58.7 dBc – 21.1 dB = -79.8 dBc, but the requirement is relaxed to -79.8 dBc + 3 dB = -76.8 dBc (noting that -21.07 dB corresponds to 1/128th). The under-grant hold bandwidth is 2.35 MHz for this example. When a 100% grant has 65 dBmV transmit power, a grant of 2.4 MHz has 49.1 dBmV power. With a single OFDMA channel and its 100% grant power at 65 dBmV, the spurious emissions requirement with a grant of 2.4 MHz, measured in 25 kHz is 49.1 dBmV – 76.8 dBc = -27.7 dBmV. -76.8 dBc corresponds to -57.1 dBr for this example (since 2.35 MHz/25 kHz is a factor of 94, or 19.7 dB).

7.4.12.5.1.2 Adjacent Channel Spurious Emissions

Spurious emissions from a transmitted burst may occur in adjacent spectrum, which could be occupied by a legacy carrier of any allowed modulation rate or by OFDMA subcarriers.

Table 7–8 lists the required adjacent channel spurious emission levels when there is a transmitted burst with bandwidth at the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth. The measurement is performed in an adjacent channel interval of 400 kHz adjacent to the transmitted burst modulation spectrum. For OFDMA transmissions, the measurement is performed starting on an adjacent subcarrier of the transmitted spectrum (both above and below), using the slicer values from a CMTS burst receiver or equivalent synchronized to the downstream transmission provided to the CM. For legacy transmissions, the measurement is performed in an adjacent channel interval of 400 kHz bandwidth adjacent to the transmitted legacy channel edge.

Firstly, it should be noted that the measurement bandwidth for Table 7–8 is less than the measurement bandwidths in Table 7–7. Thus comparing the two tables in terms of the specification "dBc" values requires appropriate scaling. Secondly, Table 7–8 provides specification "dBc" only for grants of a specific amount for each row, while Table 7–7 provides "dBc" specification for grants of all sizes from the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth to 100%.

For transmission bursts with modulation spectrum less than the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth, the spurious power requirement is calculated as above, but increased by $10*\log_{10}$(Under-grant Hold Bandwidth/Grant Bandwidth).

For transmission bursts with modulation spectrum greater than the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth, the spurious power requirement in the adjacent 400 kHz is calculated by converting the requirement to absolute power "dBmV" for a grant of precisely Under-grant Hold Bandwidth from Table 7–8, and similarly computing the absolute power "dBmV" from Table 7–7 for a grant equal to:

The Given Grant - The Under-grant Hold Bandwidth.

Then the absolute power calculated from Table 7–7 is scaled back in exact proportion of 400 kHz compared to the measurement bandwidth in Table 7–7. Then the power from Table 7–8 is added to the scaled apportioned power from Table 7–7 to produce the requirement for the adjacent 400 kHz measurement with a larger grant than the Under-grant Hold Bandwidth. The requirement for adjacent spurious power in adjacent 400 kHz is:

P1(Grant Bandwidth – Under-grant Hold Bandwidth) = absolute power derived from Table 7–7 (dBmV)

P2(Under-grant Hold Bandwidth) = absolute power derived from Table 7–8 (dBmV)

$P1_{scaled}$ = P1 * (0.4 MHz)/(Measurement Bandwidth (MHz) used in Table 7–7) (dBmV)

$P_{spec\_limit} = P1_{scaled} + P2$ (dBmV)

The CM MUST control transmissions such that within the measurement bandwidth of Table 7–8, spurious emissions measured for individual subcarriers contain no more than +3 dB power larger than the required average power of the spurious emissions in the full measurement bandwidth. For legacy transmissions, and optionally for OFDMA transmissions, bandpass measurements rather than synchronous measurements may be applied.

Table 7–8 - Adjacent Channel Spurious Emissions Requirements Relative to the Per Channel Transmitted Burst Power Level for Each Channel

100% Grant Spectrum (MHz)	SpurFloor (dBc)	Under-grant Hold #Users	Under-grant Hold Bandwidth (MHz)	Measurement Bandwidth (MHz)	Specification in Adjacent 400 kHz With Grant of Under-grant Hold Bandwidth (dBc)
Up to 64 [e.g., 22 MHz] [Ex: 46 MHz]	-60.0	40	100% Grant Spectrum/40 [0.55 MHz] [1.15 MHz]	0.4 MHz	Round{10*log$_{10}$(((10^(SpurFloor/10)) + (10^(-57/10))) x(0.4 MHz/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth)),0.1} [-56.6] [-59.8]
Greater than 64, up to 96 [Ex 94 MHz]	-60.0	40	100% Grant Spectrum/40 [2.35 MHz]	0.4 MHz	Round{10*log$_{10}$(((10^(SpurFloor/10)) + (10^(-57/10))) x(0.4 MHz/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth)),0.1} [-62.9]
Greater than 96 [e.g., 142 MHz] [e.g., 190 MHz] [e.g., 200 MHz]	max{ -57 + 10*log$_{10}$(100% Grant Spectrum/192 MHZ), -60} Round nearest 0.1 dB [-58.3] [-57.0] [-56.8]	Floor{ 0.2 + 10^((-44 - SpurFloor)/10) } [27] [20] [19]	100% Grant Spectrum)/Under-grant Hold Number of Users [5.3] [9.5] [10.5]	0.4 MHz	Round{10*log$_{10}$(((10^(SpurFloor/10)) + (10^(-57/10))) x(0.4 MHz/Under-grant Hold Bandwidth)),0.1} [-65.8] [-67.7] [-68.1]

7.4.12.5.2 Spurious Emissions During Burst On/Off Transients

The CM MUST control spurious emissions prior to and during ramp-up, during and following ramp-down, and before and after a burst.

The CM's on/off spurious emissions, such as the change in voltage at the upstream transmitter output, due to enabling or disabling transmission, MUST be no more than 50 mV.

The CM's voltage step MUST be dissipated no faster than 4 µs of constant slewing. This requirement applies when the CM is transmitting at +55 dBmV or more per channel on any channel.

At backed-off transmit levels, the CM's maximum change in voltage MUST decrease by a factor of 2 for each 6 dB decrease of power level in the highest power active channel, from +55 dBmV per channel, down to a maximum change of 3.5 mV at 31 dBmV per channel and below. This requirement does not apply to CM power-on and power-off transients.

7.4.12.5.3 MER Requirements

Transmit modulation error ratio (TxMER or just MER) measures the cluster variance caused by the CM during upstream transmission due to transmitter imperfections. The terms "equalized MER" and "unequalized MER" refer to a measurement with linear distortions equalized or not equalized, respectively, by the test equipment receive equalizer. The requirements in this section refer only to unequalized MER, as described for each requirement. MER is measured on each modulated data subcarrier and non-boosted pilot (MER is computed based on the unboosted pilot power) in a minislot of a granted burst and averaged for all the subcarriers in each minislot. MER includes the effects of Inter-Carrier Interference (ICI), spurious emissions, phase noise, noise, distortion, and all other undesired transmitter degradations with an exception for a select number of discrete spurs impacting a select number of subcarriers. MER requirements are measured with a calibrated test instrument that synchronizes to the OFDMA signal, applies a receive equalizer in the test instrument that removes MER contributions from nominal channel imperfections related to the measurement equipment, and calculates the value. The equalizer in the test instrument is calculated, applied and frozen for the CM testing. Receiver equalization of CM linear distortion is not provided; hence this is considered to be a measurement of unequalized MER, even though the test equipment contains a fixed equalizer setting.

7.4.12.5.3.1 Definitions

MER is defined as follows for OFDMA. The transmitted RF waveform at the F connector of the CM (after appropriate down conversion) is filtered, converted to baseband, sampled, and processed using standard OFDMA receiver methods, with the exception that receiver equalization is not provided. The processed values are used in the following formula. No external noise (AWGN) is added to the signal.

The carrier frequency offset, carrier amplitude, carrier phase offset, and timing will be adjusted during each burst to maximize MER as follows:

- One carrier amplitude adjustment common for all subcarriers and OFDM symbols in burst.
- One carrier frequency offset common for all subcarriers resulting in phase offset ramping across OFDM symbols in bursts.
- One timing adjustment resulting in phase ramp across subcarriers.
- One carrier phase offset common to all subcarriers per OFDM symbol in addition to the phase ramp.

MER_i is computed as an average of all the subcarriers in a minislot for the i^{th} minislot in the OFDMA grant:

$$\mathrm{MER_i\ (dB)} = 10 \cdot \log_{10}\left(\frac{E_{avg}}{\frac{1}{N}\sum_{j=1}^{N}\left(\frac{1}{M}\sum_{k=1}^{M}\left|e_{j,k}\right|^2\right)}\right)$$

where:

E_{avg} is the average constellation energy for equally likely symbols,

M is the number of symbols averaged,

N is the number of subcarriers in a minislot,

$e_{j,k}$ is the error vector from the *j*th subcarrier in the minislot and *k*th received symbol to the ideal transmitted QAM symbol of the appropriate modulation order.

A sufficient number of OFDMA symbols shall be included in the time average so that the measurement uncertainty from the number of symbols is less than other limitations of the test equipment.

MER with a 100% grant is defined as the condition when all OFDMA minislots and any legacy channels in the transmit channel set are granted to the CM.

MER with a 5% grant is defined as the condition when less than or equal to 5% of the available OFDMA minislots and no legacy channels have been granted to the CM.

7.4.12.5.3.2 Requirements [13]

Unless otherwise stated, the CM MUST meet or exceed the following MER limits over the full transmit power range, all modulation orders, all grant configurations and over the full upstream frequency range.

The following flat channel measurements with no tilt (Table 7–9) are made after the pre-equalizer coefficients have been set to their optimum values. The receiver uses best effort synchronization to optimize the MER measurement.

[13] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Table 7–9 - Upstream MER Requirements (with Pre-Equalization)

Parameter	Value
MER (100% grant)	Each minislot MER ≥ 44 dB (Notes 1,2)
MER (5% grant)	Each minislot MER ≥ 50 dB (Notes 1,2)
Pre-equalizer constraints	Coefficients set to their optimum values
Table Notes:	
Note 1	Up to 5 subcarriers within the entire upstream bandwidth with discrete spurs may be excluded from the MER calculation if they fall within transmitted minislots. These 5 spurs are the same spurs that may be excluded for spurious emissions and not an additional or different set.
Note 2	This value is to be met when $P_{load} = P_{load\_min\_set}$.

The following flat channel measurements (Table 7–10) are made with the pre-equalizer coefficients set to unity and no tilt and the receiver implementing best effort synchronization. For this measurement, the receiver may also apply partial equalization. The partial equalizer is not to correct for the portion of the CM's time-domain impulse response greater than 200 ns or frequency-domain amplitude response greater than +1 dB or less than -3dB from the average amplitude. An additional 1 dB attenuation in the amplitude response is allowed in the upper 10% of the specified passband frequency. It is not expected that the partial equalizer is implemented on CMTS receiver. A partial equalizer could be implemented offline via commercial receivers or simulation tools.

Table 7–10 - Upstream MER Requirements (no Pre-Equalization)

Parameter	Value
MER (100% grant)	Each minislot MER ≥ 40 dB (Notes 1,2)
MER (5% grant)	Each minislot MER ≥ 40 dB (Notes 1,2)
Pre-equalizer constraints	Pre-equalization not used
Table Notes:	
Note 1	Up to 5 subcarriers within the entire upstream bandwidth with discrete spurs may be excluded from the MER calculation if they fall within transmitted minislots. These 5 spurs are the same spurs that may be excluded for spurious emissions and not an additional or different set.
Note 2	This value is to be met when $P_{load} = P_{load\_min\_set}$.

7.4.13 Cable Modem Transmitter Output Requirements

The CM MUST output an RF Modulated signal with characteristics delineated in Table 7–11.

Table 7–11 - CM Transmitter Output Signal Characteristics

Parameter	Value
Frequency	Support and be configurable to a permitted subset (see section 7.2.3 for allowed combinations) of the following list of frequency ranges: 5-42 MHz 5-65 MHz 5-85 MHz 5-117 MHz 5-204 MHz NOT to cause harmful interference above these frequencies for any configured option may support > 204 MHz
Signal Type	OFDMA
Maximum OFDMA Channel Bandwidth	96 MHz
Minimum OFDMA Occupied Bandwidth	6.4 MHz for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing 10 MHz for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing
Number of Independently configurable OFDMA channels	Minimum of 2
Subcarrier Channel Spacing	25 kHz, 50 kHz

Parameter	Value
FFT Size	50 kHz: 2048 (2K FFT); 1900 Maximum active subcarriers 25 kHz: 4096 (4K FFT); 3800 Maximum active subcarriers
Sampling Rate	102.4 MHz (96 MHz Block Size)
FFT Time Duration	40 µs (25 kHz subcarriers) 20 µs (50 kHz subcarriers)
Modulation Type	BPSK, QPSK, 8-QAM, 16-QAM, 32-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, 4096-QAM
Bit Loading	Variable from minislot to minislot Constant for subcarriers of the same type in the minislot Support zero valued subcarriers per profile and minislot.
Pilot Tones	14 data patterns and 2 subslot patterns, minislot subcarrier size and length dependent - see Section 7.4.16.
Cyclic Prefix Options	Samples µsec 96 0.9375 128 1.25 160 1.5625 192 1.875 224 2.1875 256 2.5 288 2.8125 320 3.125 384 3.75 512 5.0 640 6.25
Windowing Size Options	Samples µsec 0 0 32 0.3125 64 0.625 96 0.9375 128 1.25 160 1.5625 192 1.875 224 2.1875 Raised cosine absorbed by CP
Level	CM MUST be capable of transmitting a total average output power of 65 dBmV CM MAY be capable of transmitting a total average output power greater than 65 dBmV
Output Impedance	75 ohms
Output Return Loss	> 6 dB 5-f_{max} MHz (42/65/85/117/204 MHz) > 6 dB f_{max} – 1218 MHz > 6 dB f_{max} – 1.794 GHz for CMs that can receive up to 1.794 GHz
Connector	F connector per [ISO/IEC-61169-24] or [SCTE 02]

7.4.14 CMTS Receiver Capabilities

7.4.14.1 CMTS Receiver Input Power Requirements[14]

The CMTS Upstream Demodulator MUST operate with an average input signal level, including ingress and noise to the upstream demodulator, up to 31 dBmV.

The CMTS MUST be settable according to Table 7–12 for intended received power normalized to 6.4 MHz of bandwidth.

The CMTS Upstream demodulator MUST operate within its defined performance specifications with received bursts within the ranges defined in Table 7–12 of the set power.

[14] Revised per PHY3.1-14.1214-2 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Table 7–12 - Upstream Channel Demodulator Input Power Characteristics

Modulation	Minimum Set Point (dBmV/6.4 MHz)	Maximum Set Point (dBmV/6.4 MHz)	Range
QPSK	-4 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
8-QAM	-4 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
16-QAM	-4 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
32-QAM	-4 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
64-QAM	-4 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
128-QAM	0 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
256-QAM	0 dBmV	10 dBmV	-9 / +3
512-QAM	0 dBmV	10 dBmV	-3 / +3
1024-QAM	0 dBmV	10 dBmV	-3 / +3
2048-QAM	7 dBmV	10 dBmV	-3 / +3
4096-QAM	10 dBmV	10 dBmV	-3 / +3

7.4.14.2 CMTS Receiver Error Ratio Performance in AWGN Channel[15]

The required level for CMTS upstream post-FEC error ratio is defined for AWGN as less than or equal to 10^{-6} PER (packet error ratio) with 1500 byte Ethernet packets. This section describes the conditions at which the CMTS is required to meet this error ratio.

Implementation loss of the CMTS receiver MUST be such that the CMTS achieves the required error ratio when operating at a CNR as shown in Table 7–13, under input load and channel conditions as follows:

- A single transmitter, pre-equalized and ranged
- A single OFDMA 96 MHz channel.
- Ranging with same CNR and input level to CMTS as with data bursts, and with 8-symbol probes.
- Any valid transmit combination (frequency, subcarrier clock frequency, transmit window, cyclic prefix, OFDMA frame length, interleaving depth, pilot patterns, etc.) as defined in this specification.
- Input power level per constellation is the minimum set point as defined in Table 7–12.
- OFDMA phase noise and frequency offset are at the max limits as defined for the CM transmission specification.
- Ideal AWGN channel with no other artifacts (reflections, burst noise, tilt, etc.).
- Large grants consisting of several 1500 Bytes.
- CMTS is allowed to construct MAPs according to its own scheduler implementation.

Table 7–13 - CMTS Minimum CNR Performance in AWGN Channel[16]

Constellation	CNR[1,2] (dB)	Set Point (dBmV/6.4 MHz)	Offset
QPSK	11.0	**-4 dBmV**	**0 dB**
8-QAM	14.0	**-4 dBmV**	**0 dB**
16-QAM	17.0	**-4 dBmV**	**0 dB**
32-QAM	20.0	**-4 dBmV**	**0 dB**

[15] Revised per PHY3.1-14.1214-2 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[16] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/25/15 by JB.

Constellation	CNR[1,2] (dB)	Set Point (dBmV/6.4 MHz)	Offset
64-QAM	23.0	**-4 dBmV**	**0 dB**
128-QAM	26.0	**0 dBmV**	**0 dB**
256-QAM	29.0	**0 dBmV**	**0 dB**
512-QAM	32.5	**0 dBmV**	**0 dB**
1024-QAM	35.5	**0 dBmV**	**0 dB**
2048-QAM	39.0	**7 dBmV**	**0 dB**
4096-QAM	43.0	**10 dBmV**	**0 dB**

Table Notes:

Note 1 CNR is defined here as the ratio of average signal power in occupied bandwidth to the average noise power in the occupied bandwidth given by the noise power spectral density integrated over the same occupied bandwidth.

Note 2 Channel CNR is adjusted to the required level by measuring the source inband noise including phase noise component and adding the required delta noise from an external AWGN generator.

Note 3 The channel CNR requirements are for OFDMA channels with non-boosted pilots. For operation with boosted pilots, which is optional at the CMTS, the CNR requirements are increased by a) 1 dB for channels with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing, and b) 0.5 dB for channels with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing. For example, the CNR requirement for QPSK with boosted pilots is 12.0 dB with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing and 11.5 dB with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing.

7.4.15 Ranging

Ranging in DOCSIS 3.1 is divided into three steps, as illustrated in Figure 7-17:

Initial ranging is used by the CMTS to identify a new admitting CM and for coarse power and timing ranging.

Fine ranging is used after initial ranging has been completed, to fine-tune timing and power.

Probing is used during admission and steady state for pre-equalization configuration and periodic TX power and time-shift ranging.

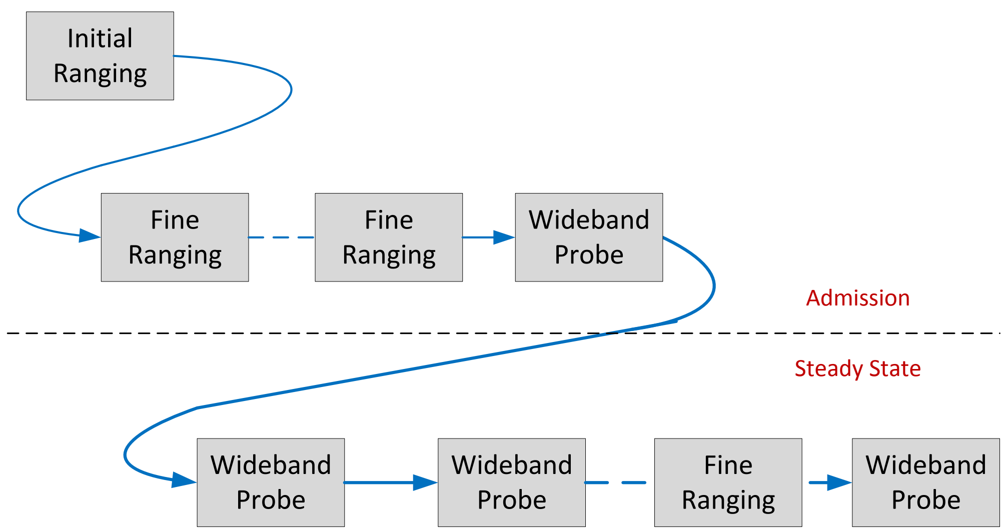


Figure 7-17 - Ranging Steps

7.4.15.1 Initial Ranging

This section specifies the initial ranging scheme for DOCSIS 3.1.

7.4.15.1.1 Initial Ranging Zone

The initial ranging zone consists of N by M contiguous minislots in the upstream frame. N and M are configured by the CMTS.

Minislots in the initial ranging zone do NOT carry pilots; all the FFT grid points in the initial ranging zone are used for the initial ranging signal, as illustrated in Figure 7-18.

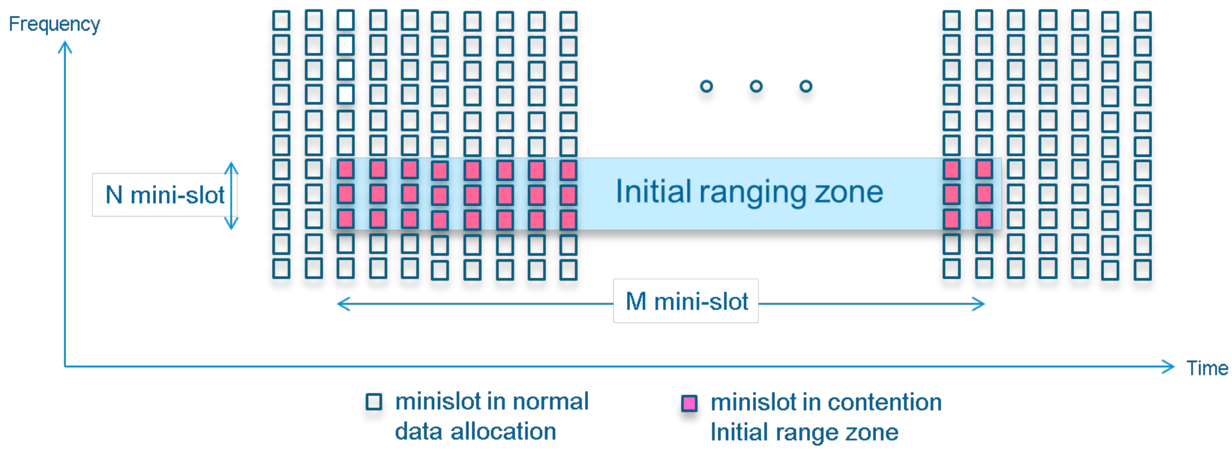


Figure 7-18 - Initial Ranging Zone

7.4.15.1.2 Initial Ranging Signal

The initial ranging signal consists of a preamble sequence and a data part, as illustrated in Figure 7-19. The data part is O-INIT-RNG-REQ as described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

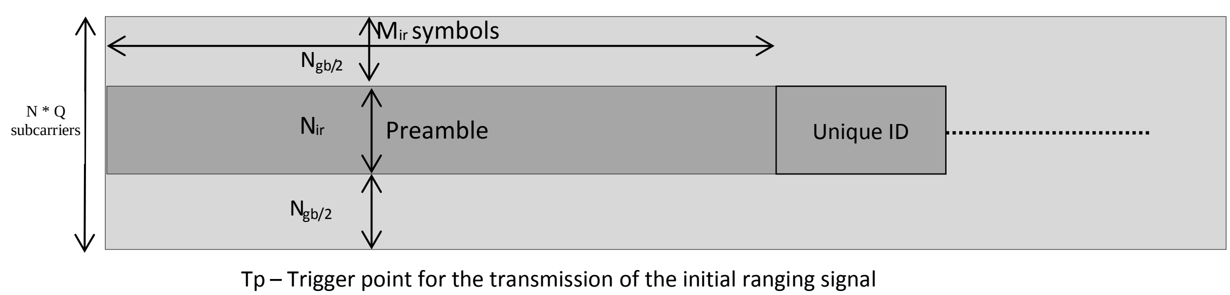


Figure 7-19 - Initial Ranging Signal

When allocating an initial ranging opportunity, the CMTS MUST allocate contiguous minislots within an OFDMA frame. See [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] for how an initial ranging opportunity that spans multiple OFDMA frames is specified in a MAP message. The preamble sequence is a BPSK binary sequence configured by the CMTS and sent by the CM. The length of the sequence is configured by the CMTS, and the bits contained in the sequence are configured by the CMTS.

The data portion of the initial ranging signal is the O-INIT-RNG-REQ message as described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. It is composed of a 6-byte MAC address, plus a 1-byte downstream channel ID and 24 CRC bits. It is LDPC (128,80) encoded and randomized as described in the sections below.

To generate the 24-bit CRC the CM MUST convert the 7 message bytes into a bitstream in MSB-first order. The CM MUST use the first bit of the bitstream to be the MSB of the first byte of the 6-byte MAC address and the last bit of the bitstream MUST be the LSB of the downstream channel ID. The 24 bits of CRC will be computed and appended to this bitstream as defined in Annex E to create the 80-bit sequence to be LDPC encoded.

The preamble sequence and the O-INIT-REG-REQ are duplicated and sent in a special structure of pair of symbols with identical BPSK content as described in Figure 7-20.

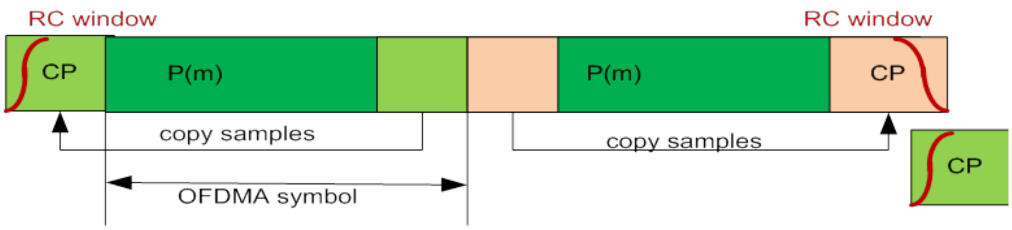


Figure 7-20 - Initial Ranging Admission Slot Structure

A block diagram of the initial ranging signal processing in the transmitter is described in Figure 7-21:

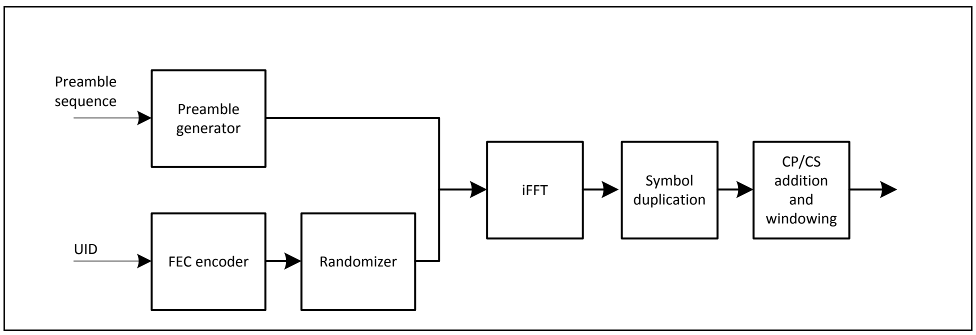


Figure 7-21 - Block Diagram of Initial Ranging Transmitter Processing

7.4.15.1.3 Preamble Construction

The CMTS MUST configure the BPSK Preamble sequence and its length L_p, with the limitations described in Section 7.4.15.2.6 and the number of subcarriers, N_{ir}, to be used for the transmission of the initial ranging signal.

The CMTS MUST allocate minislots for the initial ranging signal, comprising of the number of subcarriers N_{ir} and an appropriate guard band.

The CM MUST construct the preamble part of the initial ranging signal by converting the preamble sequence bits into BPSK symbols. The preamble is comprised of M_{ir} symbols each with N_{ir} subcarriers.

The CM MUST convert the first N_{ir}*M_{ir} bits in the preamble sequence into N_{ir}*M_{ir} BPSK symbols in the following order: The first N_{ir} BPSK symbols are written to the N_{ir} subcarriers of the first preamble symbol starting from the lowest subcarrier, the next N_{ir} BPSK symbols to the N_{ir} subcarriers of the second preamble symbol and the last N_{ir} BPSK symbols to the N_{ir} subcarriers of the last (the M_{ir}) preamble symbol.

7.4.15.1.4 FEC for the Initial Ranging Data

The CM MUST encode the 80 bit O-INIT-RNG-REQ message using the LDPC (128,80) encoder as described below.

A puncturing encoder consists of two steps. The first step encodes the input bit sequence with an encoder of the mother code. The second step, called puncturing step, deletes one or more bits from the encoded codeword.

The mother code is a rate ½ (160, 80) binary LDPC code. A parity check matrix of the mother code is represented by Table 7–14, where sub-matrix size (lifting factor) L = 16, see Section 7.4.3.2 for the compact definition of parity check matrix.

Table 7–14 - (160,80) LDPC code Parity Check Matrix

1	11	10	12	7	9	-	-	-	-
2	1	14	15	14	14	12	-	-	-
0	9	3	2	-	-	11	7	-	-
6	8	-	10	3	-	-	10	4	-
12	13	11	-	0	-	-	-	5	2

Let the information bits sent to the mother code encoder be denoted by $(a_0, \cdots, a_{79})$ and let the encoder output be denoted by $(a_0, \cdots, a_{79}, b_{80}, \cdots, b_{159})$, where $b_{80}, \cdots, b_{159}$ are parity-check bits. The bits to be deleted by the puncturing step are (also see Figure 7-22)

- Period 1: 16 consecutive bits $a_0, \cdots, a_{15}$
- Period 2: 16 consecutive bits $b_{144}, \cdots, b_{159}$

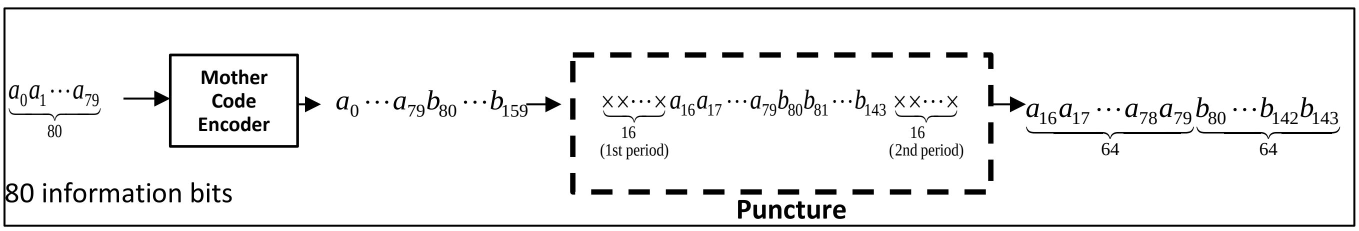


Figure 7-22 - LDPC Two-Period Puncturing Encoder for Initial Ranging FEC

7.4.15.1.5 Padding and Randomizing

The CM MUST pad and randomize the 128 encoded bits as described below.

The CM MUST calculate the number of symbols required to transmit the INIT-RNG-REQ message as follows:

Nuid_sym = ceiling (128/N_{ir}) where N_{ir} is the number of subcarriers allocated for the INIT-RNG-REQ message.

CM MUST pad the remaining bits with ones if the total number of bits (Nbits = Nuid_sym*N_{ir}) is greater than 128.

The CM MUST randomize the 128 encoded bits and the padding bits as described in Section 7.4.4, with the randomizer initialized at the beginning of the 128 encoded bits. The randomized bits are converted to BPSK symbols as defined in (BPSK constellation) and are appended to the preamble sequence for transmission.

The CM MUST add the BPSK symbols to the data part of the initial ranging signal in the following order: The first Nir BPSK symbols written to the N_{ir} subcarriers of the first symbol of the data part, the next N_{ir} BPSK symbols to the next data symbol, until all BPSK symbols are written vertically symbol by symbol. First BPSK symbol is written to the lowest indexed subcarrier of a data symbol.

7.4.15.1.6 Symbol duplicating cyclic prefix and windowing

The CM MUST repeat each Initial Ranging OFDMA symbol twice. A cyclic prefix of N_{cp} samples is appended before the first repeated OFDMA symbol. A cyclic suffix of N_{rcp} ($N_{rcp} = N_{cp} + N_{rp}$) samples is appended after the second repeated OFDMA symbol.

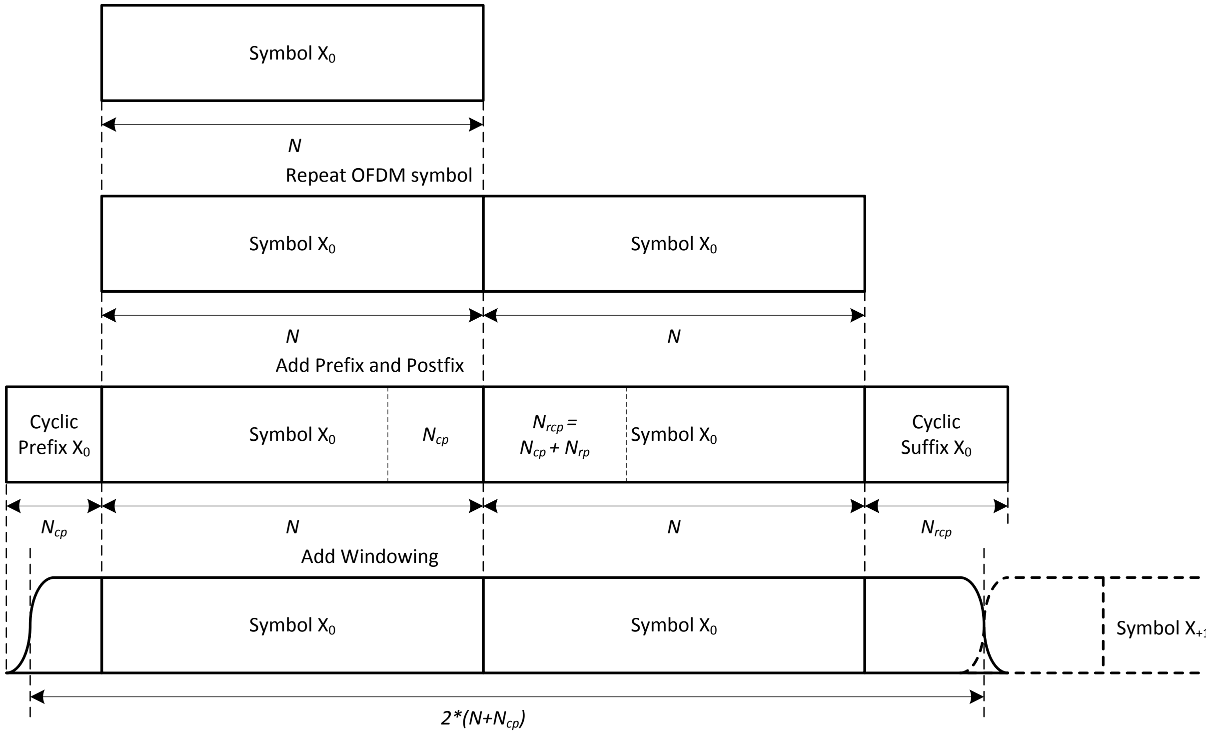


Figure 7-23 - Initial Ranging Symbol Pair Structure

Table 7–15 - Cyclic Prefix and Roll–Off Samples for Initial Ranging

Cyclic Prefix Samples (N_{cp})	Roll-Off Samples (N_{rp})
96	96
128	128
160	160
192	192
224	224
256	224
288	224
320	224
384	224
512	224
640	224

7.4.15.1.7 Initial Ranging with Exclusion Bands and Unused Subcarriers[17]

Transmission of the initial ranging signal around exclusion bands and unused subcarriers is allowed, under the limitations described in this section, using the same processing as explained in Section 7.4.15.1.2 with the same values of N_{ir} and N_{gb}.

Transmission with exclusion bands and unused subcarriers is illustrated in Figure 7-24.

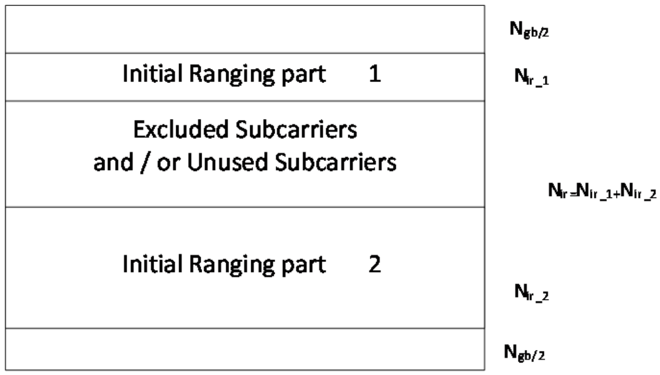


Figure 7-24 - Initial Ranging with Exclusions and Unused Subcarriers

When the initial ranging signal is transmitted around exclusion bands and unused subcarriers, the preamble sequence skips the excluded and unused subcarriers. Figure 7-25 depicts an example of an initial ranging preamble and an exclusion band of K subcarriers.

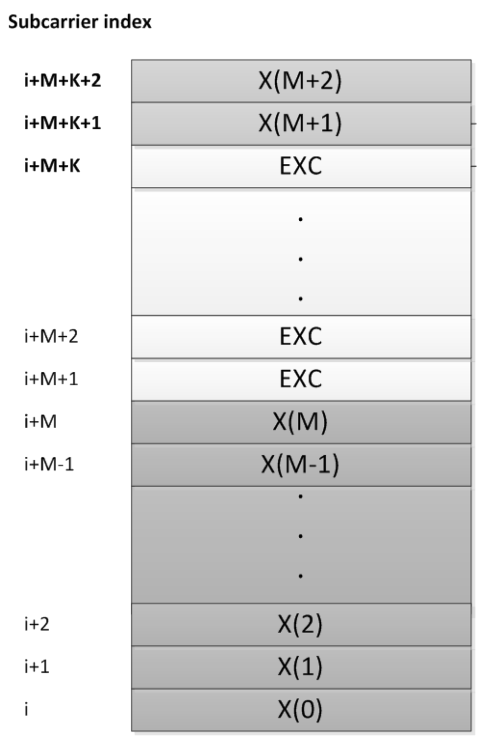


Figure 7-25 - Initial Ranging Preamble and an Exclusion Band

[17] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1210-1 on 12/11/14 and per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

When scheduling initial ranging opportunities, the CMTS MUST allocate minislots for the initial ranging opportunity in an appropriate region within the frame structure such that the distance from the lowest subcarrier used for Nir and the highest subcarrier used for Nir does not exceed 128 subcarriers including unused and excluded subcarriers. This requirement applies to both 25 kHz and 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

7.4.15.1.8 Allowed Values and Ranges for Configuration Parameters of Initial Ranging[18]

The CMTS MUST configure the initial ranging signal with the following limitations:

- Maximum number of subcarriers for the initial ranging signal (Nir) is 64 with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing not including the guardband.
- Maximum number of subcarriers for the initial ranging signal (Nir) is 128 with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing not including the guardband.
- Maximum preamble sequence size is 512 bits (64 Bytes) with 50 kHz and with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing.
- Maximum number of preamble symbols (before duplication) is 8.

7.4.15.2 Fine Ranging

This section describes fine ranging operations for the CM transmitter.

Fine ranging is used by the CMTS for the second step of the admission of a new CM process, following successful initial ranging. During this step, a fine ranging signal is transmitted by a new CM joining the network, according to transmission parameters provided by the CMTS. When it receives the fine ranging signal, the CMTS is able to fine-tune the joining CM's transmission power and transmission timing.

At the end of the fine ranging step, the CMTS can assign transmission opportunities to the new CM, using optimal transmission power, without interfering with coexisting transmitters on the same OFDMA frame.

7.4.15.2.1 Fine ranging signal

Figure 7-26 illustrates a fine ranging signal.

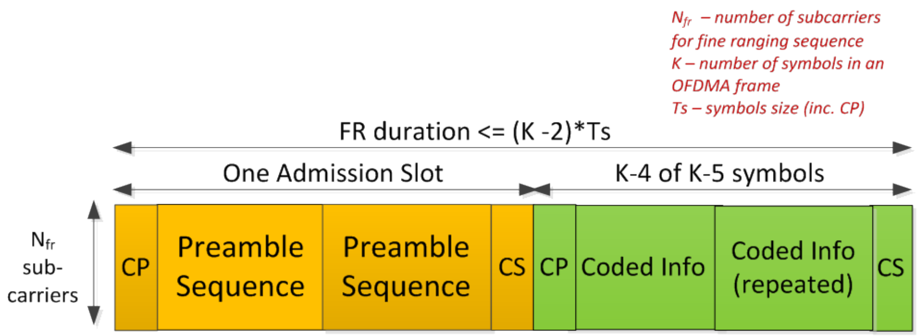


Figure 7-26 - Fine Ranging Signal

Fine ranging is a narrowband signal integrated into a single data OFDMA frame. It is comprised of two parts: a BPSK preamble sequence of one pair of preamble symbols (as defined in Section 7.4.15.1.2 for the initial ranging), and 34 bytes of FEC-encoded data spread over two or more OFDMA symbols. The data part of the fine ranging signal is QPSK-modulated and FEC encoded. The data part has a similar structure to the duplicated pair of symbols (refer to Section 7.4.15.1.2 for the initial ranging data structure).

The CM MUST transmit the fine ranging signal when allocated to it, with the following configurable parameters:

- Time shift

[18] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1210-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

- TX power
- Number of minislots allocated to the fine ranging signal (number of minislots incorporate the fine ranging signal plus the required guardband as described in Figure 7-27)
- Number of subcarriers for the fine ranging signal
- Preamble sequence.

7.4.15.2.2 The CM MUST use the first portion of the preamble sequence defined for the Initial Ranging signal for the BPSK PRBS sequence of the fine ranging. Transmission of the Fine Ranging Signal

The CM MUST duplicate the OFDMA symbols at the output of the IFFT as described in Section 7.4.15.1.6, adding a Cyclic Prefix to symbols 2n, and a Cyclic Suffix to symbols 2n+1, for n=0, 1, 2, …

The CM MUST apply windowing as described in Section 7.4.15.1.6.

The CM MUST add the Cyclic Prefix as described in Section 7.4.10, using the same CP value used for all other symbols.

The CM MUST add a Cyclic Suffix as described in Section 7.4.15.1.6.

The CM MUST use the Roll-off value specified in Section 7.4.10; the Roll-off value MUST be the same as that for all other symbols except Initial Ranging Symbols.

NOTE: The Roll-off value used for fine ranging may be different from the corresponding value used for Initial Ranging.

The CM MUST start to transmit the fine ranging signal one symbol (including the cyclic prefix) after the start time of the OFDMA frame.

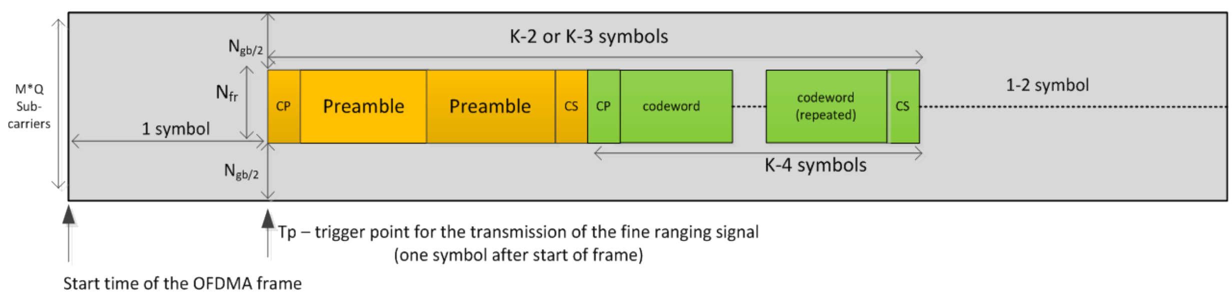


Figure 7-27 - Fine Ranging Signal Transmission

The CM MUST transmit the fine ranging signal with guardband of $N_{gb}/2$ subcarriers from each side of the allocated subcarriers.The CM calculates the number of subcarriers required for the guardband (N_{gb}) as follows:$N_{gb} = M*Q – N_{fr}$,

where:

M: is the number of minislots allocated for the fine ranging

Nfr : is the number of subcarriers as configured by the CMTS.

The CM MUST transmit zero valued subcarriers in the guardband.Figure 7-27 describes the fine ranging signal with M minislots of Q subcarriers and K symbols and N_{gb} subcarriers for the guardband.

A block diagram of the fine ranging signal processing in the transmitter is described in Figure 7-28.

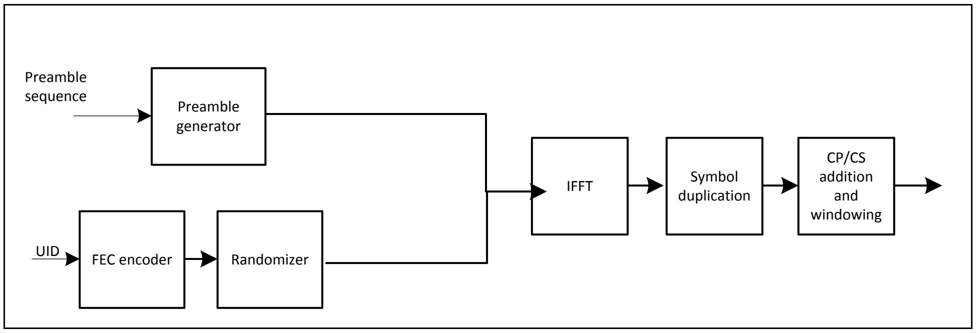


Figure 7-28 - Fine Ranging Transmitter Processing

7.4.15.2.3 Fine Ranging FEC

The CM MUST encode the 34 bytes of fine ranging information data using (362,272) shortening and puncturing LDPC encoder.

Shortening and puncturing encoder consists of three steps. In this step, the shortening step, one or more information bits are filled with 0 and the rest are filled with input bits. Then all information bits are encoded using the mother code matrix. After mother code encoding, the zero filled bits are deleted. The puncturing step is as described below.

The mother code is a rate 3/5 (480,288) binary LDPC code. A parity check matrix of the mother code is represented by Table 7–16, where sub-matrix size (lifting factor) L = 48, see Section 7.4.3.2 for the compact definition of parity check matrix.

Table 7–16 - (480, 288) LDPC Code Parity Check Matrix

16	1	28	9	40	38	16	-	-	-
28	42	36	11	39	9	8	38	-	-
5	2	18	16	25	47	-	2	19	-
18	18	40	18	0	34	-	-	7	32

Denote the information bits sent to the mother code encoder by $(a_0,\cdots,a_{287})$ and let the encoder output being $(a_0,\cdots,a_{287},b_{288},\cdots,b_{479})$, where $b_{288},\cdots,b_{479}$ are parity-check bits. Then the shortening and puncturing steps can be described as follows:

The shortening step fills 0 to 16 consecutive bits starting at position 272, i.e., let $a_{272}=a_{273}=\cdots=a_{287}=0$. The rest 272 bits i.e., $a_0,\cdots,a_{271}$, are fine ranging information data.

The bits to be deleted by the puncturing step are:

- Period 1: 54 consecutive bits $a_0,a_1,\cdots,a_{53}$
- Period 2: 48 consecutive bits $b_{432},b_{433},\cdots,b_{479}$

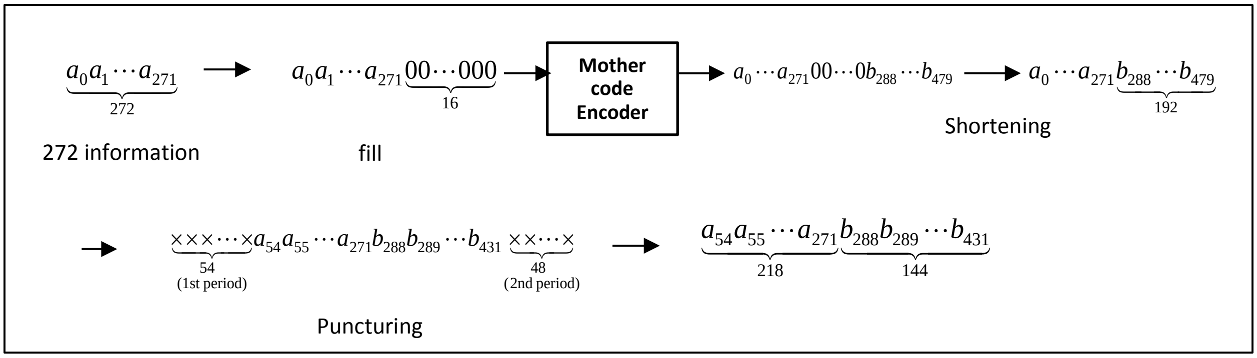


Figure 7-29 - Shortening and Puncturing Encoder for the Fine Ranging FEC

7.4.15.2.4 Padding and Randomizing

The CM MUST calculate the total number of data bits that can be transmitted in the fine ranging signal as follows:

Number_of_allocated_bits = Nfr* floor((K-4)/2)*2If the number of allocated bits is greater than 362, the CM MUST pad the 362 bits output from the LDPC encoder with ones so that the encoded data and the pad bits equal the Number_of_allocated_bits.The CM MUST randomize the data and padding bits as descried in Section 7.4.4.

The CM MUST add the QPSK symbols to the data part of the fine ranging signal in the following order: The first N_{fr} QPSK symbols written to the N_{fr} subcarriers of the first symbol of the data part, the next N_{fr} QPSK symbols to the next data symbol, until all QPSK symbols are written vertically symbol by symbol. The first QPSK symbol is written to the lowest indexed subcarrier of a data symbol. Unfilled subcarriers in the last symbols are padded with 1s.

The CM MUST transmit zero valued subcarriers in all symbol times not used for the preamble, data and pad bits.

NOTE: If K is an even number, the CM transmits K-2 symbols in the fine ranging signal (including the preamble), if K is an odd number, the CM transmits K-3 symbols (including the preamble).

7.4.15.2.5 Fine Ranging with Exclusion Bands and Unused Subcarriers[19]

Transmission of the fine ranging signal around exclusion bands and unused subcarriers is allowed, under the limitations described in this section, using the same processing as explained in Section 7.4.15.2.2 with the same values of N_{fr} and N_{gb}.

Transmission with exclusion bands is illustrated in Figure 7-30.

[19] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1210-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

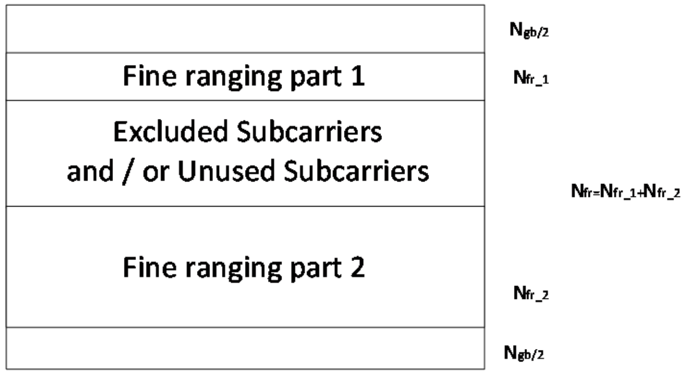


Figure 7-30 - Fine Ranging and Exclusion Bands

When the fine ranging signal is transmitted around exclusion bands and unused subcarriers, the preamble sequence skips the excluded and unused subcarriers. The figure below depicts an example of a fine ranging preamble and an exclusion band of K subcarriers.

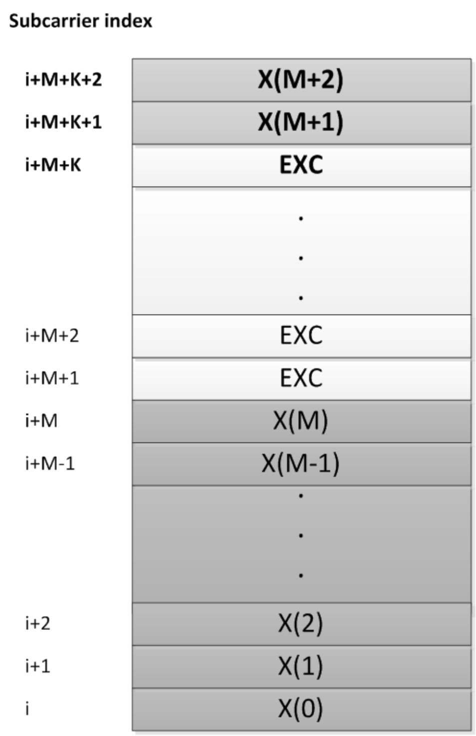


Figure 7-31 - Fine Ranging Preamble and an Exclusion Band

When scheduling fine ranging opportunities, the CMTS MUST allocate minislots for the fine ranging opportunity in an appropriate region within the frame structure such that the distance from the lowest subcarrier used for Nfr and the highest subcarrier used for Nfr does not exceed 512 subcarriers including unused and excluded subcarriers. This requirement applies to both 25 kHz and 50 kHz subcarrier spacing.

7.4.15.2.6 Allowed Values and Ranges for Configuration Parameters[20]

The CMTS MUST configure the fine ranging signal with the following limitations:

The maximum number of subcarriers for the fine ranging signal (N_{fr}) is 256 subcarriers with 50 kHz subcarrier spacing not including the subcarriers in the guardband.

- The maximum number of subcarriers for the fine ranging signal (N_{fr}) is 512 subcarriers with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing not including the subcarriers in the guardband.
- The maximum preamble sequence size is 512 bits (64 Bytes) with both 50 kHz and 25 kHz subcarrier spacing.
- The number of preamble symbols (before duplication) is 1.

7.4.15.2.7 Power and Time Adjustments

Algorithms for power and time adjustments (such as number of fine ranging trials, frequency allocations, etc.) are vendor-specific implementation.

7.4.15.3 Probing

Probing is used during admission and steady state for pre-equalization configuration and periodic transmission power and time-shift ranging.

7.4.15.3.1 Probing Frame

A probing frame consists of K contiguous probing symbols (OFDM symbols), where K is the number of symbols in the minislot. The probing frame is aligned with the minislot boundaries in the time domain.

7.4.15.3.2 Probing Symbol Pilots

Probing symbol pilots are BPSK subcarriers, generated from the PRBS generation scheme described in Section 7.4.15.3.3.

The CM MUST use the generation scheme detailed in Section 7.4.15.3.3 to generate 2048/4096 subcarriers for 2K/4K FFT.

The CM MUST use the same BPSK modulation for a specific subcarrier in all probing symbols.

The CM MUST transmit zero valued subcarriers in exclusion subcarriers.

Probing symbol pilot i is always associated with the i-th subcarrier number, where:

$i = 0, 1, \ldots , 2047$ for 2K FFT

and

$i = 0, 1, \ldots , 4095$ for 4K FFT

(Subcarriers are numbered in ascending order starting from 0.)

7.4.15.3.3 PRBS generation scheme

The polynomial definition for the PRBS scheme is $X^{12} + X^9 + X^8 + X^5 + 1$, where the seed is 3071. The period of the PRBS is 2^{12}-1 bits, which is sufficient to create one probe symbol without repetitions. The sequence is illustrated in Figure 7-32.

The CM's linear feedback shift register MUST be clocked after every subcarrier starting at subcarrier 0, i.e., subcarrier with k=0 in the IDFT equation of Section 7.4.9.

[20] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1210-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

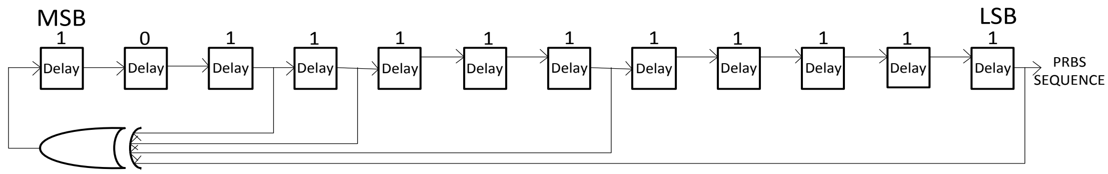


Figure 7-32 - Polynomial Sequence for Pseudorandom Binary Sequence Generation

The PRBS sequence for 4K FFT is:
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 … 1 1 1 0 0 1 0 1 0 0 0 1 0 1

The PRBS sequence for 2K FFT is:
1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 0 1 0 1 1 1 … 0 0 1 0 0 1 1 0 0 0 0 0 1 1

The PRBS sequence is mapped to the BPSK pilots as follows:

0 is mapped to a BPSK pilot of 1

1 is mapped to a BPSK pilot of -1

7.4.15.3.4 Probing Information

The CMTS MUST allocate a specific probing symbol within the probing frame and instruct the CM to transmit the probing sequence in that symbol.

The CMTS MUST specify the probing symbol within the probing frame through the parameter "Symbol in Frame".

The CMTS MUST send three parameters to the CM: "st", "Start Subcarrier", and "Subcarrier Skipping".

The CM MUST support staggering pattern [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] for probing, when the staggering bit "st" is set to one, when "st" is set to zero, the staggering is off.

The CMTS MUST define a probing pattern consisting of either the pilots from all the subcarriers of the assigned probing symbol, or a set of pilots from scattered subcarriers of the assigned probing symbol. Please refer to section 6.4.4 in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] for detailed probe mapping.

The range of "start subcarrier" is from 0 to 7. The range of "subcarrier skipping" is from 0 to 7. Figure 7-33 and Figure 7-34 illustrate the use of these parameters.

The CM MUST use the *start subcarrier* and *subcarrier skipping* parameters to determine which subcarriers are to be used for probing transmission, as follows:

- The "start subcarrier" parameter is the starting subcarrier number.
- The "subcarrier skipping" parameter is the number of subcarriers to be skipped between successive pilots. "Subcarrier skipping" = 0 implies no skipping of subcarriers (i.e., all subcarriers in a single symbol belong to a single transmitter).

The CM MUST NOT transmit the probing sequence using excluded subcarriers. Excluded subcarriers are those subcarriers in which no CM is allowed to transmit, generally because they are frequencies used by other systems (including guard-band subcarriers). The CM MUST transmit the probing sequence using both used and unused subcarriers.

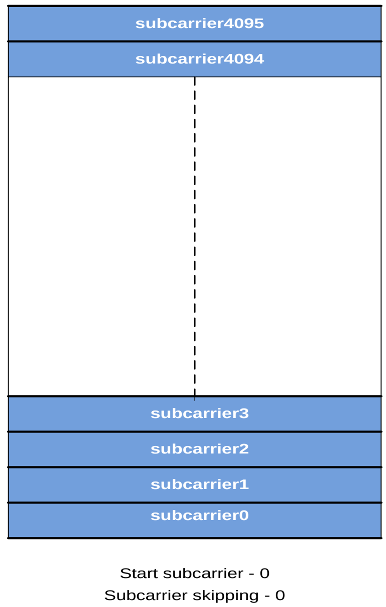


Figure 7-33 - 4K FFT Example, All Subcarriers Used for Probing, no Skipping

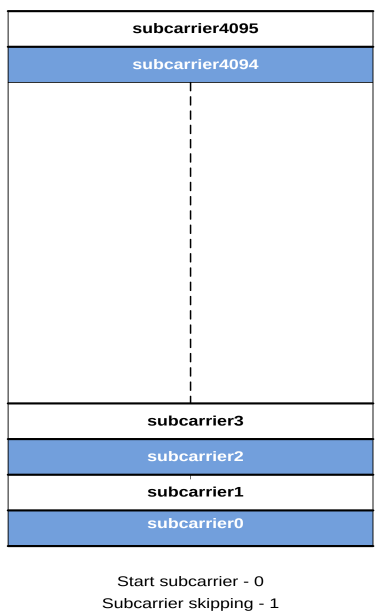


Figure 7-34 - 4K FFT Example, Alternate Subcarriers Used for Probing

The CMTS MUST NOT configure more than a single type of probe ("st", "Start Subcarrier", "Subcarrier Skipping" and PW value) on the same OFDMA frame per CM.

The CMTS MUST have the ability to scale the transmission power per subcarrier by configuring the PW bit in the P-IE [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

The CM MUST scale its transmission power per subcarrier when transmitting the probe as required by the CMTS in the P-IE [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. The range of the scaling values is Probedelta_n = -2 to -9 dB. See Section 7.4.12.3.

7.4.16 Upstream Pilot Structure[21]

Pilots are used by the CMTS receiver to adapt to channel conditions and frequency offset.

DOCSIS 3.1 specifies two minislot types, differing in the number of subcarriers per minislot, 8- and 16-subcarrier minislots.

Two types of minislots are defined for each minislot size: edge minislots and body minislots.

The CM MUST use an edge minislot as the first minislot in a transmission burst.

The CM MUST use body minislots for all other minislots in a transmission burst with the following two exceptions:

1. The CM MUST use an edge minislot for the first minislot of an OFDMA frame that is not a zero valued minislot.
2. The CM MUST use an edge minislot for the first minislot after an exclusion band or after one or more contiguous skipped subcarriers or after a zero valued minislot.

Figure 7-35 below describes the usage of edge and body minislots. Note that TX-2 is a one minislot burst comprising of a single edge minislot.

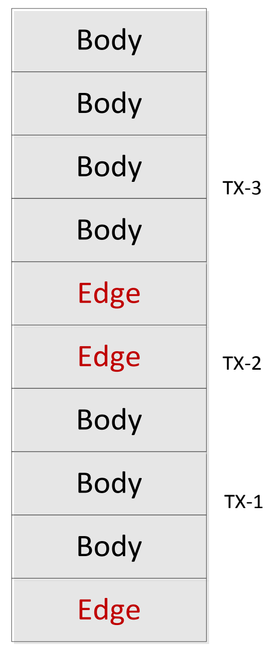


Figure 7-35 - Edge and Body Minislots in a Transmission Burst

Pilots are subcarriers that do not carry data. Instead, a pilot subcarrier encodes a pre-defined BPSK symbol known to the receiver (see Section 7.4.15.3.3). DOCSIS 3.1 also specifies complementary pilots. Complementary pilots are subcarriers that carry data, but with a lower modulation order than other data subcarriers in the minislot. If the modulation order used for data in the minislot is *M*, the CM MUST use complementary pilots with modulation order equal to the maximum between *M*-4 and 1 (BPSK). For example if the bit loading in a minislot is 12, Complementary Pilots use 8 bits. If the bit loading is 4, Complementary Pilots will use BPSK. The CMTS receiver MAY use complementary pilots to enhance its signal processing, such as to improve the accuracy of the carrier frequency offset acquisition.

For each minislot size, seven pilot patterns are defined.

[21] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

Pilot patterns differ by the number of pilots in a minislot, and by their arrangement within the minislot. The different pilot patterns enable the CMTS to optimize its performance (physical layer rate and pilot overhead) according to different loop conditions and variations of SNR with frequency. Each pilot pattern defines edge and body minislots.

Two additional pilot patterns are specified for subslots (see Section 7.4.16.4 and Section 7.4.16.5); these are required for both the CM and the CMTS.

The following sections describe the seven pilot patterns for each minislot size, and the pilot patterns for subslots.

7.4.16.1 Pilot Patterns for 8-Subcarrier Minislots

Figure 7-36 and Figure 7-37 define the pilot patterns for edge and body minislots with 8 subcarriers.

The CM MUST support pilot patterns 1-7.

The CMTS MUST support pilot patterns 1-4.

The CMTS SHOULD support pilot patterns 5-7.

The CMTS MUST use either pilots pattern 1-4 or pilot patterns 5-7 on the same OFDMA channel.

The CMTS MUST NOT use a mixture of pilot patterns 1-4 and 5-7 on the same OFDMA channel.

In each figure, the horizontal axis represents OFDMA symbols, and the vertical axis represents the subcarriers. Each square in a figure represents a subcarrier at a specific symbol time. Pilots are designated by "P" and complementary pilots by "CP". All other subcarriers carry data with the modulation order of the minislot.

The figures show patterns for K between 6 and 16. For K>16 the complementary pilots are always located in the 14th and 16th symbols, all symbols from the 17th symbol to the end of the frame carry data only. Pilot locations are the same for any K.

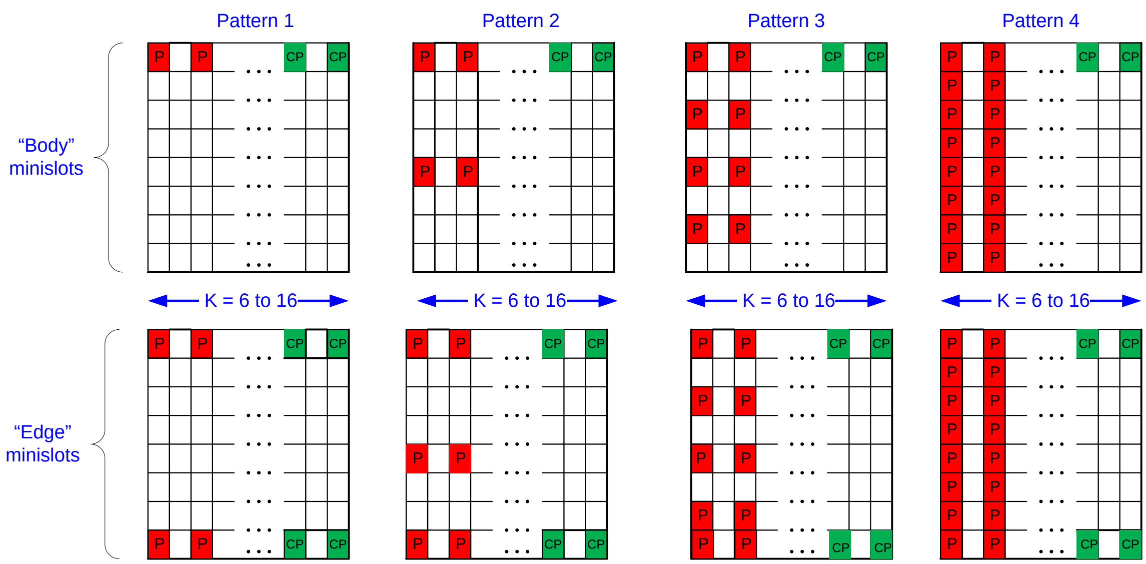


Figure 7-36 - Pilot Patterns 1-4 for Minislots with 8 Subcarriers

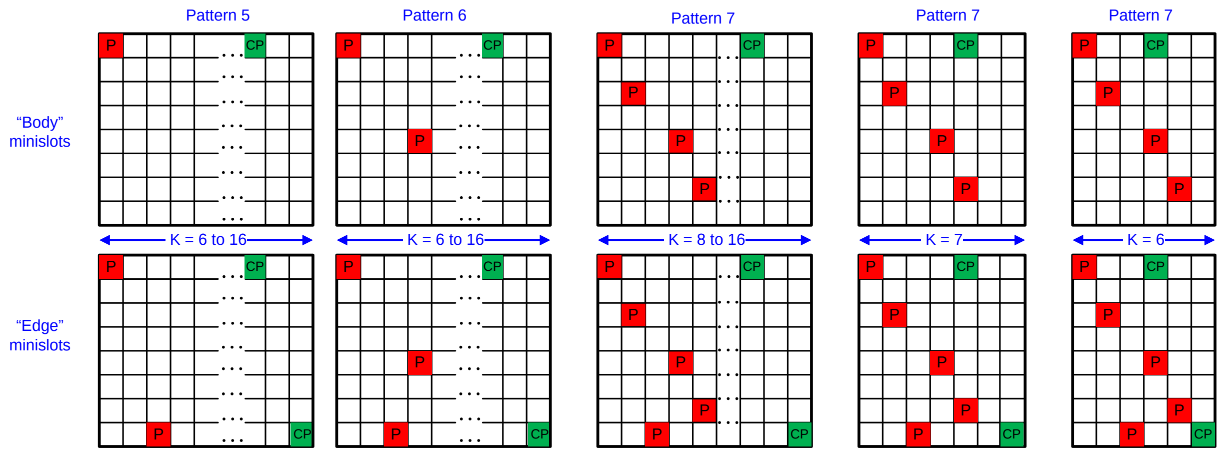


Figure 7-37 - Pilot Patterns 5-7 for Minislots with 8 Subcarriers

7.4.16.2 Pilot Patterns for 16-Subcarrier Minislots

Figure 7-38 and Figure 7-39 define the pilot patterns for minislots with 16 subcarriers

The CM MUST support pilot patterns 8-14.

The CMTS MUST support pilot patterns 8-11.

The CMTS SHOULD support pilot patterns 12-14.

The CMTS MUST use either pilots pattern 8-11 or pilot patterns 12-14 on the same OFDMA channel.

The CMTS MUST NOT use a mixture of pilot patterns 8-11 and 12-14 on the same OFDMA channel.

The CMTS MUST configure minislots with 16 subcarriers to be used with 25 kHz subcarrier spacing with the exception for RFoG.

The figures show patterns for K between 6 and 9. For K>9, the complementary pilots are always located in the 7th and 9th symbols, all symbols from the 10th symbol to end of frame carry data only. Pilot locations are the same for any K.

The horizontal axis in the figure represents OFDMA symbols, and the vertical axis represents subcarriers. Each square in a figure represents a subcarrier at a specific symbol time. Pilots are designated by "P" and complementary pilots by "CP". All other subcarriers carry data with the modulation order of the minislot.

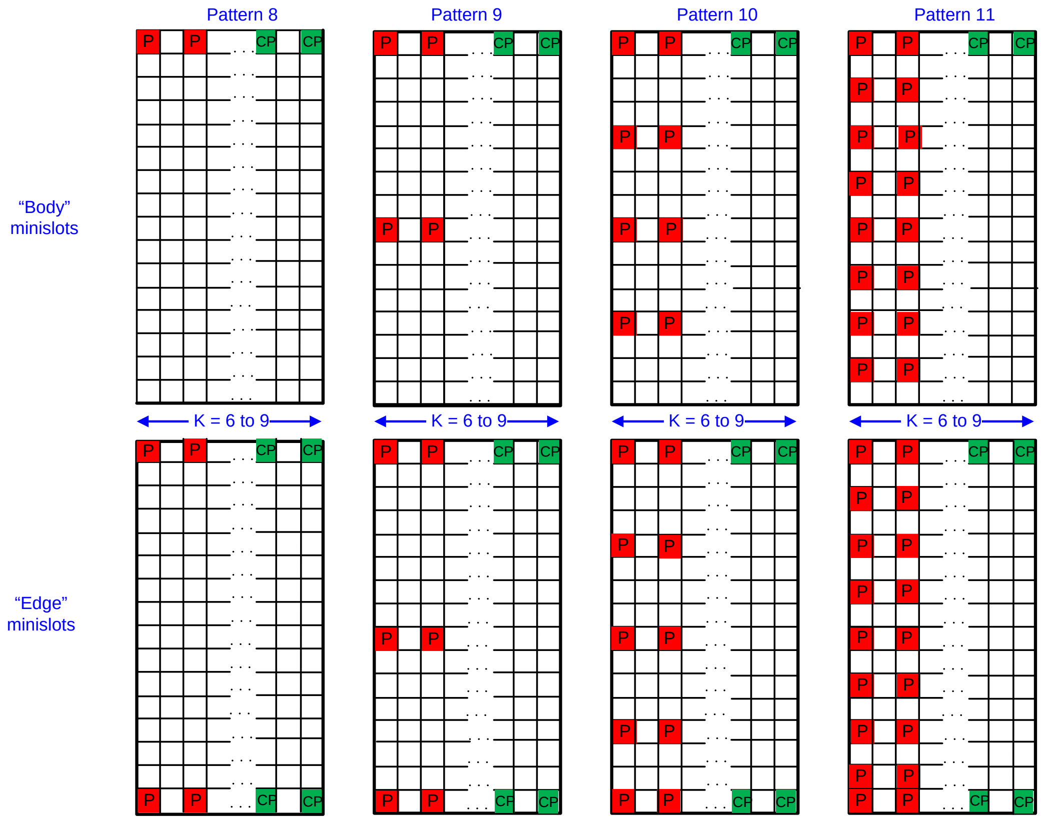


Figure 7-38 - Pilot Patterns 8-11 for Minislots with 16 Subcarriers

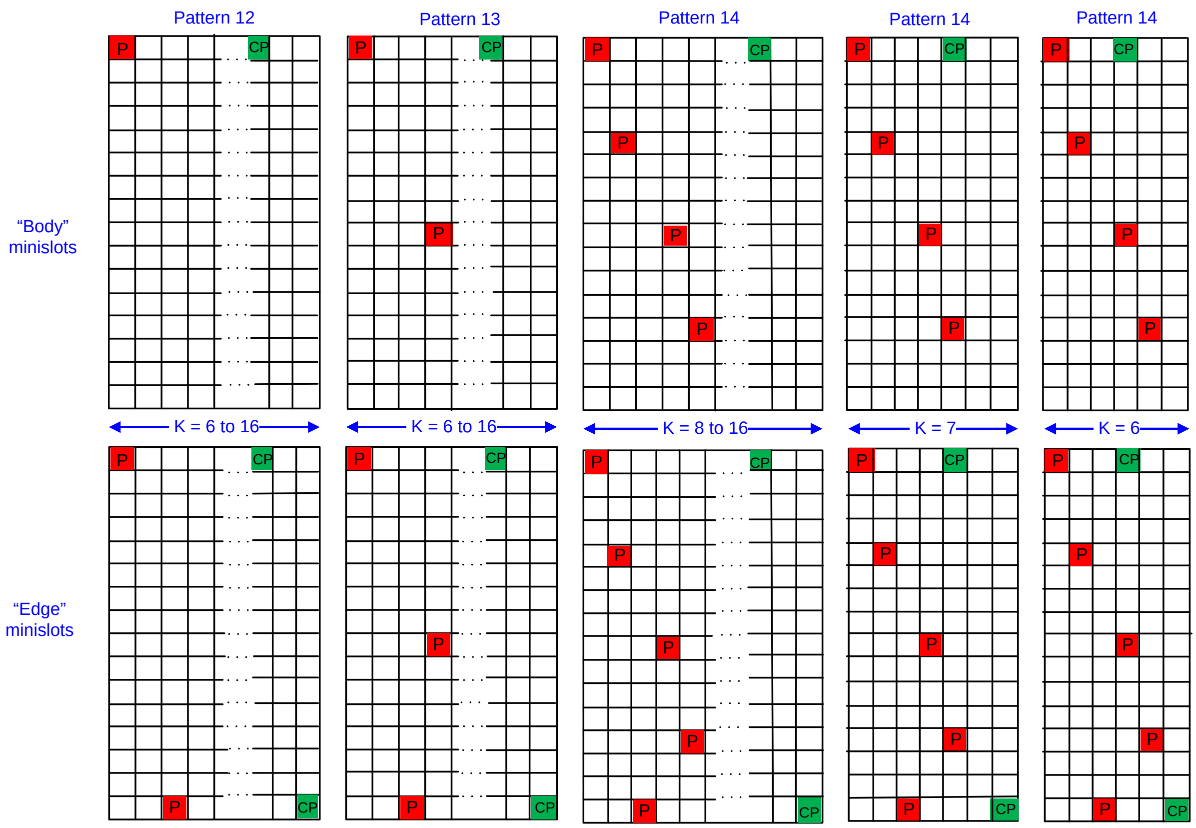


Figure 7-39 - Pilot Patterns 12-14 for Minislots with 16 Subcarriers

7.4.16.3 Pilot Boosting

The CM MUST use higher power (pilot boost) when transmitting pilots and complementary pilots with pilot patterns 5-7 and patterns 12-14, with the following exceptions:

> The CM MUST use boosted power for the pilot and normal power for the complementary pilot when both are used in the same symbol and in the same minislot.

The CM MUST boost pilots and complementary pilots by a factor of 3 in power (about 4.7 dB).

7.4.16.4 Pilot Patterns for 8-Subcarrier Subslots

Subslots are used to carry REQ messages which are always 7 bytes or 56 bits long. Data subcarriers are always QPSK-modulated, and are not encoded by any FEC but are randomized using the randomizer described in Section 7.4.4.

Figure 7-40 depicts the pilot pattern for a subslot with 8 subcarriers.

The CM MUST support the pilot pattern for 8-subcarrier subslots.

The CMTS MUST support the pilot pattern for 8-subcarrier subslots.

Pilots are designated by "P", and no complementary pilots are used; all other subcarriers carry data with the modulation order of the subslot.

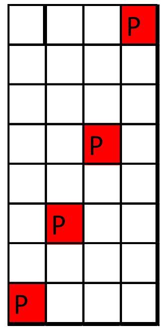


Figure 7-40 - Pilot Pattern for Subslots with 8 Subcarriers

7.4.16.5 Pilot Patterns for 16-Subcarrier Subslots

Figure 7-41 depicts the pilot pattern for a subslot with 16 subcarriers.

The CM MUST support the pilot pattern for 16-subcarrier subslots.

The CMTS MUST support the pilot pattern for 16-subcarrier subslots.

Pilots are designated by "P", and no complementary pilots are used: all other subcarriers carry data with the modulation order of the subslot.

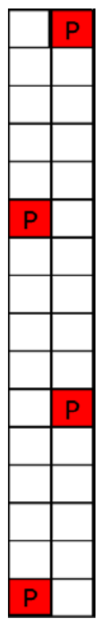


Figure 7-41 - Pilot Pattern for Subslots with 16 Subcarriers

7.4.16.6 Pilot Modulation

The CM MUST BPSK modulate the pilots using the PRBS defined in Section 7.4.15.3.3 using the feedback shift register illustrated in Figure 7-32. This feedback shift register is initialized for the subcarrier with index k=0 of the IDFT equation of Section 7.4.9. It is then clocked once for every subcarrier of the IDFT. If the subcarrier happens to be a pilot this is BPSK modulated with the output of the feedback shift register, with a value of 0 mapping to (1 + j0) and a value of 1 mapping to (-1 + j0).

7.4.17 Upstream Pre-Equalization

A CM MUST implement a linear pre-equalizer with a single complex coefficient per subcarrier.

The CMTS MUST be able to direct a CM to pre-equalize its upstream transmission using CMTS-assigned pre-equalization coefficients as a step in the ranging process.

The CMTS uses the CM's probe signal for pre-equalizer coefficient updates. The probes are described in Section 7.4.15.3. The message used to send information required for updating the pre-equalizer coefficients is described in the Ranging Response (RNG-RSP) section of [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

The CMTS MAY specify the subcarriers (i.e., frequency range) over which coefficient updates is to be performed.

The CMTS MUST have the ability to scale the transmission power per subcarrier when configuring the probe transmission using the Range Response message.

The CM MUST scale its transmission power per channel when transmitting the probe as required by the CMTS in the RNG-RSP message. The range of the scaling values is: 0 to [10log(skip+1)] dB. Skip is defined in Section 7.4.15.3.4.

The CM MUST use a default value of 1+j0 for all pre-equalizer coefficients of the used and unused subcarriers. The CM MUST set to zero all pre-equalizer coefficients that correspond to the excluded subcarriers.

The CM MUST set the pre-equalizer coefficient to one for any subcarrier whose status is changed from excluded to non-excluded. At the next probe opportunity the CM MUST use a pre-equalization coefficient of 1+j0 on the subcarriers whose status has changed.

The CM MUST update the pre-equalizer coefficients according to the REG_RSP message as described below.

The RNG-RSP MAC message carries the pre-equalization adjustment information.

The RNG_RSP message sent by the CMTS specifies whether the pre-equalization coefficients sent by the CMTS are for coefficient initialization or for coefficient adjustment. If coefficient initialization is specified, the CM MUST replace the pre-equalizer coefficients with the coefficients sent by the CMTS. In the case of an adjustment, the CM MUST multiply the coefficients values sent by the CMTS with the current pre-equalization coefficient values, to get the new coefficients, as follows:

Ck(i+1)=Ck(i) * Ak(i)

where:

Ck(i) is the pre-equalizer coefficient of the k-th subcarrier, as used in the last probe transmission, Ck(i+1) is the updated pre-equalizer coefficient of the k-th subcarrier and Ak(i) is the update coefficient information received in the RNG-RSP as a response to the corresponding probe transmission. "*" indicates a complex multiplication.

The CMTS MUST use complex numbers for the update coefficients values in the form of I+j*Q where I and Q are both using 16-bit fractional two's complement notation -"s1.14" (sign bit, integer bit, and 14 fractional bits).

The CM MUST normalize the new calculated coefficients as follows:

mean (abs (Ck)^2) = 1 (mean value computed over all pre-equalizer coefficients corresponding to the used and unused subcarriers).

The CM MUST pre-equalize all transmissions other than probe signals, as defined by the CMTS via the RNG_RSP message. The CM MUST pre-equalize all probe transmissions unless the bit in the P-MAP message that defines the presence or absence of pre-equalization, is set to "equalizer disabled".

The CM MUST be able to transmit a probe signal with or without pre-equalization (all coefficients are reset to 1+j*0) as instructed by the CMTS using the P-MAP message described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

7.5 Downstream Transmit and Receive

7.5.1 Overview

This section specifies the downstream electrical and signal processing requirements for the transmission of OFDM modulated RF signals from the CMTS to the CM.

7.5.2 Signal Processing

Serial data signals received from the PHY-MAC Convergence Layer are received and processed by the PHY as illustrated in Figure 7-42. This process yields OFDM symbols with 4096 subcarriers for the 4K FFT mode and 8192 subcarriers for the 8K FFT mode, with each symbol consisting of:

- Data subcarriers
- Scattered pilots
- Continuous pilots
- PLC subcarriers
- Excluded subcarriers that are set to zero

This section briefly describes that process and provides links to the specific requirements for each process described in this specification.

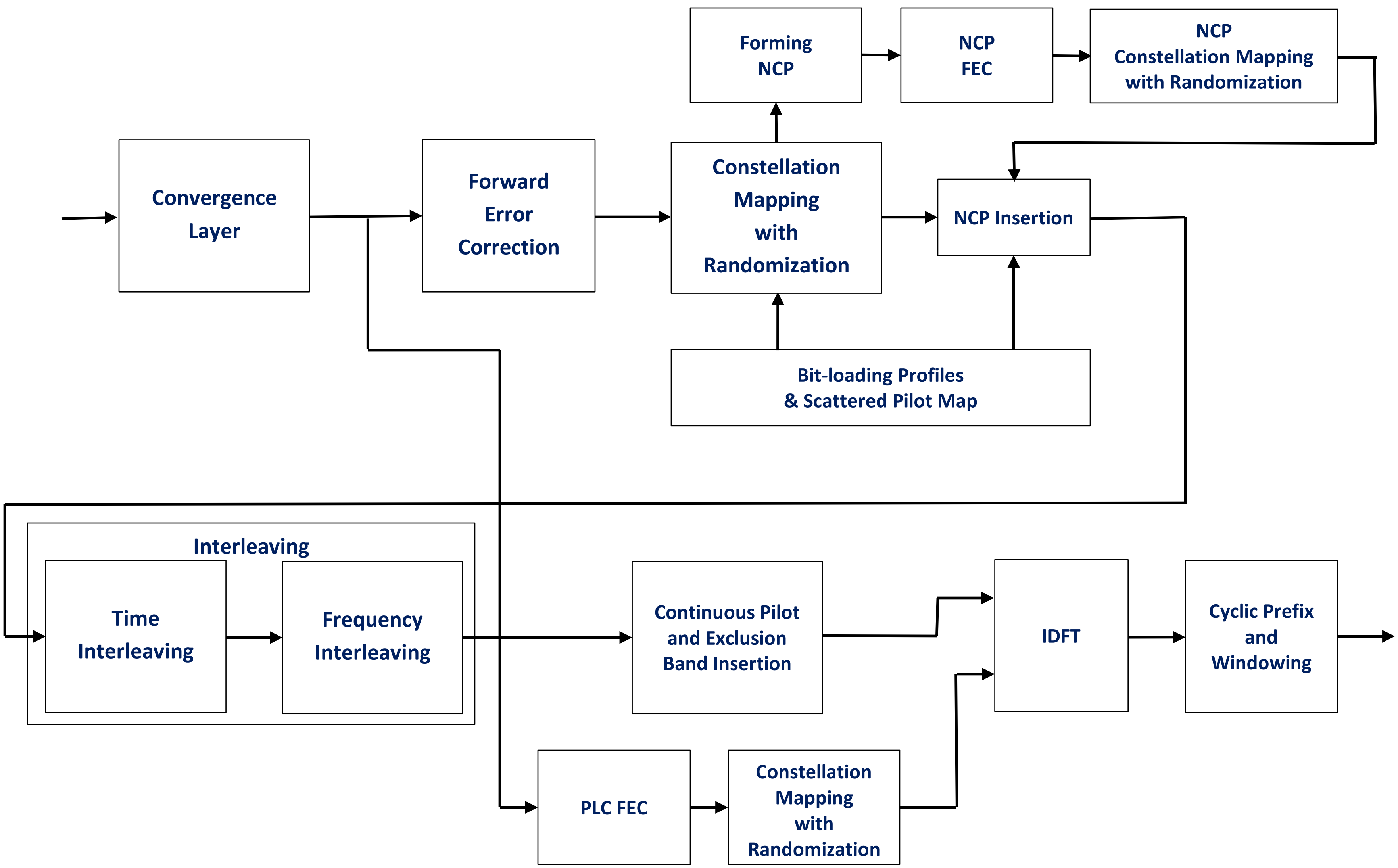


Figure 7-42 - Downstream PHY Processing

7.5.2.1 Forward Error Correction (FEC) Encoding

The PHY begins processing incoming data by FEC encoding data bits to form encoded codewords. Forward error correction adds redundancy to the transmitted data; these redundant bits can be used by the receiver to detect and correct errors in the transmission. For DOCSIS 3.1, FEC encoding applies a concatenated BCH-LDPC encoder, based on [DVB-C2], and then shuffling the bits in a codeword via bit interleaving. Downstream forward error correction is described in detail in Section 7.5.4.

7.5.2.2 Symbol Mapping to QAM Constellations[22]

Once FEC encoded codewords have been created, the codewords are placed into OFDM symbols. Because each subcarrier in an OFDM symbol can have a different QAM modulation, the codewords are to be first demultiplexed into parallel cell words; these cell words are then mapped into constellations based on the corresponding bit loading pattern of the subcarrier's QAM constellation. In DOCSIS 3.1, QAM constellations for data subcarriers include zero-bit-loaded subcarriers and 16-QAM and 64-QAM to 4096-QAM, with both square and non-square constellations. 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM are optional modulation orders for both the CM and CMTS. This process is described in Section 7.5.4.1.1.

7.5.2.3 Scattered Pilot Placeholder Insertion[23]

OFDM transmission requires the insertion of scattered pilots to enable channel estimation and equalization in the receiver. While the insertion happens after time and frequency interleaving, since these pilots are not in the same spectral location in every symbol, insertion of these scattered pilots disrupt the spectral location of the QAM data subcarriers. To overcome this problem, place-holders for scattered pilot locations are inserted during the symbol mapping process. When a particular subcarrier carries a scattered pilot, the phase of that scattered pilot on that subcarrier is always the same, and is either 0 degrees or 180 degrees, depending on a pseudo-random sequence. The pseudo-random sequence for defining the phase for the placeholders for both the scattered pilots and continuous pilots is repeated every OFDM symbol, and the process is described in Section 7.5.15.

7.5.2.4 Next Codeword Pointer Insertion[24]

Detecting where the next codeword begins in an OFDM symbol can be difficult: more than one codeword may map into one OFDM symbol, the number of codewords per OFDM symbol may not be an integer, a codeword can overflow from one OFDM symbol to another, and the codeword could be shortened. Therefore, the transmitter is to convey to the receiver all of the locations where a new codeword begins within an OFDM symbol. These Next Codeword Pointers (NCPs) are encoded using another forward error correction method and are appended to OFDM symbols. NCP subcarriers are modulated using QPSK, 16-QAM, or 64-QAM and this modulation is signaled by the PLC. The process of encoding and inserting the NCP for DOCSIS 3.1 is discussed in Sections 7.5.5.5.2 and 8.3.4.

7.5.2.5 Interleaving

These OFDM symbols, comprised of data subcarriers, scattered pilot placeholders, and NCPs, are then subjected to time and frequency interleaving. Time interleaving mitigates the impact of burst noise, while frequency interleaving mitigates the effect of ingress.

Time interleaving disperses the subcarriers of an input symbol over a set of output symbols, based on the depth of interleaving. Therefore, if an OFDM symbol is corrupted by a noise burst, this burst is spread over the symbols when it is de-interleaved, thereby reducing the error correction burden on the decoder. The time interleaving process is described in Section 7.5.6.

Frequency interleaving occurs after time interleaving. Frequency interleaving disperses subcarriers of the symbol along the frequency axis; therefore, OFDM subcarriers impacted by narrowband ingress are distributed between several codewords, reducing the number of errors in each codeword. The frequency interleaving process is described in Section 7.5.6.

---

[22] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 and PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[23] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[24] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 and PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.

7.5.2.6 Insertion of Continuous Pilots and Exclusion Sub-Bands[25]

When interleaving is complete, placeholders for continuous pilots are inserted. These will be subject to modulation later, together with the placeholders already inserted for scattered pilots. Continuous pilots are pilots that occur at the same subcarrier location in every symbol. These are needed for receiver synchronization.

Exclusion bands and excluded subcarriers are inserted next. Nothing is transmitted at these subcarrier locations. The contiguous block of subcarriers allocated to the PHY Link Channel is also treated as an exclusion band at this stage; this is a placeholder for the PLC that is filled later. The regions outside the bandwidth of the OFDM signal may also be treated as exclusion bands.

When a particular subcarrier carries a continuous pilot, the phase of that continuous pilot on that subcarrier is always the same, and is either 0 degrees or 180 degrees depending on a pseudo-random sequence. The pseudo-random sequence for defining the phase for the placeholders for both the scattered pilots and continuous pilots is repeated every OFDM symbol, and the process is described in Section 7.5.15.

7.5.2.7 Encoding and Insertion of the PLC[26]

The PLC is constructed within the convergence layer in parallel with the functions already discussed, relating to the main data channel. The PLC occupies the same contiguous set of subcarriers in every OFDM symbol, as described in Section 7.5.13.2. As further described in Section 7.5.13.2, the PLC subcarriers carry the PLC preamble for 8 consecutive OFDM symbols followed by 120 symbols of PLC data. The PLC data is encoded for error correction, and then mapped into 16-QAM PLC data subcarriers. The PLC data is not subjected to the same time or frequency interleaving as the data; however they are block interleaved. The PLC is then inserted in place of its placeholder in each symbol. This PLC data block interleaving process is described in Section 7.5.6.3. The PLC preamble is BPSK modulated as defined in Section 7.5.13.3.

7.5.2.8 IDFT Transformation and Cyclic Prefix Insertion

In this stage each OFDM symbol is transformed into the time domain using a 4096-point or 8192-point inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT). This 4096 or 8192 sample sequence is referred to below as the IDFT output. This process is described in Section 7.5.7.

7.5.2.9 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing

A segment at the end of the IDFT output is prepended to the IDFT, and this is referred to as the Cyclic Prefix (CP) of the OFDM symbol. There are five possible values for the length of the CP and the choice depends on the delay spread of the channel – a longer delay spread requires a longer cyclic prefix.

For windowing purposes another segment at the start of the IDFT output is appended to the end of the IDFT output – the roll-off period (RP). There are five possible values for the RP, and the choice depends on the bandwidth of the channel and the number of exclusion bands within the channel. A larger RP provides sharper edges in the spectrum of the OFDM signal; however, there is a time vs. frequency trade-off. Larger RP values reduce the efficiency of transmission in the time domain, but because the spectral edges are sharper, more useful subcarriers appear in the frequency domain. There is an optimum value for the RP that maximizes capacity for a given bandwidth and/or exclusion band scenario.

These topics are discussed in detail in Section 7.5.8.

7.5.3 Time and Frequency Synchronization[27]

This section specifies the timing and frequency synchronization requirements for DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS transmitters and CM receivers.

The purpose of this section is to ensure that the CMTS transmitter can provide proper timing and frequency references for DOCSIS 3.1 downstream OFDM operation and that the CM receiver can acquire the system timing and subcarrier from the downstream for proper DOCSIS 3.1 operation.

[25] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[26] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[27] Revised per PHY3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by PO.

The CMTS downstream OFDM symbol and subcarrier frequency and timing relationship is defined in Section 7.3.3.

Tolerances for the downstream subcarrier clock frequency are given in Sections 7.5.3, 7.5.3.1 to 7.5.3.3, and 7.5.9.1 (Table 7–36). Functional requirements involving the downstream subcarrier clock frequency and downstream signal generation are contained in Section 7.3.3, which couple the subcarrier clock frequency tolerance performance to the phase noise requirements of Section 7.5.9.1 (Table 7–36) and the downstream OFDM symbol clock requirements of Section 7.5.3. Each cycle of the downstream subcarrier clock is 4096 or 8192 cycles (50 kHz and 25 kHz subcarrier spacing, respectively) of the downstream OFDM symbol clock (which is nominally 204.8 MHz), since the subcarrier clock period is defined as the FFT duration for each OFDM symbol. Functional requirements on locking the downstream waveform to the 10.24 MHz Master Clock (Sections 7.5.3.1 and 7.5.4.3.2) are then equivalently functional requirements locking the downstream subcarrier clock to the Master Clock. Downstream OFDM symbol clock jitter requirements (which are in the time domain) of Section 7.5.3.3 are equivalently requirements on the downstream subcarrier clock (and its harmonics). The requirements on the OFDM symbol clock are effectively measured on observables in the downstream waveform, which include the downstream subcarrier clock frequency (manifested in the subcarrier spacing) and downstream subcarrier frequencies.

7.5.3.1 Downstream Sampling Rate

The CMTS MUST lock the 204.8 MHz Downstream OFDM Clock to the 10.24 MHz CMTS Master Clock (see Table 7–1).

7.5.3.2 OFDM RF Transmission Synchronization

The CMTS MUST lock the Downstream OFDM RF transmissions to the 10.24 MHz CMTS Master Clock (see Table 7–1).

7.5.3.3 Downstream OFDM Symbol Clock Jitter

The CMTS MUST adhere to the following clock jitter requirements for the downstream OFDM symbol clock over the specified frequency ranges:

- $< [-21 + 20*\log(f_{DS}/204.8)]$ dBc (i.e., < 0.07 ns RMS) 10 Hz to 100 Hz
- $< [-21 + 20*\log(f_{DS}/204.8)]$ dBc (i.e., < 0.07 ns RMS) 100 Hz to 1 kHz
- $< [-21 + 20*\log(f_{DS}/204.8)]$ dBc (i.e., < 0.07 ns RMS) 1 kHz to 10 kHz
- $< [-4 + 20*\log(f_{DS}/204.8)]$ dBc (i.e., < 0.5 ns RMS) 10 kHz to 100 kHz
- $< [2 + 20*\log(f_{DS}/204.8)]$ dBc (i.e., < 1 ns RMS) 100 kHz to $(f_{DS}/2)$,

  where f_{DS} is the frequency of the measured downstream clock in MHz.

The CMTS MUST use a value of f_{DS} that is an integral multiple or divisor of the downstream symbol clock. For example, an f_{DS} = 409.6 MHz clock may be measured if there is no explicit 204.8 MHz clock available.

In addition to meeting the clock jitter requirements given above, the CMTS is required to meet the phase noise specifications defined in Table 7–36 of Section 7.5.9.1. In the event of a conflict between the clock jitter and the phase noise requirement, the CMTS MUST meet the more stringent requirement.

7.5.3.4 Downstream Timing Acquisition Accuracy

The downstream clock timing is defined with respect to downstream PLC frame.

The CM MUST be able to adjust its clock to synchronize its own clock timing with PLC frame for proper operation.

The CM MUST be able to acquire downstream clock timing from downstream traffic (pilots, preambles, or mixed pilots, preambles, and data).

The CM MUST have a timing acquisition accuracy better than 1 sample (4.8828125 ns).

7.5.3.5 Downstream Carrier Frequency Acquisition

The CM MUST be able to acquire the carrier frequency from downstream (pilots, preambles, or mixed pilots, preambles and data).

7.5.3.6 Downstream Acquisition Time

The CM MUST achieve downstream signal acquisition (frequency and time lock) in less than 60s for a device with no previous network frequency plan knowledge.

Nonetheless, it is expected that the CM would be able to achieve downstream acquisition in less than 30s.

7.5.4 Downstream Forward Error Correction

This section describes the downstream forward error correction scheme used for DOCSIS 3.1. It is based on [DVB-C2] section 6.1, FEC Encoding; it is used here with the following modifications:

- A codeword will be the size of the short FEC Frame (16,200 bits); the "normal" FEC Frame (64,800 bits) is not used.
- Only the code rate 8/9 is used.
- Support for non-square constellations (128-QAM, 512-QAM, and 2048-QAM) is introduced.
- Support for mixed modulation codewords is introduced.
- Support for codeword shortening is introduced.
- Bit Interleaving for non-square constellations (128-QAM, 512-QAM, and 2048-QAM), mixed modulation mode constellations and for shortened codewords is introduced.
- Demultiplexing for non-square constellations (128-QAM, 512-QAM, and 2048-QAM), mixed modulation mode constellations, and for shortened codewords is introduced.
- Support for QPSK modulation is not required.

These changes are described in the following sections.

7.5.4.1 Definitions

7.5.4.1.1 Mixed-Modulation Codewords

Before downstream FEC can be defined, it is important to understand what a mixed-modulation codeword is, as these codewords are handled differently. A mixed-modulation codeword belongs to a profile that does not use the same modulation constellation for all subcarriers of the OFDM symbol. Note that subcarrier zero bit loading is not taken into account when determining if a codeword is a mixed-modulation codeword. In other words, if a profile has the same modulation constellation (i.e., same bit loading profile) for all non-zero bit-loaded subcarriers of the OFDM symbol, then the codewords of that profile are not considered to be mixed modulation.

As an example consider a profile in which even numbered subcarriers, excluding zero bit-loaded subcarriers (i.e., non-zero bit-loaded subcarriers 0, 2, 4, 6, etc.), are modulated with modulation A, and odd numbered subcarriers (i.e., non-zero bit-loaded subcarriers 1, 3, 5, 7, etc.) are modulated with modulation B. This provides a bits/s/Hz value that is the mean of the bits/s/Hz values of modulations A and B. Any codeword that belongs to that profile is a mixed-modulation codeword.

In this example, if these subcarriers are modulated as shown in the following table, the modulation combinations provide approximately 1.5 dB SNR granularity of additional spectral efficiency:

Table 7–17 - Mixed Modulation with 1.5 dB SNR Granularity

Modulation A	Modulation B
128-QAM	256-QAM

Modulation A	Modulation B
256-QAM	512-QAM
512-QAM	1024-QAM
1024-QAM	2048-QAM
2048-QAM	4096-QAM

Another example of the use of mixed-modulation codewords can be applied to the case of an OFDM channel at the high frequency end with a significant tilt in SNR. In this case, a modulation profile for this part of the spectrum could use four different QAM constellations covering the OFDM symbol: 1024-QAM, 512-QAM, 256-QAM and 64-QAM. All of the codewords to which this profile is applied would be of the mixed-modulation type.

It is important to note that a codeword is treated as being a mixed-modulation type even if all of the subcarriers have the same modulation order; being of the mixed-modulation type is determined by the profile. For example, consider a codeword of the above profile in which all the subcarriers happen to be 256-QAM. Despite the fact that all subcarriers of this codeword have the same modulation, this codeword is treated as the mixed-modulation type since it belongs to a mixed-modulation profile. It is necessary to do this because the FEC encoder has no knowledge as to which subcarriers the codeword is going to be mapped while the encoding is being performed. Therefore, FEC encoder operations are determined by the profile applied to the codeword only.

As a final example, consider a profile that consists of 75% 1024-QAM subcarriers and 25% zero-bit-loaded subcarriers. In this case the codewords of that profile are not of the mixed-modulation type, since zero-bit-loaded subcarriers are ignored when determining mixed-modulation type.

7.5.4.1.2 Codeword versus FECFrame

[DVB-C2] uses the term FECFrame to refer to the bits of one LDPC encoding operation. In this specification, the term codeword is used for the same concept.

7.5.4.2 FEC Encoding

[DVB-C2] section 6.1, FEC Encoding, describes the FEC encoding requirements for the CMTS transmitter. The CMTS MUST meet the portion of [DVB-C2] section 6.1, FEC Encoding, as described below:

The CMTS MUST support the 8/9 code rate for the short codeword (N_{ldpc} = 16,200 bits) only. Support for other code rates and codeword sizes is not required.

The CMTS MUST support the FEC coding parameters specified in Table 7–18. This table is based on Table 3(b), from [DVB-C2].

Table 7–18 - Coding Parameters (for Short Codewords N_{ldpc} = 16,200 and Code Rate 8/9)

LDPC Code Rate	BCH Uncoded Block Size K_{bch}	BCH Coded Block N_{bch}	LDPC Uncoded Block Size K_{ldpc}	LDPC Coded Block Size N_{ldpc}
8/9	14,232	14,400	14,400	16,200

7.5.4.2.1 Outer Encoding (BCH)

[DVB-C2] section 6.1.1, Outer Encoding (BCH), details the outer encoding requirements for normal and short codewords (FECFrames). For the CMTS, only short codewords are required. The CMTS MUST meet the outer encoding requirements for short FECFrames specified in [DVB-C2] section 6.1.1, Outer Encoding (BCH).

7.5.4.2.2 Inner Coding (LDPC)

[DVB-C2] sections 6.1.2, Inner Encoding, and 6.1.2.2, Inner Coding for Short FECFrame, detail the inner coding requirements for short codewords. For DOCSIS 3.1 codewords, the CMTS MUST meet the inner coding requirements for short codewords and code rate 8/9 specified in [DVB-C2] sections 6.1.2, Inner Encoding, and 6.1.2.2, Inner Coding for Short FECFrame.

7.5.4.2.3 Support for Codeword Shortening

Codeword shortening is used for two purposes:

- Create shortened codewords when there is insufficient data to fill complete codewords.
- Achieve strong burst noise protection

The full FEC block size for the FEC code rate of 8/9 is provided in Table 7–18.

Codeword shortening is accomplished by shortening the uncoded block size in the *BCH Uncoded Block Size* column of Table 7–18. Note that the number of parity bits remains the same; there is no shortening of the parity bits either in the BCH or in the LDPC.

When a shortened codeword is needed, the CMTS MUST complete the codeword shortening process described here.

There are six overall steps to the codeword shortening process:

1. Prepending zero bits (BCH) to the data
2. BCH encoding
3. Removing the prepended zero bits
4. Appending zero bits (LDPC) to the data
5. LDPC Encoding
6. Removing the appended zero bits

This is done in both the BCH encoder and the LDPC encoder, as shown in Figure 7-43.

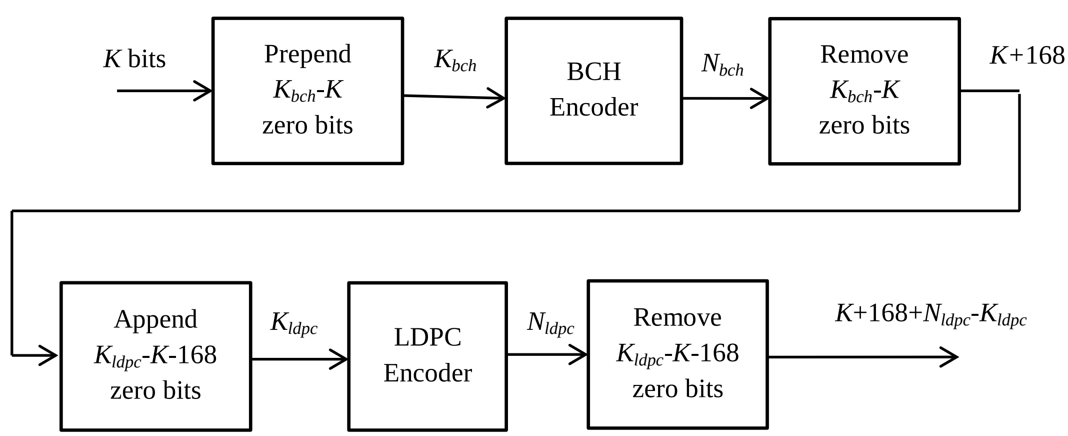


Figure 7-43 - Codeword Shortening Process

The zero bit padding process is shown in more detail in Figure 7-44.

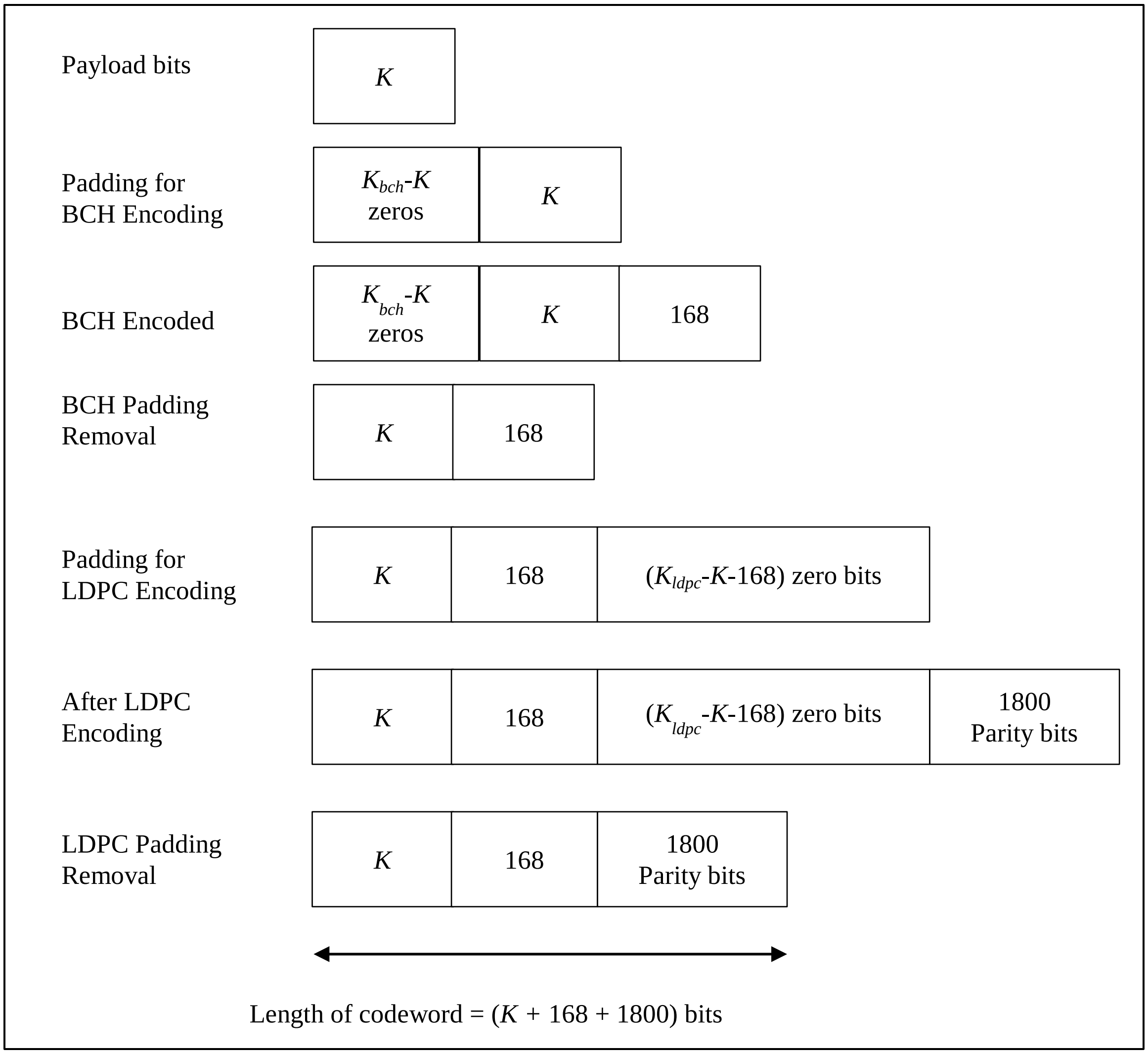


Figure 7-44 - Padding Process

7.5.4.2.3.1 Codeword Shortening for Strong Burst Noise Protection

Although the primary purpose of codeword shortening is to support scenarios in which there is insufficient data to fill complete codewords, codeword shortening can also be used to provide signal protection in strong burst noise conditions. A lower code rate such as 7/9 has better burst noise capabilities than the 8/9 code rate. Through codeword shortening, it is possible to achieve the equivalent of a 7/9 code rate.

For example, the 16200-bit block can be shortened by 8096 bits. The number of parity bits remains unchanged at 1800. Hence, this shortened codeword will have a block size of 8104 with 6304 information bits and 1800 parity bits; this produces an effective code rate of approximately 7/9 (6304/8104 = 0.777887463). When the receiver receives this shortened codeword, it will pad the shortened 8096 bits with zeros to create a 16200-bit rate 8/9 codeword and decode it using the rate 8/9 decoder.

7.5.4.3 Bit Interleaving

7.5.4.3.1 Bit Interleaving for Non-Shortened Codewords

For non-shortened codewords that are not of the mixed-modulation type the CMTS MUST apply parity interleaving, followed by column-twist interleaving as detailed in [DVB-C2] section 6.1.3, Bit Interleaver, with the number of rows, columns and column twisting parameters specified in this section.

The number of rows and columns of the Bit Interleaver are specified by Table 7–19.

Table 7–19 - Bit Interleaver Structure

Modulation	Rows N_r	Columns N_c
16-QAM	2025	8
64-QAM	1350	12
128-QAM	2315	7
256-QAM	2025	8
512-QAM	1800	9
1024-QAM	810	20
2048-QAM	1473	11
4096-QAM	675	24
8192-QAM	1247	13
16384-QAM	1158	14

Since 16,200 is not divisible by 7, 11, 13 and 14, for 128-QAM, 2048-QAM, 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM constellations, the CMTS MUST append zeros after parity interleaving and prior to column-twist interleaving at the end of the block: 5 zero bits for 128-QAM, 3 zero bits for 2048-QAM, 11 zero bits for 8192-QAM and 12 zero bits are added after the 16,200th bit. Thus, an extended block of 16,205 bits, 16,203 bits, 16,211 bits and 16,212 bits will be interleaved by the column-twist interleaver for 128-QAM, 2048-QAM, 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM, respectively.

For non-shortened codewords that are not of the mixed-modulation type, the CMTS MUST serially write the data bits into the column-twist interleaver column-wise, and serially read out row-wise, where the write start position of each column is twisted by t_c, as specified in Table 7–20 and Table 7–21.

Table 7–20 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0 - 11)

Codeword Modulation Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		Col. 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
16-QAM	8	0	0	0	1	7	20	20	21	-	-	-	-
64-QAM	12	0	0	0	2	2	2	3	3	3	6	7	7
128-QAM	7	0	1	2	2	2	3	3	-	-	-	-	-
256-QAM	8	0	0	0	1	7	20	20	21	-	-	-	-
512-QAM	9	0	1	2	3	5	6	7	9	11	-	-	-
1024-QAM	20	0	0	0	2	2	2	2	2	5	5	5	5
2048-QAM	11	0	0	0	0	0	3	3	4	4	4	4	-
4096-QAM	24	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	2	2
8192-QAM	13	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	3	5	8	8	9
16384-QAM	14	0	0	2	2	2	2	2	4	4	6	6	8

Table 7–21 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12-23)

Codeword Modulation Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
16-QAM	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
64-QAM	12	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
128-QAM	7	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
256-QAM	8	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
512-QAM	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
1024-QAM	20	5	7	7	7	7	8	8	10	-	-	-	-
2048-QAM	11	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
4096-QAM	24	2	3	7	9	9	9	10	10	10	10	10	11
8192-QAM	13	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-
16384-QAM	14	9	9	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	-

7.5.4.3.2 Bit Interleaving for Non-Shortened Mixed Modulation Codewords

To support non-shortened mixed-modulation codewords, the bit interleaver specified in [DVB-C2] has been modified. For non-shortened mixed-modulation codewords, the CMTS MUST apply parity interleaving followed by column-twist interleaving as detailed in [DVB-C2] section 6.1.3, Bit Interleaver, and in the following discussion.

Because specific columns of the bit de-interleaver cannot be mapped to specific bits of the QAM constellation, column twisting interleaving is used over all 24 columns.

For non-shortened mixed-modulation codewords, the CMTS MUST serially write the data bits into the column-twist interleaver column-wise, and serially read out row-wise, where the write start position of each column is twisted by t_c, as specified in Table 7–22 and Table 7–23.

Table 7–22 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0-11)

Codeword Modulation Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		Col. 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Mixed-Modulation	24	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	2	2

Table 7–23 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12-23)

Codeword Modulation Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		Col. 12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
Mixed-Modulation	24	2	3	7	9	9	9	10	10	10	10	10	11

7.5.4.3.3 Bit Interleaving for Shortened Codewords[28]

Shortened codewords fall into one of the following three types:

1. Square modulation
2. Non-square modulation
3. Mixed modulation

[28] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 by JB on 12/18/14.

The CMTS MUST interleave all types of shortened codewords as described in this section.

The CMTS MUST interleave the 1800 parity bits as described in [DVB-C2] section 6.1.3, Bit Interleaver.

Because the shortened codeword can be quite small, it is possible that the entire codeword could map to one column of the interleaver and hence not get interleaved. To avoid this, the CMTS MUST use the maximum number of columns in the bit interleaver (24) on shortened codewords. The number of rows that would be occupied by the shortened codeword is given by the following equation:

$$Row\_Count = ceil\left(\frac{K + 1968}{24}\right)$$

If (K+1968) is not divisible by 24, then the last column will only be partially filled by the encoded shortened codeword, as illustrated in Figure 7-45. For shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST fill the unfilled part of the last column with bits that are labeled as "unused". For shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST discard these "unused" bits in the memory read operation described below.

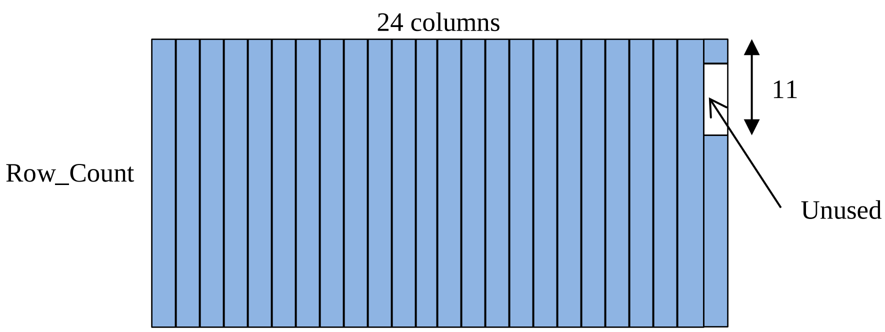


Figure 7-45 - Bit De-interleaver Block for a Shortened Codeword

For shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST serially write the data bits into the column-twist interleaver column-wise, and serially read out row-wise, where the write start position of each column is twisted by t_c, as specified in Table 7–24 and Table 7–25. For shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST fill any unfilled bits of the last column with bits marked "unused". The CMTS MUST write the first bit of the last column beginning from the 12th location since $t_c=11$ for column 24. If there are any bits left over after writing in the last location of the column, these bits are to be written beginning from the top of the column. For shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST discard any bits labeled as "unused" during the process of reading along the rows of the two-dimensional array.

Table 7–24 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 0 - 11)

Codeword Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		Col. 0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
Shortened	24	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	1	1	2	2

Table 7–25 - Column Twisting Parameter t_c (columns 12 - 23)

Codeword Type	Columns N_c	Twisting Parameter t_c											
		Col. 12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23
Shortened	24	2	3	7	9	9	9	10	10	10	10	10	11

7.5.4.4 Downstream Receiver FEC Processing

Downstream data is encoded for FEC by the CMTS. The CM MUST decode the FEC-applied codeword to correct for any bit errors introduced by noise and interference in the transmission medium. This process is discussed in this section.

The FEC decoder at the CM operates on the QAM subcarriers of OFDM symbols to generate an error corrected bitstream. In addition, the decoder generates error statistics such as codeword error ratios.

The FEC decoding process is shown in Figure 7-46.

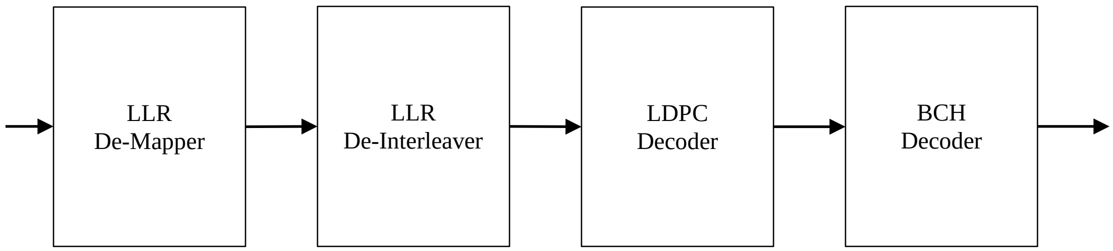


Figure 7-46 - FEC Decoding Process

The receiver FEC decoder consists of the following components:

- The log-likelihood ratio (LLR) de-mapper processes one OFDM subcarrier at a time from the OFDM symbol and generates the LLRs for all bits of the QAM constellation, as defined by the bit-loading profile for the specific subcarrier. For example, if the subcarrier is 1024-QAM, the LLR de-mapper will generate 10 LLRs for the subcarrier and the values of the LLRs are implementation specific. The LLR de-interleaver operates on the LLRs. This is the inverse of the bit-interleaver that has been applied by the CMTS transmitter, described in Section 7.5.2.5. Note that the receiver operates on LLRs and not on bits.
- The LDPC decoder decodes the 16200-bit LDPC codeword (or a shortened codeword). LDPC decoding is implemented using an iterative algorithm that uses message passing between the bit nodes and the check nodes of the Tanner graph of the LDPC code. If the CMTS has transmitted a shortened codeword (e.g., when the payload is not large enough to fill a complete codeword), the receiver augments the shortened codeword to full size with LLRs corresponding to zero-valued bits. The receiver then decodes the codeword using the 16200-bit LDPC decoder, discarding the augmented bits.
- The BCH decoder generates an error corrected bitstream. The BCH decoder is also required to operate on shortened codewords.
- An error monitor determines codeword error ratios for reporting and troubleshooting.

7.5.5 Mapping Bits to QAM Constellations

This section describes the method used in DOCSIS 3.1 to map bits onto QAM constellations. It is based on [DVB-C2] section 6.2, Mapping Bits onto Constellations, and is used here with the following modifications:

- Parameters for mapping bits onto non-square constellations have been added
- Parameters for mapping bits of shortened codewords onto all constellation types have been added
- Parameters for mapping bits of mixed-modulation codewords onto all constellation types have been added

As described in [DVB-C2] section 6.2, Mapping Bits onto Constellations, the CMTS MUST map each codeword to a sequence of QAM constellation values by:

- Demultiplexing the input bits into parallel cell words
- Mapping these cell words into constellation values

The mapping of bits to QAM constellation is carried out using the three sequential operations depicted in Figure 7-47.

Figure 7-47 - Bits to QAM Constellation Mapping

The CMTS MUST use the number of bits per cell η_{MOD}, as defined in Table 7–26, when bit mapping codewords to constellations.

For non-shortened codewords that are not of the mixed-modulation type, the CMTS MUST use the Number of Output Data Cells defined in Table 7–26 when bit mapping codewords to constellations.

Table 7–26 - Parameters for Bit-Mapping onto Constellations

Modulation Mode	η_{MOD}	Number of Output Data Cells
16384-QAM	14	1158
8192-QAM	13	1247
4096-QAM	12	1350
2048-QAM	11	1473
1024-QAM	10	1620
512-QAM	9	1800
256-QAM	8	2025
128-QAM	7	2315
64-QAM	6	2700
16-QAM	4	4050

For the cases of mixed-modulation codewords and shortened codewords, the number of output symbols per LDPC block remains an integer. For both mixed-modulation codewords and shortened codewords, the CMTS MUST pad the end of the LDPC block with zero bits to produce an integer number of bits in the final QAM symbol. The CM MUST discard zero pad bits in the received symbol. This is described in further detail in the following sections.

7.5.5.1 Modulation Formats

The CMTS modulator MUST support 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, and 4096-QAM.

The CMTS modulator MAY support 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM.

The CM demodulator MUST support 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, and 4096-QAM.

The CM demodulator MAY support 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM.

7.5.5.2 Bit-to-Cell Word Demultiplexer

7.5.5.2.1 Non-shortened Codewords

For non-shortened codewords that are not of the mixed-modulation type, the CMTS MUST demultiplex the bitstream v_i from the bit interleaver into $N_{substreams}$ sub-streams, using the value of $N_{substreams}$ as defined in Table 7–27 and the description following that table.

Table 7–27 - Number of Sub-Streams in Demultiplexer

Modulation Mode	Number of Sub-Streams, $N_{substreams}$
16-QAM	8
64-QAM	12
128-QAM	7
256-QAM	8
512-QAM	9
1024-QAM	20
2048-QAM	11
4096-QAM	24
8192-QAM	13
16384-QAM	14

Bit-to-cell word demultiplexing is illustrated in Figure 7-48.

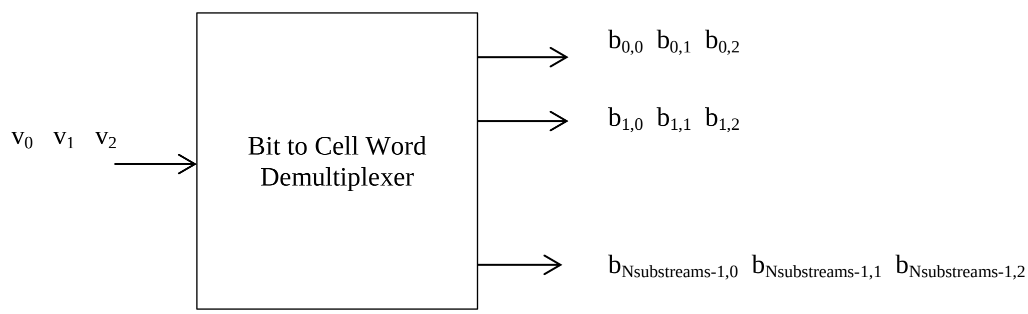


Figure 7-48 - Bit-to-Cell Word Demultiplexer

For 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 256-QAM, 1024-QAM and 4096-QAM bit-to-cell word demultiplexing has to be carried out as described in [DVB-C2] section 6.2.1, Bit to Cell Word Demultiplexer.

Bit-to-cell word demultiplexing is defined as a mapping of the bit-interleaved input bits, v_{di}, onto the output bits $b_{e,do}$, where:

- v_{di} is the input to the demultiplexer;
- di is the input bit number;
- e is the demultiplexer sub-stream index ($0 \le e < N_{substreams}$), which depends on (di modulo $N_{substreams}$), as defined in Table 7–28 through Table 7–32;
- $do = floor\left(\frac{di}{N_{substreams}}\right)$ is the output cell number from the demultiplexer;
- $b_{e,do}$ is the output from the demultiplexer.

Table 7–28 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 128-QAM

Input bit number, di mod $N_{substreams}$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Output bit number, e	6	5	4	1	2	3	0

Table 7–29 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 512-QAM

Input bit number, di mod $N_{substreams}$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
Output bit number, e	8	7	6	1	2	3	4	5	0

Table 7–30 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 2048-QAM

Input bit number, di mod $N_{substreams}$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Output bit number, e	10	9	8	7	2	3	4	5	6	1	0

Table 7–31 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 8192-QAM

Input bit number, di mod $N_{substreams}$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Output bit number, e	12	11	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	1	0

Table 7–32 - Parameters for Demultiplexing of Bits to Sub-Streams for 8/9 Code Rate with 16384-QAM

Input bit number, di mod $N_{substreams}$	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13
Output bit number, e	13	12	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	1	0

For example, in the case of 128-QAM there will be 7 substreams at the output of the bit-to-cell word demultiplexer. The first 7 bits at the input to the demultiplexer are sent to sub-streams 6, 5, 4, 1, 2, 3 and 0, in that order. The next 7 input bits are also mapped in that order. The cell words are defined from the demultiplexer output as:

$$\left[y_{0,do}..y_{\eta_{mod}-1,do}\right] = \left[b_{0,do}..b_{N_{substreams}-1,do}\right]$$

Note that the non-shortened LDPC codeword size is not divisible by 7. However, with reference to the section on bit interleaving, it is seen that for 128-QAM the size of the non-shortened codeword has been extended to become a multiple of 7 through zero-padding. The same comments are applicable to non-shortened 2048-QAM, 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM codewords.

7.5.5.2.2 Shortened Codewords and Mixed-Modulation Codewords[29]

It is important to emphasize that shortened codewords can have square modulation, non-square modulation or may be of the mixed-modulation type. The CMTS MUST bypass the bit-to-cell demultiplexer and apply the bit-to-cell

[29] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

mapping described in this section for all types of shortened codewords, as well as for non-shortened mixed modulation codewords.

When the bit-to-cell word demultiplexer is bypassed, the bit-to-cell mapping becomes:

Cell 0: $[y_{0,0} .. y_{\eta_{mod0}-1,0}] = [v_0 \ \ldots \ v_{\eta_{mod0}-1}]$

Cell 1: $[y_{0,1} .. y_{\eta_{mod1}-1,1}] = [v_{\eta_{mod0}} \ \ldots \ v_{\eta_{mod0}+\eta_{mod1}-1}]$

etc.

The modulation assigned to cells 0 and 1 in the previous equations correspond to the η_{mod} values given by Table 7–26. The first cell has the modulation corresponding to η_{mod0} and the second cell has the modulation corresponding to η_{mod1}. This modulation is defined by the bit loading pattern assigned to the profile to which this codeword belongs.

This mapping is simply a case of partitioning the interleaved bitstream to blocks of bits of size η_{mod0}, η_{mod1}, … , $\eta_{modLAST}$, where the sequence $\{\eta_{mod0}, \eta_{mod1}, \ldots, \eta_{modLAST}\}$ is given by the bit loading pattern of the profile to which this codeword belongs.

Let $\eta_{modLAST}$ correspond to the bit loading of the last cell of the sequence. It is possible that the shortened and/or mixed-modulation codeword at the output of the bit interleaver might not have sufficient bits to complete this cell. In this case zero-padding of the input bitstream has to be used for cell completion.

7.5.5.3 Randomization[30]

The CMTS MUST randomize cell words of data subcarriers, NCP subcarriers and PLC subcarriers, just before mapping these onto QAM constellations, as described in this section.

The CMTS MUST also introduce BPSK-modulated subcarriers for the following subcarriers during the randomization process, as described in this section.

a) Zero-bit-loaded subcarriers of the codewords of individual profiles

b) Zero-bit-loaded subcarriers in the NCP segment

c) Zero-bit-loaded subcarriers that are introduced to complete the symbol

NCP and zero bit-loading are described in Section 7.5.5.5.

The wordlength (η_{MOD}) of a cell word ranges from 4 bits for 16-QAM to 14 bits for 16384-QAM.

For 16-QAM to 4096-QAM the CMTS MUST randomize each cell word through a bit-wise exclusive-OR operation with the n_{MOD} least significant bits (LSBs) of the 12-bit register D0 of the linear feedback shift register (LFSR) shown in Figure 7-49.

$$\left(z_0 \,..\, z_{\eta_{MOD}-1}\right) = \left(y_0 .. y_{\eta_{MOD}-1}\right) \, bitwiseXOR \ \left(D_0[0] .. D_0[\eta_{MOD}-1]\right)$$

For 8192-QAM the CMTS MUST randomize the 13 bits of the cell word through a bit-wise exclusive-OR operation with the 12 bits of register D0 and the LSB of register D1 of Figure 7-49, as given below:

$$(z_0 \,..\, z_{12}) = (y_0 .. y_{12}) \, bitwiseXOR \ \left(D_0[0] .. D_0[\eta_{MOD}-1] \ D_1[0]\right)$$

For 16384-QAM the CMTS MUST randomize the 14 bits of the cell word through a bit-wise exclusive-OR operation with the 12 bits of register D0 and the 2 LSBs of register D1 of Figure 7-49, as given below:

$$(z_0 \,..\, z_{13}) = (y_0 .. y_{13}) \, bitwiseXOR \ \left(D_0[0] .. D_0[\eta_{MOD}-1] \ D_1[0] \ D_1[1]\right)$$

NCP subcarrier cell words are 2-bit for QPSK, 4-bit for 16-QAM or 6-bit for 64-QAM. The CMTS MUST randomize these through bit-wise exclusive-OR operation with the 2, 4 or 6 LSBs of the 12-bit register D0.

The CMTS MUST set the zero-bit-loaded subcarriers in the data segment and NCP segment to the BPSK modulation given by LSB of register D0.

---

[30] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.

$$z_0 = D_0[0]$$

The CMTS MUST clock the LFSR once, after each of the previous operations.

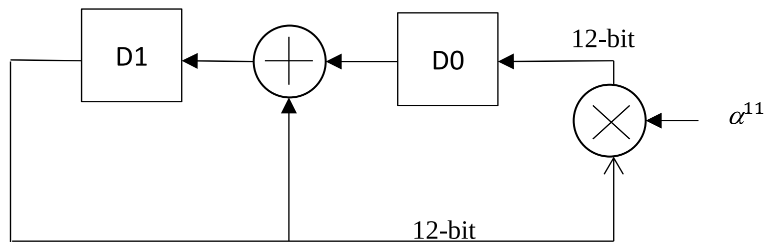


Figure 7-49 - Linear Feedback Shift Register for Randomization Sequence

The LFSR is defined by the following polynomial in $GF[2^{12}]$.

$$x^2 + x + \alpha^{11}$$

The $GF[2^{12}]$ is defined through polynomial algebra modulo the polynomial:

$$\alpha^{12} + \alpha^6 + \alpha^4 + \alpha + 1$$

Each 12-bit $GF[2^{12}]$ element is a polynomial of α with a maximum degree of 11. The coefficient of α^0 is referred to as the LSB and the coefficient of α^{11} is referred to as the MSB.

This LFSR is initialized to the hexadecimal numbers given below:

D0 = "555"

D1 = "AAA"

This initialization is carried out at the beginning of an OFDM symbol, synchronized to the preamble of the PLC. Since the PLC subcarriers are inserted after time and frequency interleaving and data subcarriers are randomized before time and frequency interleaving, the following explanation is provided about how randomization is synchronized to the PLC.

Note that the first subcarrier of an OFDM symbol passes through the time interleaver arm with zero delay. Therefore the LFSR is initialized when this subcarrier is part of the OFDM symbol following the last OFDM symbol carrying the PLC preamble. Hence LFSR is initialized once for every 128 OFDM symbols.

The first subcarrier referred to previously can be a data subcarrier or a scattered pilot placeholder because both of these are time interleaved. If it is a data subcarrier then the cell word of that data subcarrier is randomized with the initialized values of D0 and D1, namely hexadecimal "555" and "AAA". After that the LFSR is clocked once. If the first subcarrier mentioned previously is a scattered pilot placeholder the LFSR is initialized but it is not clocked. This is because the LFSR is clocked only after each data or NCP subcarrier (including zero-bit-loaded subcarriers).

To illustrate this by example, let the first five subcarriers of the symbol in which the randomizer is initialized be $\{A_0, SP, A_1, Z, A_2\}$, where A_i denotes a data subcarrier, *SP* denotes scattered-pilot and *Z* denotes zero-bit-loaded subcarrier. The 24-bit randomizer concatenations *"D1 & D0"* corresponding to these five subcarrier locations are *{"AAA555", "FFFADF", "FFFADF", "520799", "2B9828"}*. The randomizer contents are not used for scattered pilot *SP* and hence randomizer linear feedback shift register is not clocked for this subcarrier. The randomizer values used for the three data subcarriers A_0, A_1 and A_2 are *"AAA555"*, *"FFFADF"*, and *"2B9828"*, respectively. The randomizer value used for the zero-bit-loaded subcarrier is *"520799"*. This zero-bit-loaded subcarrier corresponds to the BPSK constellation point $(-1 + j\,0)$ since $D0[0] = 1$.

7.5.5.4 Cell Word Mapping into I/Q Constellations

The CMTS MUST modulate each randomized cell word ($z_0..z_{nMOD-1}$), from the randomizer described in Section 7.5.5.3 using a BPSK, QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, 4096-QAM, 8192-QAM or 16384-QAM constellation as described in Annex A.

7.5.5.5 Transmitter Bit Loading for Symbol Mapping

All subcarriers of an OFDM symbol may not have the same constellation; the constellation for each subcarrier is given in a table that details the bit loading pattern. This bit-loading pattern may change from profile to profile. This section describes how the bits to symbol mapping is performed, with reference to a bit-loading pattern, in the presence of interleaving, continuous pilots, scattered pilots and excluded subcarriers.

Excluded subcarriers are subcarriers that are forced to zero-valued modulation at the transmitter. Subcarriers are excluded to prevent interference to other transmissions that occupy the same spectrum as the DOCSIS 3.1 OFDM transmission, for example, to accommodate legacy channels. Subcarriers are also excluded outside of the active OFDM bandwidth.

Excluded subcarriers are common to all profiles. The non-excluded subcarriers are referred to as active subcarriers. Active subcarriers are never zero-valued. The notation $S^{(E)}$ is used here to define the set of excluded subcarriers. This set will never be empty because there are always excluded subcarriers at the edges of the OFDM channel.

Continuous pilots are pilots that occur at the same frequency location in every OFDM symbol. The notation $S^{(C)}$ is used here to define the set of continuous pilots.

The PLC resides in a contiguous set of subcarriers in the OFDM channel. The CMTS adds the PLC to the OFDM channel after time and frequency interleaving; the CM extracts the PLC subcarriers before frequency and time de-interleaving. These subcarriers occupy the same spectral locations in every symbol. The notation $S^{(P)}$ is used here to define the set of PLC subcarriers.

For bit loading, continuous pilots and the PLC are treated in the same manner as excluded subcarriers; hence, the set of subcarriers that includes the PLC, continuous pilots and excluded subcarriers is defined as:

$$S^{(PCE)} = S^{(P)} \cup S^{(C)} \cup S^{(E)}$$

The subcarriers in the set $S^{(PCE)}$ do not carry data (PLC carry signaling information). The other subcarriers that do not carry data are the scattered pilots. However, scattered pilots are not included in the set $S^{(PCE)}$ because they do not occupy the same spectral locations in every OFDM symbol.

The modulation order of the data subcarriers is defined using bit-loading profiles. These profiles include the option for zero bit-loading. Such subcarriers are referred to as zero-bit-loaded subcarriers and are BPSK modulated using the randomizer LSB, as described in Section 7.5.5.3.

All active subcarriers with the exception of pilots are transmitted with the same average power. Pilots are transmitted boosted by a factor of 2 in amplitude (approximately 6 dB).

Scattered pilots do not occur at the same frequency in every symbol; in some cases scattered pilots will overlap with continuous pilots. If a scattered pilot overlaps with a continuous pilot, then that pilot is no longer considered to be a scattered pilot. It is treated as a continuous pilot.

Because the locations of scattered pilots change from one OFDM symbol to another, the number of overlapping continuous and scattered pilots changes from symbol to symbol. Since overlapping pilots are treated as continuous pilots, the number of scattered pilots changes from symbol to symbol.

The following notation is used here:

N: The total number of subcarriers in the OFDM symbol, equaling either 4096 or 8192

N_C: The number of continuous pilots in an OFDM symbol

N_S: The number of scattered pilots in an OFDM symbol

N_E: The number of excluded subcarriers in an OFDM symbol

N_P: The number of PLC subcarriers in an OFDM symbol

N_D: The number of data subcarriers in an OFDM symbol

The values of N, N_C, N_E and N_P do not change from symbol to symbol for a given OFDM template; the values of N_S and N_D change from symbol to symbol.

The following equation holds for all symbols:

$$N = N_C + N_S + N_E + N_P + N_D$$

The value of N is 4096 for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing and 8192 for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing. From this equation it is clear that $(N_S + N_D)$ is a constant for a given OFDM template. Therefore, although the number of data subcarriers (N_D) and the number of scattered pilots (N_S) in an OFDM symbol changes from symbol to symbol, the sum of these two numbers is invariant over all symbols. Interleaving and de-interleaving are applied to the set of data subcarriers and scattered pilots of size $N_I = N_D + N_S$.

7.5.5.5.1 Bit Loading

The bit loading pattern defines the QAM constellations assigned to each of the 4096 or 8192 subcarriers of the OFDM transmission. This bit loading pattern can change from profile to profile. Continuous pilot locations, PLC locations and exclusion bands are defined separately, and override the values defined in the bit-loading profile. Let the bit loading pattern for profile i be defined as $A_i(k)$, where:

k is the subcarrier index that goes from 0 to (*N*-1)

N is either 4096 or 8192

$A_i(k) \in \{0, 4, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14\}$. A value of 0 indicates that the subcarrier k is zero-bit-loaded. Other values indicate that the modulation of subcarrier k is QAM with order $2^{A_i(k)}$.

Let the sequence $\{A_i(k),\ k = 0, 1, \ldots, (N-1),\ k \notin S^{PCE}\}$ be arranged as N_I consecutive values of another sequence:

$$B_i(k),\ k = 0, 1, \ldots, \quad (N_I - 1)$$

Given the locations of the excluded subcarriers, continuous pilots and the PLC in the OFDM template, it is possible to obtain the bit-loading pattern $B_i(k)$ that is applicable only to spectral locations excluding excluded subcarriers, continuous pilots, and PLC subcarriers. However, note that $B_i(k)$ does contain the spectral locations occupied by scattered pilots; these locations change from symbol to symbol.

It is more convenient to define bit loading profiles in the domain in which subcarriers are transmitted. It is in this domain that signal-to-noise-ratios of subcarriers are calculated. Furthermore, defining the bit-loading patterns in the transmission domain allows significant data compression to be achieved, because a relatively large number of contiguous spectral locations can share the same QAM constellation.

Although the bit loading pattern is defined in the domain in which subcarriers are transmitted, the bit loading is not applied in that domain. Bit loading is applied prior to interleaving, as shown in Figure 7-50. Hence there is a permutation mapping of subcarriers, defined by the interleaving function, between the domain in which bit loading is applied to subcarriers and the domain in which subcarriers are transmitted.

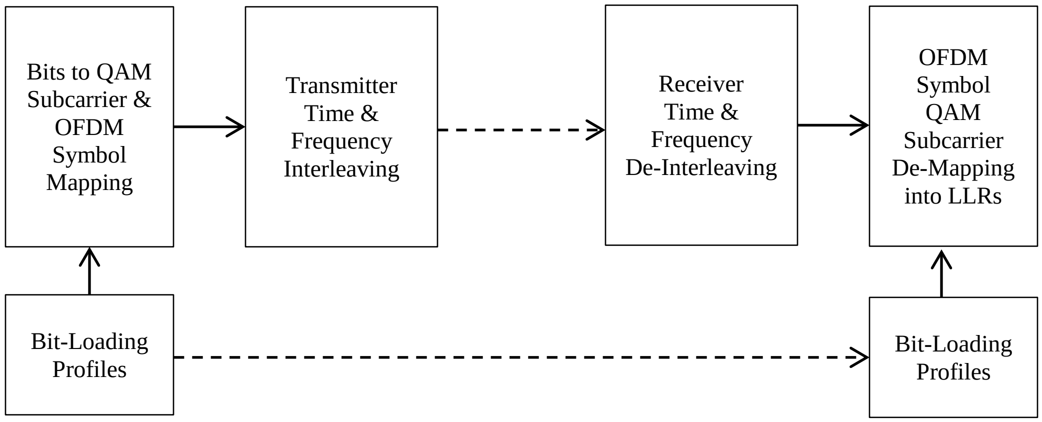


Figure 7-50 - Bit Loading, Symbol Mapping, and Interleaving

The excluded subcarriers, PLC subcarriers, and continuous pilots are excluded from the processes of interleaving and de-interleaving; scattered pilots and data subcarriers are subject to interleaving and de-interleaving. Hence, the total number of subcarriers that pass through the interleaver and de-interleaver is $N_I \ = (N_D + N_S)$ and this number does not change from symbol to symbol.

The interleaver introduces a 1-1 permutation mapping P on the N_I subcarriers. Although interleaving consists of a cascade of two components, namely time and frequency interleaving, it is only frequency interleaving that defines the mapping P. This is because time interleaving does not disturb the frequency locations of subcarriers.

The corresponding permutation mapping applied at the receiver de-interleaver is P^{-1}.

In order to perform bit-loading, it is necessary to work out the bit loading pattern at the node at which it is applied, i.e., at the input to the interleavers. This is given by:

$$C_i(k) = \ P^{-1}(B_i(k))$$

Since the time interleaver does not change the frequency locations of subcarriers, the sequence $C_i(k)$ is obtained by sending $\{B_i(k), k = 1, 2, \ldots \ , N_I - 1\}$ through the frequency de-interleaver.

Note that $C_i(k)$ gives the bit-loading pattern for N_I subcarriers. Yet, some of these subcarriers are scattered pilots that have to be avoided in the bit-loading process. Hence, a two-dimensional binary pattern $D(k, j)$ is used to identify subcarriers to be avoided during the process of bit-loading. Because the scattered pilot pattern has a periodicity of 128 in the time dimension, this binary pattern also has periodicity 128 in the column dimension *j*.

$D(k, j)$ is defined for $k = 0, 1, \ldots , (N_I - 1)$ and for $j = 0, 1, \ldots \ , 127$

The process to create the binary pattern $D(k, j)$ begins with the transmitted scattered pilot pattern defined in Section 7.5.6. There are two scattered pilot patterns, one for 4K FFTs and the other for 8K FFTs; both patterns are defined in reference to the preamble of the PLC and have a periodicity of 128 symbols.

The CMTS executes the following steps to obtain the pattern $D(k, j)$:

1. Define a two-dimensional binary array $P(k, j)$ in the subcarrier transmitted domain that contains a one for each scattered pilot location and zero otherwise:

   $P(k, j)$, for $k = 0, 1, \ldots \ , N - 1$ and for $j = 0, 1, \ldots \ , 127$

   Here, the value of *N* is either 4096 or 8192. The first column of this binary sequence corresponds to the first OFDM symbol following the preamble of the PLC.

2. Exclude the rows corresponding to excluded subcarriers, continuous pilots, and PLC from the two-dimensional array $P(k, j)$ to give an array $Q(k, j)$. The number of rows of the resulting array is N_I and the number of columns is 128.

3. Pass this two-dimensional binary array $Q(k,j)$ through the frequency de-interleaver and then the time de-interleaver, with each column treated as an OFDM symbol. After the 128 columns of the pattern have been input into the interleaver, re-insert the first *M* columns, where *M* is the depth of the time interleaver. This is equivalent to periodically extending $Q(k,j)$ along the dimension j and passing (128+*M*) columns of this extended sequence through the frequency de-interleaver and the time de-interleaver.
4. Discard the first *M* symbols coming out of the time de-interleaver and collect the remaining 128 columns into an array to give the binary two-dimensional array $D(k,j)$ of size $(N_I \times 128)$.

For bit loading the CMTS accesses the appropriate column j of the binary pattern bit $D(k,j)$ together with the appropriate bit loading profile $C_i(k)$. If the value of the bit $D(k,j)$ is 1, the CMTS MUST skip this subcarrier k and move to the next subcarrier. This subcarrier is included as a placeholder for a scattered pilot that will be inserted in this subcarrier location after interleaving. After each symbol the column index j has to be incremented modulo 128.

The CMTS MUST use this binary two-dimensional array *D(k,j)* of size *(N_I x 128)* in order to do bit-loading of OFDM subcarriers, as described earlier in this section The corresponding operation in the CM is de-mapping the QAM subcarriers to get Log-Likelihood-Ratios (LLRs) corresponding to the transmitted bits. This operation, described below, is much simpler than the mapping operation in the transmitter.

The scattered pilots and data subcarriers of every received symbol are subjected to frequency and time de-interleaving. The scattered pilots have to be tagged so that these can be discarded at the output of the time and frequency de-interleavers. This gives N_I subcarriers for every OFDM symbol. The CM accesses theses N_I de-interleaved subcarriers together with the bit-loading pattern $C_i(k)$ to implement the de-mapping of the QAM subcarriers into LLRs. If the subcarrier k happens to be a scattered pilot, then this subcarrier, as well as the corresponding value $C_i(k)$, is skipped and the CM moves to the next subcarrier $(k+1)$.

7.5.5.5.2 NCP Insertion[31]

Next Codeword Pointers (NCPs) point to the beginning of codewords in a symbol, counting only data subcarriers of that symbol, including zero-bit loaded subcarriers and not including the locations reserved for the scattered pilots. The format of an NCP is described in Section 8.3.4, Next Codeword Pointer, which also describes the FEC applied to the NCP. Each FEC encoded NCP is 48 bits wide. NCPs may be modulated using QPSK, 16-QAM or 64-QAM and this modulation is signaled by PLC. In addition to the NCPs carrying next codeword pointers, there will also be a NCP carrying the CRC for all the NCPs of the symbol. The CRC is generated as described in Annex E. As the NCPs are constructed while the OFDM symbols are being constructed, the NCPs are inserted in the opposite direction to data and beginning from the opposite end. Data is inserted beginning from the low frequency towards the high frequency end. The NCPs are inserted from the high frequency end towards the low frequency end.

Note that N_I subcarriers in each symbol are subjected to the data and NCP mapping operation. These subcarriers consist of data subcarriers and scattered pilot place-holder subcarriers as described in the preceding section. During the course of mapping data or NCP subcarriers, if a scattered pilot placeholder is encountered, this is skipped.

The figure given below shows an OFDM symbol comprising a Data segment, an NCP segment and a "Filler" segment. "Filler" subcarriers have to be inserted into the OFDM symbol when the number of codewords in the OFDM symbol has exceeded the upper limit or when it is not possible to begin a new codeword because of insufficient space to include a NCP. These filler subcarriers are zero-bit-loaded.

The CMTS MUST only use zero-bit-loaded filler subcarriers when the number of codewords has exceeded the upper limit or when it is not possible to begin a new codeword because of insufficient space to include a NCP, or when there is no data to transmit. The CMTS MUST define the location of a segment of zero-bit-loaded subcarriers using an NCP with Z-bit set to one as described in Section 8.3.4.1. The filler subcarriers always fill the remaining subcarriers of the symbol.

If the CMTS has no data to transmit, the CMTS MUST adopt one of the following two options:

1) Insert zero-bit-loaded filler subcarriers into OFDM symbols as described in this section, or
2) Insert stuffing pattern of 0xFF bytes into codewords as described in Section 8.3.2.

[31] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1160-1 on 12/10/14 by JB.

Data segment contains codewords belonging to several profiles. Some of the subcarriers may be zero-bit-loaded in some of the profiles. The NCP also has a profile. This profile allows some of the subcarriers in the NCP segment to be zero-bit-loaded. Note that the NCP modulation is a constant for given OFDM transmission. It does not change from subcarrier to subcarrier.

Note that throughout the symbol there can be scattered pilot placeholders. These have to be skipped during the insertion of data subcarriers, NCP subcarriers or filler subcarriers. Moreover, these have to be tagged before sending the N_I subcarriers through the time and frequency interleavers. Scattered pilots will be inserted in their place with the appropriate BPSK modulation before the data is transmitted.

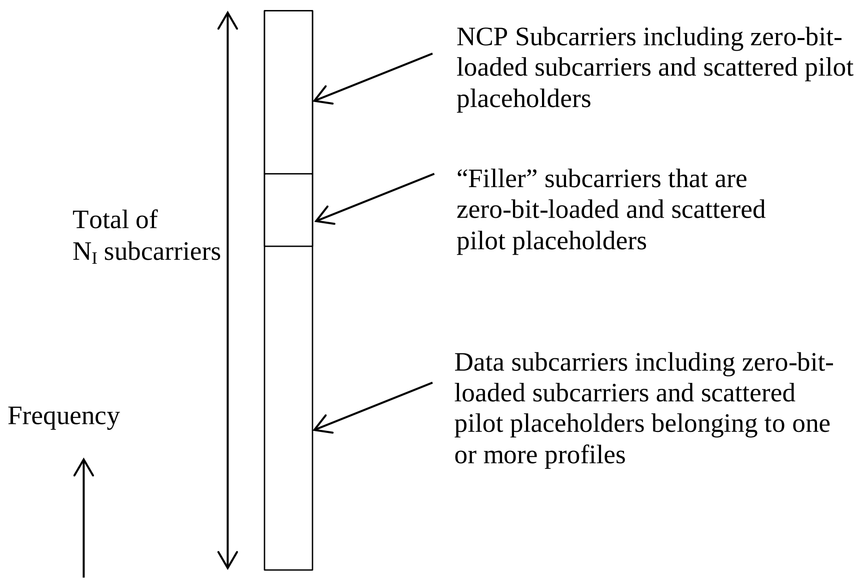


Figure 7-51 - NCP Insertion

7.5.6 Interleaving and De-interleaving[32]

To minimize the impacts of burst noise and ingress on the DOCSIS signals, time and frequency interleaving are applied to OFDM symbols in the following order: time interleaving, then frequency interleaving. These interleaving methods are discussed in this section.

The time interleaver is a convolutional interleaver that operates in the time dimension on individual subcarriers of a sequence of OFDM symbols. The time interleaver does not change the frequency location of any OFDM subcarrier. A burst event can reduce the SNR of all the subcarriers of one or two consecutive OFDM symbols; the purpose of the time interleaver is to disperse these burst-affected OFDM subcarriers between M successive OFDM symbols, where M is the interleaver depth. This dispersion distributes the burst-affected subcarriers uniformly over a number of LDPC codewords.

The frequency interleaver works along the frequency dimension. The frequency interleaver changes the frequency locations of individual OFDM subcarriers; latency is not introduced, except for the data store and read latency. The aim of frequency interleaving is to disperse ingress, e.g., LTE that affects a number of consecutive subcarriers over the entire OFDM symbol. Frequency interleaving distributes the burst-affected subcarriers over a number of LDPC codewords.

The CMTS first applies a time interleaver to an OFDM symbol worth of N_I subcarriers to get a new set of N_I subcarriers. These N_I subcarriers are made up of N_D data subcarriers and N_S scattered pilots.

$$N_I = N_D + N_S$$

[32] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

It is important to note that although N_D and N_S are not the same for every OFDM symbol, the value of N_I is a constant for all OFDM symbols in a given system configuration. The value of N_I is a function of the channel bandwidth, number of excluded subcarriers, number of PLC subcarriers and the number of continuous pilots. The CMTS then subjects these N_I subcarriers to frequency interleaving. The value of N_I does not exceed 7537 for 8K FFT mode and 3745 for the 4K FFT mode.

Note that both time and frequency interleaving are applied only to data subcarriers and scattered pilots. Continuous pilot, subcarriers that have been excluded (used to support legacy channels in spectral regions, for example) and the subcarriers of the physical layer link channel (PLC) are not interleaved. The CMTS MUST NOT interleave continuous pilots, excluded subcarriers or the subcarriers of the PLC.

7.5.6.1 Time Interleaving

The CMTS MUST time interleave as described in this section. The CMTS MUST time interleave after OFDM symbols have been mapped to QAM constellations and before they are frequency interleaved.

The time interleaver is a convolutional interleaver that operates at the OFDM subcarrier level. If the depth of the interleaver is M, then there are M branches, as shown in Figure 7-52.

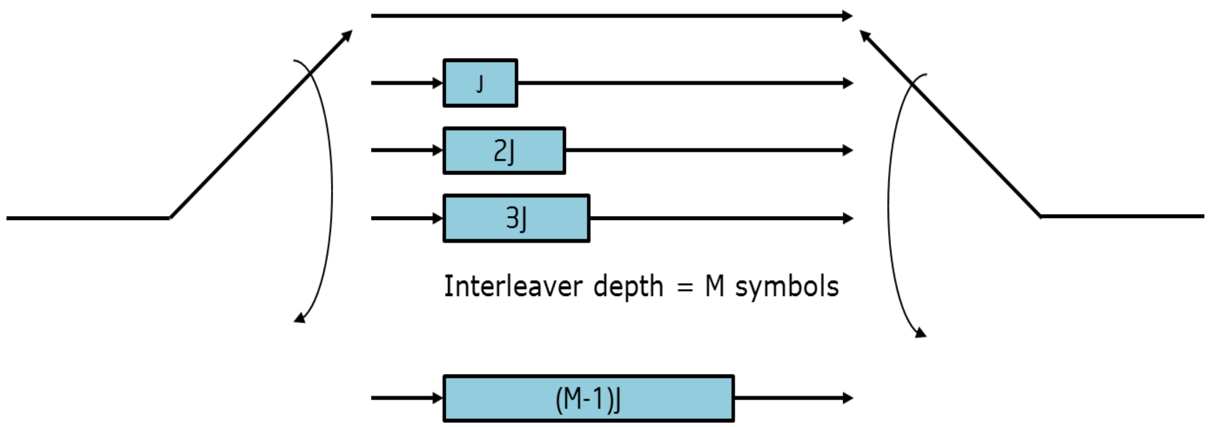


Figure 7-52 - Time Interleaver Structure

The CMTS MUST support a maximum value of M equal to 32 for 20 µs symbol duration (50 kHz subcarrier spacing) and 16 for 40 µs symbol duration (25 kHz subcarrier spacing).

The CMTS MUST support all values of M from 1 to the maximum value of M (inclusive of both limits).

Each branch is a delay line; the input and output will always be connected to the same delay line. This delay line will be clocked to insert a new subcarrier into the delay line and to extract a subcarrier from the delay line. Next, the commutator switches at the input, and the output will move to the next delay line in the direction shown by the arrows in Figure 7-52. After the delay line with the largest delay, the switch will move to the delay line with zero delay.

The lowest frequency subcarrier of an OFDM symbol always goes through the branch with zero delay. Then the commutator switch at input and the corresponding commutator switch at output are rotated by one position for every new subcarrier.

The value of J is given by the following equation:

$$J = ceil(\frac{N_I}{M})$$

Here, N_I is the number of data subcarriers and scattered pilots in an OFDM symbol. See Section 7.5.6.3 for details on interleaving scattered pilots.

If N_I were not divisible by M, all of the branches would not be filled. Therefore, "dummy subcarriers" are added to the symbol to make the number of subcarriers equal to a multiple of M. The number of dummy subcarriers is given by:

$$J * M - N_I$$

The dummy subcarriers are added for definition purposes only; at the output of the interleaver these dummy subcarriers are discarded. An implementation will use a single linear address space for all the delay lines in Figure 7-52. Writing and reading dummy subcarriers will not be needed.

7.5.6.2 Frequency Interleaving

The CMTS MUST frequency interleave OFDM symbols as described in this section. The CMTS MUST frequency interleave after OFDM symbols have been time interleaved.

The frequency interleaver works on individual OFDM symbols. Each symbol to be interleaved consists of N_I subcarriers. These N_I subcarriers are made up of N_D data subcarriers and N_S scattered pilot placeholders. Although N_D and N_S are not the same for every symbol, the value of N_I is a constant for all OFDM symbols in a given system configuration. See Section 7.5.6.3 for details on interleaving scattered pilots.

There is a 2-D store comprising 128 rows and K columns. If the number of data subcarriers and scattered pilots in the OFDM symbol is N_I, then the number of columns, K, is given by the following equation:

$$K = ceil(\frac{N_I}{128})$$

If N_I is not an integer multiple of 128, then the last column will only be partially filled during the frequency interleaving process. The number of data subcarriers in the last column, C, is given by:

$$C = N_I - 128(K - 1)$$

The frequency interleaver follows the following process; note that rows are numbered 0 to 127, and columns are numbered from 0 to (K-1):

1. Write the subcarriers along rows of the 2-D store. Rows are accessed in bit-reversed order. For example, after writing in row 0, the next writing operation will be in row 64. This will be followed by writing in row 32 and so on. If the row number is less than C, then K subcarriers will be written in the row. Otherwise only (K-1) subcarriers will be written. (If the number N_I is an integer multiple of 128 then C will be zero. Then K subcarriers will be written in every row.)
2. Rotate columns 0 to (K-2) by an amount given by a 6-bit shift linear feedback (maximal length) shift register. This shift register is initialized to a value of 17 at the start of each OFDM symbol. The final column, which may be partially full, is not rotated.
3. Read the columns in bit-reverse order, starting at column 0, then column bit-reverse(1), then column bit-reverse(2), … , ending at column bit-reverse(K-1). When K is not a power-of-2, bit-reverse(x), for x = 0, …, K-1, is defined by:

   bit-reverse(x) = reverse_bits(x), if reverse_bits(x) < K; OR
   x, if reverse_bits(x) ≥ K

   where reverse_bits(x) is the number obtained by reversing the order of the bits in the m-bit representation of x, with m being the number of bits in K.

The structure of the two-dimensional store is shown in Figure 7-53.

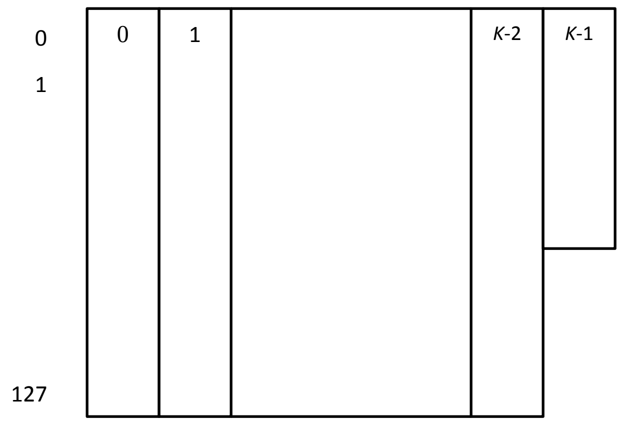


Figure 7-53 - Two-Dimensional Block Structure

The linear feedback shift register is defined using the following equation in Galois field GF[2^6]:

$$x(i) = \alpha x(i-1), for\ i = 1, \ldots, 127, where\ x(0) = \alpha^5 + \alpha$$

GF[2^6] is defined using the polynomial (α^6+ α +1). As this is primitive, powers of α will generate all 63 non-zero elements of the field. This operation can be represented as the linear feedback shift register, depicted in Figure 7-54.

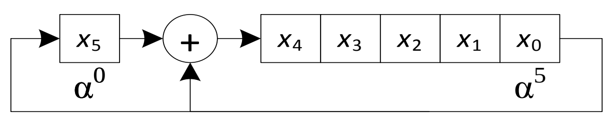


Figure 7-54 - Linear Feedback Shift Register

The binary number *x*[5:0] is used to rotate the columns. This number is initialized to 17 at the beginning of each OFDM symbol. The column number 0 is rotated by 17; subsequent columns are rotated by values obtained by clocking the shift register shown in Figure 7-54. The rotation applied to the first column is defined in Figure 7-55. Subsequent rows are also rotated along the same direction.

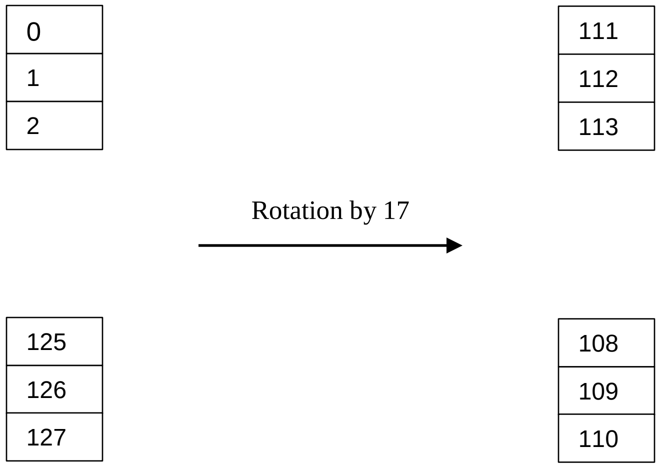


Figure 7-55 - Frequency Interleaver Rotation Definition

Note that column (*K-1*) is not rotated, regardless of whether it is full: because all other columns are rotated by a non-zero amount, there is no need to rotate column (*K-1*). The C code for interleaver implementation is given in Appendix I.

7.5.6.3 Interleaving Impact on Continuous Pilots, Scattered Pilots, PLC and Excluded Spectral Regions[33]

DOCSIS 3.1 transmissions contain continuous pilots for receiver synchronization and scattered pilots for channel estimation. In addition, there could be excluded regions to accommodate legacy channels. There will also be a physical layer link channel (PLC).

The CMTS interleaves scattered pilots and data subcarriers, but does not interleave continuous pilots, the PLC, and subcarriers belonging to excluded regions. With respect to scattered pilots, it is noted here that CMTS actually interleaves the subcarriers that are tagged to act as placeholders for scattered pilots, since at the time of interleaving the scattered pilots have not yet been inserted. The actual BPSK modulation to these placeholder subcarriers is applied after interleaving as described in Section 7.5.15.

The CMTS inserts scattered pilot placeholders prior to time and frequency interleaving such that when these placeholders get time and frequency interleaved, the resulting placeholders conform to the required scattered pilot pattern described in Section 7.5.15.

To accomplish this, the CMTS has to retain a reference pattern for inserting scattered pilot placeholders prior to interleaving. Since the scattered pilot pattern repeats every 128 symbols, this pattern is a (N_I x 128) two-dimensional bit pattern. A value of one in this bit-pattern indicates the location of a scattered pilot. The CMTS inserts data subcarriers where this reference pattern has a zero and scattered pilot placeholders where this pattern has a one.

This reference pattern may be derived from the following procedure:

1. In the time-frequency plane, create a two-dimensional bit-pattern of zeros and ones from the transmitted "diagonal" scattered pilot patterns described in Section 7.5.15. This pattern has a periodicity of 128 symbols and has a value of one for a scattered pilot location and zero otherwise. Let the time axis be horizontal and the frequency axis vertical.
2. Delete all horizontal lines containing continuous pilots, excluded subcarriers, and PLC from the above mentioned two-dimensional bit pattern; note the some scattered pilots could coincide with continuous pilots. These locations are treated as continuous pilot locations.

[33] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

3. Send the resulting bit-pattern through the frequency de-interleaver and the time de-interleaver in succession. This will give another two-dimensional bit pattern that has a periodicity of 128 symbols. The appropriate 128-symbol segment of this bit-pattern is chosen as the reference bit pattern referred to above.

Note that the CMTS has to synchronize the scattered pilot pattern to the PLC preamble, as described in Section 7.5.15. This uniquely defines the 128-symbol segment that has to be used as the reference pattern.

Scattered pilots are not in the same subcarrier location in every symbol; hence some scattered pilots can coincide with continuous pilots in some OFDM symbols. The size of the overlap between the set of scattered pilots and the set of continuous pilots will change from symbol to symbol. As a result, the number of data subcarriers in a symbol will not be the same for all OFDM symbols. Note that in the nomenclature used below, when a scattered pilot coincides with a continuous pilot, then that pilot is referred to as a continuous pilot.

Although the number of data subcarriers can change from symbol to symbol, the number of data subcarriers and scattered pilots are the same for every symbol. This is referred to as N_I in this section. Let N_D denote the number of data subcarriers in a symbol and N_S denote the number of scattered pilots in a symbol. These two parameters, i.e., N_D and N_S, will change from symbol to symbol. However, the sum of these two, i.e., N_I is a constant for a given system configuration.

$$N_I = N_S + N_D$$

Hence the number of OFDM subcarriers that are interleaved does not change from symbol to symbol. This is important, because if not for this, the output of the convolutional time interleaver may have dummy or unused subcarriers in the middle of interleaved OFDM symbols.

The insertion of continuous pilots, PLC and excluded regions happens after both time and frequency interleaving.

Interleaving data and scattered pilots together has another important advantage. This is to do with bit loading. A transmitted profile is said to have non-uniform bit loading if the QAM constellation that is applied to subcarriers is not constant over the entire frequency band. If the data subcarriers are interleaved and scattered pilots are added later, then the data subcarriers will have to be shifted to accommodate the scattered pilots. This shift will be different from symbol to symbol, and this complicates non-uniform bit-loading. Hence, having the scattered pilots in-place during the bit-loading process greatly simplifies the bit loading operation. The insertion of continuous pilots, PLC and excluded regions also results in shift of data subcarriers, but this shift is the same for every symbol, and can easily be accounted for in the bit loading process.

The CMTS only interleaves data subcarriers and scattered pilots, and therefore only needs information about the number of data subcarriers and scattered pilots per symbol. In addition, the interleaver does not need to know what modulation has been applied to an individual data subcarrier. Regardless of modulation scheme, all OFDM symbols will have the same number of data subcarriers and scattered pilots, and the modulation pattern of these data subcarriers may change from symbol to symbol.

7.5.7 IDFT

7.5.7.1 Downstream Transmitter Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform

The CMTS transmitter MUST use the IDFT definition and subcarrier referencing method described in this section.

This section defines the inverse discrete Fourier transform (IDFT) used in the CMTS transmitter for DOCSIS 3.1. OFDM subcarrier referencing for other definitions such as PLC location, continuous pilots, exclusion bands and bit loading is also described.

The OFDM signal assembled in the frequency domain consists of 4096 subcarriers for the 4K FFT and 8192 subcarriers for the 8K FFT. The OFDM signal is composed of:

- Data subcarriers
- Scattered pilots
- Continuous pilots
- PLC subcarriers

- Excluded subcarriers that are zero valued

This signal is described according to the following IDFT equation:

$$x(i) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} X(k) \exp(j\frac{2\pi i\left(k-\frac{N}{2}\right)}{N}), \ \ for \ \ i = 0, 1, \ldots, (N-1)$$

The resulting time domain discrete signal, $x(i)$, is a baseband complex-valued signal, sampled at 204.8 Msamples per second.

In this definition of the IDFT:

$X(0)$ is the lowest frequency component;

$X(N\text{-}1)$ is the highest frequency component.

The IDFT is illustrated in Figure 7-56.

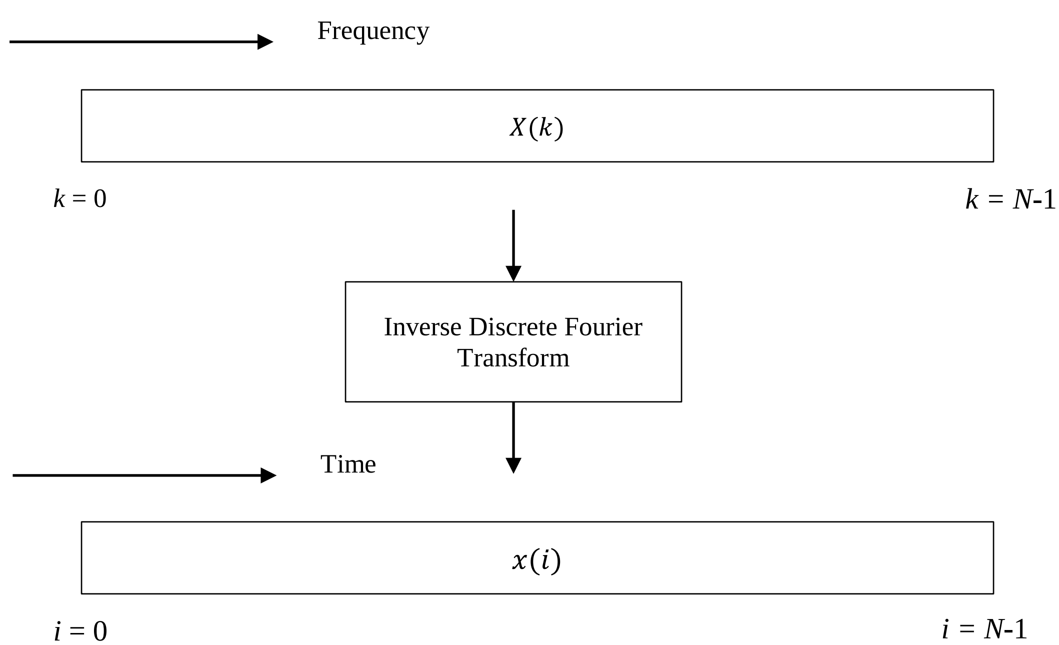


Figure 7-56 - Inverse Discrete Fourier Transform

The sample rate in the time domain is 204.8 Msamples/s. Hence, the N samples of the discrete Fourier transform cover a frequency range of 204.8 MHz. This gives the subcarrier spacing shown in Table 7–33.

Table 7–33 - Subcarrier Spacing

IDFT Size *N*	Carrier Spacing
4096	50 kHz
8192	25 kHz

The maximum channel bandwidth is 192 MHz; this corresponds to 3841 subcarriers in 4K mode and 7681 subcarriers in 8K mode. The active bandwidth of the channel is expected to be 190 MHz; this corresponds to 3800 subcarriers in 4K mode and 7600 subcarriers in 8K mode.

7.5.7.2 Subcarrier Referencing

It is necessary to refer to specific OFDM subcarriers for several definitions:

a. Defining continuous pilot locations

b. Defining exclusion bands and excluded individual subcarriers

c. Defining bit loading profiles

Each of these definitions uses the index k of the equation defined in the preceding section to refer to a specific subcarrier.

The subcarrier index goes from 0 to 4095 for the 4K FFT and from 0 to 8191 for the 8K FFT; each of these definitions is limited to these subcarrier indices.

The PLC is also defined with reference to $k = 0$. The OFDM template carried by the PLC defines the subcarrier index of the lowest frequency subcarrier of the PLC. Hence, once the CM detects the PLC, the CM knows the location of $k = 0$. Since the FFT size is also known, it is possible to precisely compute the FFT of the data channel containing the PLC.

Note that scattered pilot placement is not referenced to $k = 0$; instead, it is referenced directly to the PLC preamble.

7.5.8 Cyclic Prefix and Windowing

This section describes how cyclic prefixes are inserted and how a window is applied to the output of the IDFT at the CMTS and how they are handled by the CM.

The addition of a cyclic prefix enables the receiver to overcome the effects of inter-symbol-interference caused by micro-reflections in the channel. Windowing maximizes channel capacity by sharpening the edges of the spectrum of the OFDM signal. Spectral edges occur at the two ends of the spectrum of the OFDM symbol, as well as at the ends of internal exclusion bands.

The number of active OFDM subcarriers can be increased by sharpening these spectral edges. However, sharper spectral edges in the frequency domain imply longer tapered regions in the time domain, resulting in increased symbol duration and reduction in throughput. Therefore, there is an optimum amount of tapering that maximizes channel capacity. This optimum is a function of channel bandwidth as well as the number of exclusion bands.

7.5.8.1 Cyclic Prefix Insertion and Windowing[34]

The CMTS MUST follow the procedure described in Section 7.4.10.1 for cyclic prefix insertion and windowing, using CMTS specific cyclic prefix and roll-off period values.

The CMTS MUST support cyclic prefix extension and windowing as described in Section 7.4.10.1.

The CMTS MUST support the cyclic prefix values defined in Table 7–34 for both 4K and 8K FFTs.

The CM MUST support the cyclic prefix values listed defined Table 7–34 for both 4K and 8K FFTs.

Table 7–34 - Downstream Cyclic Prefix (CP) Values

Cyclic Prefix (µs)	Cyclic Prefix Samples (N_{cp})
0.9375	192
1.25	256
2.5	512
3.75	768
5.0	1024

The cyclic prefix (in µs) are converted into samples using the sample rate of 204.8 Msamples/s and is an integer multiple of: 1/64 * 20 µs.

The CMTS MUST support the five parameter values specified for this roll-off listed in Table 7–35.

[34] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Table 7–35 - Downstream Roll-off Period (RP) Values

Roll-Off Period (μs)	Roll-Off Period Samples (N_{rp})
0	0
0.3125	64
0.625	128
0.9375	192
1.25	256

The CMTS MUST NOT allow a configuration in which the RP value is ≥ the CP value.

7.5.9 Fidelity Requirements

For the purposes of this specification, the number of occupied CEA channels of an OFDM channel is the occupied bandwidth of the OFDM channel divided by 6 MHz.

CMTSs capable of generating N-channels of legacy DOCSIS plus N_{OFDM}-channels of OFDM per RF port, for purposes of the DRFI output electrical requirements, the device is said to be capable of generating N_{eq}-channels per RF port, where $N_{eq} = N + 32*N_{OFDM}$ "equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels."

An N_{eq}-channel per RF port CMTS MUST comply with all requirements operating with all N_{eq} channels on the RF port, and MUST comply with all requirements for an N_{eq}'-channel per RF port device operating with N_{eq}' active channels on the RF port for all values of N_{eq}' less than N_{eq}.

For an OFDM channel there is a) the occupied bandwidth, b) the encompassed spectrum, c) the modulated spectrum, and d) the number of equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels.

The encompassed spectrum in MHz is 204.8 MHz minus the number of subcarriers in the Band edge Exclusion Sub-band for the upper and lower band edges (combined) times the subcarrier spacing in MHz. For example, with subcarrier spacing of 50 kHz and 150 lower band edge subcarriers and 152 upper band edge subcarriers for a total of 302 subcarriers in the two Band edge Exclusion Sub-bands, the encompassed spectrum = 204.8 – 302*(0.05) = 189.7 MHz. The encompassed spectrum is also equal to the center frequency of the highest frequency modulated subcarrier minus the center frequency of the lowest frequency modulated subcarrier in an OFDM channel, plus the subcarrier spacing.

The occupied bandwidth is a multiple of 6 MHz, with a minimum of 24 MHz, and consists of all CEA channels which include the encompassed spectrum plus taper region shaped by the OFDM channels' transmit windowing; the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements (except for gap channel spurious emissions requirements) apply outside the occupied bandwidth. With a 1 MHz taper region on each band edge of the OFDM channel, shaped by the transmit windowing function, encompassed spectrum of 189.7 MHz may provide 192 MHz of occupied bandwidth.

The modulated spectrum of an OFDM channel is the encompassed spectrum minus the total spectrum in the Internal Excluded Sub-bands of the channel, where the total spectrum in the Internal Excluded Sub-bands is equal to the number of subcarriers in all of the Internal Excluded Sub-bands of the OFDM channel multiplied by the subcarrier spacing of the OFDM channel. In the previous example, if there are 188 subcarriers total in three Internal Exclusion Sub-bands, then the total spectrum in the Internal Excluded Sub-bands (in MHz) is 188*0.05 = 9.4 MHz, and the modulated spectrum is 189.7 MHz – 9.4 MHz = 180.3 MHz.

The number of equivalent active legacy DOCSIS channels in the OFDM channel N_{eq}' is the ceiling function applied to the modulated spectrum divided by 6 MHz. For the example, the number of equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels in the OFDM channel is ceiling(180.3 MHz / 6 MHz) = 31.

For an N_{eq}-channel per RF port device, the applicable maximum power per channel and spurious emissions requirements are defined using a value of $N^* = \text{minimum}(4N_{eq}', \text{ceiling}[N_{eq}/4])$ for $N_{eq}' < N_{eq}/4$, and $N^* = N_{eq}'$ otherwise.

These specifications assume that the CMTS will be terminated with a 75 Ohm load.

7.5.9.1 CMTS Output Electrical Requirements[35]

For OFDM, all modulated subcarriers in an OFDM channel are set to the same average power (except pilots which are boosted by 6 dB). For purposes of spurious emissions requirements, the "commanded transmit power per channel" for an equivalent legacy DOCSIS channel is computed as follows:

- CMTS power is configured by power per CEA channel and number of occupied CEA channels for each OFDM channel.
- For each OFDM channel, the total power is Power per CEA channel + $10\log_{10}$(Number of occupied CEA channels) for that OFDM channel.
- CMTS calculates power for data subcarrier and pilots (using total number of non-zero valued (non-excluded) subcarriers).
- CMTS calculates power in 6 MHz containing PLC.
- For the spurious emissions requirements, power calculated for the 6 MHz containing the PLC is the commanded average power of an equivalent DOCSIS legacy channel for that OFDM channel.

A CMTS MUST output an OFDM RF modulated signal with the characteristics defined in Table 7–36, Table 7–37 and Table 7–38. Legacy DOCSIS RF modulated signal characteristics are provided in Section 6.2.22.

The condition for these requirements is all N_{eq}' combined channels, legacy DOCSIS channels and equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels, commanded to the same average power, except for the Single Channel Active Phase Noise, Diagnostic Carrier Suppression, OFDM Phase Noise, OFDM Diagnostic Suppression, and power difference requirements, and except as described for Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Requirements.

Table 7–36 - RF Output Electrical Requirements

Parameter	Value
Downstream Lower Edge Band of a CMTS	CMTS MUST support 258 MHz CMTS SHOULD support 108 MHz
Downstream Upper Edge Band of a CMTS	CMTS MUST support 1218 MHz CMTS MAY support 1794 MHz
Level	Adjustable. See Table 7–37.
Modulation Type	See Section 7.5.6.1
OFDM channels' subcarrier spacing	25 kHz and 50 kHz
Inband Spurious, Distortion, and Noise 528 MHz total occupied bandwidth, 6 MHz gap (Internal Excluded subcarriers) 88 equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels. See Notes 4, 6	
For measurements below 600 MHz	≤ -50 dBr Average over center 400 kHz subcarriers within gap
For measurements from 600 MHz to 1002 MHz	≤ -47 dBr Average over center 400 kHz subcarriers within gap
For measurements 1002 MHz to 1218 MHz	≤ -45 dBr Average over center 400 kHz subcarriers within gap

[35] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by JB.

Parameter	Value
MER in 192 MHz OFDM channel occupied bandwidth 528 MHz total occupied bandwidth, 88 equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels. See Notes 2, 4, 5, 6 For measurements below 600 MHz For measurements from 600 MHz to 1002 MHz For measurements 1002 MHz to 1218 MHz	≥ 48 dB Any single subcarrier. See Note 1 ≥ 50 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel. See Note 1 ≥ 45 dB Any single subcarrier. See Note 1 ≥ 47 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel. See Note 1 ≥ 43 dB Any single subcarrier. See Note 1 ≥ 45 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel. See Note 1 Minimal test receiver equalization: See Note 7 2 dB relief for above requirements (e.g., MER > 48 dB becomes MER > 46 dB)
MER in 24 MHz OFDM channel occupied bandwidth, single OFDM channel only, 24 MHz total occupied bandwidth: See Notes 1, 2, 4, 8 For measurements below 600 MHz For measurements from 600 MHz to 1002 MHz For measurements 1002 MHz to 1218 MHz	≥ 48 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel. ≥ 45 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel. ≥ 43 dB Average over the complete OFDM channel.

Parameter	Value
Phase noise, double sided maximum, Full power CW signal 1002 MHz or lower Full power 192 MHz OFDM channel block with 6 MHz in center as Internal Exclusion subband + 0 dBc CW in center, with block not extending beyond 1002 MHz [CW not processed via FFT] Full power 192 MHz OFDM channel block with 24 MHz in center as Internal Exclusion subband + 0 dBc CW in center, with block not extending beyond 1002 MHz [CW not processed via FFT] Full power 192 MHz OFDM channel block with 30 MHz in center as Internal Exclusion subband + 7 dBc CW in center, with block not extending beyond 1002 MHz [CW not processed via FFT]	1 kHz - 10 kHz: -48 dBc 10 kHz - 100 kHz: -56 dBc 100 kHz - 1 MHz: -60 dBc 1 MHz - 10 MHz: -54 dBc 10 MHz - 100 MHz: -60 dBc 1 kHz - 10 kHz: -48 dBc 10 kHz - 100 kHz: -56 dBc 100 kHz - 1 MHz: -60 dBc 1 MHz - 10 MHz: -53dBc
Output Impedance	75 ohms
Output Return Loss (Note 3)	> 14 dB within an active output channel from 88 MHz to 750 MHz > 13 dB within an active output channel from 750 MHz to 870 MHz > 12 dB within an active output channel from 870 MHz to 1218 MHz > 12 dB in every inactive channel from 54 MHz to 870 MHz > 10 dB in every inactive channel from 870 MHz to 1218 MHz
Connector	F connector per [ISO/IEC-61169-24] or [SCTE 02]

Table Notes:

Note 1 Receiver channel estimation is applied in the test receiver; test receiver does best estimation possible. Transmit windowing is applied to potentially interfering channel and selected to be sufficient to suppress cross channel interference

Note 2 MER (modulation error ratio) is determined by the cluster variance caused by the transmit waveform at the output of the ideal receive matched filter. MER includes all discrete spurious, noise, subcarrier leakage, clock lines, synthesizer products, distortion, and other undesired transmitter products. Phase noise up to ±50 kHz of the subcarrier is excluded from inband specification, to separate the phase noise and inband spurious requirements as much as possible. In measuring MER, record length or carrier tracking loop bandwidth may be adjusted to exclude low frequency phase noise from the measurement. MER requirements assume measuring with a calibrated test instrument with its residual MER contribution removed.

Note 3 Frequency ranges are edge-to-edge.

Note 4 Phase noise up to 10 MHz offset is mitigated in test receiver processing or by test equipment (latter using hardline carrier from modulator, which requires special modulator test port and functionality).

Note 5 Up to 5 subcarriers in one OFDM channel can be excluded from this requirement

Note 6 The measured OFDM channel is allocated 204.8 MHz of spectrum which is free from the other OFDM channel and 24 SC-QAM channels which together comprise 528 MHz of occupied bandwidth.

Note 7 The estimated channel impulse response used by the test receiver is limited to half of length of smallest transmit cyclic prefix

Note 8 A single subcarrier in the OFDM channel can be excluded from this requirement, no windowing is applied and minimum CP is selected.

7.5.9.1.1 Power per Channel for CMTS

A CMTS MUST generate an RF output with power capabilities as defined in Table 7–37.

The CMTS MUST be capable of adjusting channel RF power on a per channel basis as stated in Table 7–37.

If the CMTS has independent modulation capability on a per channel basis for legacy DOCSIS channels, then the CMTS MUST be capable of adjusting power on a per channel basis for the legacy DOCSIS channels, with each channel independently meeting the power capabilities defined in Table 7–37.

Table 7–37 - CMTS Output Power[36]

$\text{for } N^* \equiv \begin{cases} \mathit{minimum}[4N_{eq}', \text{ceiling}\left[\frac{N_{eq}}{4}\right]], & N_{eq}' < N_{eq}/4 \\ N_{eq}', & N_{eq}' \geq N_{eq}/4 \end{cases}$, **Adjusted Number of Active Channels Combined per RF Port**	
Parameter	**Value**
Required power per channel for N_{eq}' channels combined onto a single RF port:	Required power in dBmV per channel 60 – ceil [3.6*$\log_2(N^*)$] dBmV
Range of commanded transmit power per channel	≥ 8 dB below required power level specified below maintaining full fidelity over the 8 dB range
Range of commanded power per channel; adjusted on a per channel basis	CMTS MUST: 0 dBc to -2 dBc relative to the highest commanded transmit power per channel, within an 8 dB absolute window below the highest commanded power. CMTS MAY: *required power* (in table below) to *required power - 8 dB*, independently on each channel.
Commanded power per channel step size	≤ 0.2 dB Strictly monotonic
Power difference between any two adjacent channels in the 108-1218 MHz downstream spectrum (with commanded power difference removed if channel power is independently adjustable and/or accounting for pilot density variation and subcarrier exclusions)	≤ 0.5 dB
Power difference between any two non-adjacent channels in a 48 MHz contiguous bandwidth block (with commanded power difference removed if channel power is independently adjustable)	≤ 1 dB
Power difference (normalized for bandwidth) between any two channels OFDM channel blocks or legacy DOCSIS channels in the 108 - 1218 MHz downstream spectrum (with commanded power difference removed if channel power is independently adjustable)	≤ 2 dB
Power per channel absolute accuracy	±2 dB

[36] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

for $N^* \equiv \begin{cases} \boldsymbol{minimum}[4N_{eq}', \text{ceiling}\left[\frac{N_{eq}}{4}\right]], & N_{eq}' < N_{eq}/4 \\ N_{eq}', & N_{eq}' \geq N_{eq}/4 \end{cases}$, **Adjusted Number of Active Channels Combined per RF Port**	
Parameter	**Value**
Diagnostic carrier suppression (3 modes) Mode 1: One channel suppressed Mode 2: All channels suppressed except one Mode 3: All channels suppressed	1) ≥ 50 dB carrier suppression within the occupied bandwidth in any one active channel. When suppressing the carrier ≥ 50 dB within the occupied bandwidth in any one active channel the CMTS MUST control transmissions such that no service impacting discontinuity or detriment to the unsuppressed channels occurs. 2) 50 dB carrier suppression within the occupied bandwidth in every active channel except one. The suppression is not required to be glitchless, and the remaining unsuppressed active channel is allowed to operate with increased power such as the total power of the N' active channels combined. 3) 50 dB carrier suppression within the occupied bandwidth in every active channel. The CMTS MUST control transmissions such that in all three diagnostic carrier suppression modes the output return loss of the suppressed channel(s) complies with the Output Return Loss requirements for active channels given in Table 7–39. The total noise and spur requirement is the combination of noise power from the 50 dBc suppressed channel and the normal noise and spur requirement for the CMTS output when operating with all channels unsuppressed.
RF output port muting	≥ 73 dB below the unmuted aggregate power of the RF modulated signal, in every 6 MHz CEA channel from 54 MHz to 1218 MHz. The specified limit applies with all active channels commanded to the same transmit power level. Commanding a reduction in the transmit level of any, or all but one, of the active channels does not change the specified limit for measured muted power in 6 MHz. When the CMTS is configured to mute an RF output port, the CMTS MUST control transmissions such that the output return loss of the output port of the muted device complies with the Output Return Loss requirements for inactive channels given in Table 7–39.
Table Notes Note 1: "Channel" in mode 1 or mode 2 carrier suppression refers to an OFDM channel with at least 22 MHz of contiguous modulated spectrum or an SC-QAM channel.	

7.5.9.1.2 Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Requirements for CMTS [37]

One of the goals of the DOCSIS DRFI specification is to provide the minimum intended analog channel CNR protection of 60 dB for systems deploying up to 119 DRFI-compliant QAM channels. A new DOCSIS 3.1 PHY goal is to provide protection for legacy DOCSIS channels and for high density constellations of OFDM channel blocks if they are generated from another DRFI-compliant device.

The specification assumes that the transmitted power level of the digital channels will be 6 dB below the peak envelope power of the visual signal of analog channels, which is the typical condition for 256-QAM transmission. It is further assumed that the channel lineup will place analog channels at lower frequencies than digital channels, and in systems deploying DOCSIS 3.1 modulators, analog channels will be placed at center frequencies below 600 MHz.

[37] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

An adjustment of $10*log_{10}$ *(6 MHz / 4 MHz)* is used to account for the difference in a 6 MHz equivalent digital channel, versus an analog channel's noise power bandwidth. With the assumptions above, for a 119-6 MHz equivalent channel system, the specification in item 5 of Table 7–38 equates to an analog CNR protection of 60dB.

With all digital channels at the same equivalent power per 6 MHz channel, the specification provides for 58 dB SNR protection for analog channels below 600 MHz (even with transmissions above 600 MHz) with 192 MHz occupied bandwidth (one full OFDM channel) and 51 dB SNR protection for digital channels below 600 MHz with transmission of 960 MHz modulated spectrum (160 equivalent legacy DOCSIS channels). The SNR protection between 600 MHz and 1002 MHz is 55 dB for analog channels operating above a 192 MHz occupied bandwidth generated by a DOCSIS 3.1 compliant device, and is 48 dB between 600 MHz and 1002 MHz for digital channels operating above 960 MHz occupied bandwidth generated by a DOCSIS 3.1 compliant device.

Table 7–38 lists the out-of-band spurious requirements. In cases where the N' combined channels are not commanded to the same power level, "dBc" denotes decibels relative to the strongest channel among the active channels. When commanded to the same power level, "dBc" should be interpreted as the average channel power, averaged over the active channels, to mitigate the variation in channel power across the active channels (see Table 7–37), which is allowed with all channels commanded to the same power.

The CMTS modulator MUST satisfy the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements of Table 7–38 in measurements below 600 MHz and outside the encompassed spectrum when the active channels are contiguous or when the ratio of modulated spectrum to gap spectrum within the encompassed spectrum is 4:1 or greater.

The CMTS modulator MUST satisfy the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements of Table 7–38, with 1 dB relaxation, in measurements within gaps in modulated spectrum below 600 MHz and within the encompassed spectrum when the ratio of modulated spectrum to gap spectrum within the encompassed spectrum is 4:1 or greater.

The CMTS modulator MUST satisfy the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements of Table 7–38, with 3 dB relaxation, when the ratio of modulated spectrum to gap spectrum within the encompassed spectrum is 4:1 or greater, in measurements with 603 MHz ≤ center frequency ≤ 999 MHz, outside the encompassed spectrum or in gap channels within the encompassed spectrum.

The CMTS modulator MUST satisfy the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements of Table 7–38, with 5 dB relaxation, when the ratio of modulated spectrum to gap spectrum within the encompassed spectrum is 4:1 or greater, in measurements with 999 MHz < center frequency ≤ 1215 MHz, outside the encompassed spectrum or in gap channels within the encompassed spectrum.

The CMTS modulator MUST satisfy the out-of-band spurious emissions requirements of Table 7–38, in addition to contributions from theoretical transmit windowing, with permissible configurations of lower edge and upper edge subband exclusions of at least 1 MHz each, FFT Size, cyclic prefix length (N_{cp}) and windowing roll-off period (N_{rp}) values. Recommendations for configuration parameters are provided in Appendix V. The test limit for determining compliance to the spurious emissions requirements is the power sum of the spurious emissions requirements taken in accordance with Table 7–38; and the contributions from the theoretical transmit windowing for the configured transmissions.

When the N_{eq}' combined active channels are not contiguous, and the ratio of modulated spectrum to gap spectrum within the encompassed spectrum is 4:1 or greater, the spurious emissions requirements are determined by summing the spurious emissions power allowed in a given measurement bandwidth by each of the contiguous sub-blocks among the occupied bandwidth. In the gap channels within the encompassed spectrum and below 600 MHz there is a 1 dB relaxation in the spurious emissions requirements, so that within the encompassed spectrum the spurious emissions requirements (in absolute power) are 26% higher power in the measurement band determined by the summing of the contiguous sub-blocks' spurious emissions requirements. In all channels above 600 MHz there is a 3 dB relaxation in the spurious emissions requirements, so that the spurious emissions requirements (in absolute power) are double the power in the measurement band determined by the summing of the contiguous sub-blocks' spurious emissions requirements. The following three paragraphs provide the details of the spurious emissions requirements for non-contiguous channel operation outside the encompassed spectrum; within the encompassed spectrum the same details apply except there is an additional 1 dB allowance below 600 MHz; and 3 dB allowance is applied above 600 MHz for all channels.

The full set of N_{eq}' channels is referred to throughout this specification as the modulated channels or the active channels. However, for purposes of determining the spurious emissions requirements for non-contiguous transmitted channels, each separate contiguous sub-block of channels within the active channels is identified, and the number of channels in each contiguous sub-block is denoted as N_{eqi}, for i = 1 to K, where K is the number of contiguous sub-blocks. Therefore, $N'_{eq} = \sum_{i=1}^{k} N_{eq,i}$. Note that K = 1 when and only when the entire set of active channels is contiguous. Also note that an isolated transmit channel, i.e., a transmit channel with empty adjacent channels, is described by $N_i = 1$ and constitutes a sub-block of one contiguous channel. Any number of the "contiguous sub-blocks" may have such an isolated transmit channel; if each active channel was an isolated channel, then K = N'.

When $N_{eq}' \geq N_{eq}/4$, Table 7–38 is used for determining the noise and spurious power requirements for each contiguous sub-block, even if the sub-block contains fewer than $N_{eq}/4$ active channels. When $N_{eq}' < N_{eq}/4$, Table 7–38 is used for determining the noise and spurious power requirements for each contiguous sub-block. Thus, the noise and spurious power requirements for all contiguous sub-blocks of transmitted channels are determined from Table 7–38, where the applicable table is determined by N_{eq}' being greater than or equal to $N_{eq}/4$, or not. The noise and spurious power requirements for the ith contiguous sub-block of transmitted channels is determined from Table 7–38 using the value N_i for the "number of active channels combined per RF port", and using "dBc" relative to the highest commanded power level of a 6 MHz equivalent channel among all the active channels, and not just the highest commanded power level in the ith contiguous sub-block, in cases where the N_{eq}' combined channels are not commanded to the same power. The noise and spurious emissions power in each measurement band, including harmonics, from all K contiguous sub-blocks, is summed (absolute power, NOT in dB) to determine the composite noise floor for the non-contiguous channel transmission condition.

For the measurement channels adjacent to a contiguous sub-block of channels, the spurious emissions requirements from the non-adjacent sub-blocks are divided on an equal "per Hz" basis for the narrow and wide adjacent measurement bands. For a measurement channel wedged between two contiguous sub-blocks, adjacent to each, the measurement channel is divided into three measurement bands, one wider in the middle and two narrower bands each abutting one of the adjacent transmit channels. The wideband spurious and noise requirement is split into two parts, on an equal "per Hz" basis, to generate the allowed contribution of power to the middle band and to the farthest narrowband. The ceiling function is applied to the resulting sum of noise and spurious emissions, per Note 1 of Table 7–38 to produce a requirement of ½ dB resolution.

Items 1 through 4 list the requirements in channels adjacent to the commanded channels.

Item 5 lists the requirements in all other channels further from the commanded channels. Some of these "other" channels are allowed to be excluded from meeting the Item 5 specification. All the exclusions, such as 2nd and 3rd harmonics of the commanded channel, are fully identified in the table.

Item 6 lists the requirements on the $2N'$ 2nd harmonic channels and the $3N'$ 3rd harmonic channels.

Table 7–38 - CMTS Output Out-of-Band Noise and Spurious Emissions Requirements

	for $N^* \equiv \begin{Bmatrix} \boldsymbol{minimum}[4\mathbf{N_{eq}}', \mathbf{ceiling}\left[\frac{\mathbf{N_{eq}}'}{4}\right]], & \mathbf{N_{eq}}' < \mathbf{N_{eq}}/4 \\ \mathbf{N_{eq}}', & \mathbf{N_{eq}}' \geq \mathbf{N_{eq}}/4 \end{Bmatrix}$	**Adjusted Number of Active Channels Combined per RF Port**
	Band	**Requirement (in dBc)**
1	Adjacent channel up to 750 kHz from channel block edge	For N* = 1, 2, 3, 4: ≤ -58; For N* ≥ 5: ≤ $10*\log_{10}[10^{-58/10} + (0.75/6)*(10^{-65/10} + (N^*-2)*10^{-73/10})]$
2	Adjacent channel (750 kHz from channel block edge to 6 MHz from channel block edge)	For N* = 1: ≤ -62; For N* ≥ 2: ≤ $10*\log_{10}[10^{-62/10} + (5.25/6)*(10^{-65/10} + (N^*-2)*10^{-73/10})]$
3	Next-adjacent channel (6 MHz from channel block edge to 12 MHz from channel block edge)	≤ $10*\log_{10}[10^{-65/10} + (N^*-1)*10^{-73/10}]$

	for $N^* \equiv \begin{cases} minimum[4N_{eq}', \text{ceiling}\left[\frac{N_{eq}'}{4}\right]], & N_{eq}' < N_{eq}/4 \\ N_{eq}', & N_{eq}' \geq N_{eq}/4 \end{cases}$	**Adjusted Number of Active Channels Combined per RF Port**
	Band	**Requirement (in dBc)**
4	Third-adjacent channel (12 MHz from channel block edge to 18 MHz from channel block edge)	For *N** = 1: ≤ -73; For *N** = 2: ≤ -70; For *N** = 3: ≤ -67; For *N** = 4: ≤ -65; For *N** = 5: ≤ -64.5; For *N** = 6, 7: ≤ -64; For *N'** ≥ 8: ≤-73 + 10*$\log_{10}$ (*N**)
5	Noise in other channels (47 MHz to 1218 MHz) Measured in each 6 MHz channel excluding the following: a) Desired channel(s) b) 1st, 2nd, and 3rd adjacent channels (see Items 1, 2, 3, 4 in this table) c) Channels coinciding with 2nd and 3rd harmonics (see Item 6 in this table)	For *N** = 1: ≤ -73; For *N** = 2: ≤ -70; For *N** = 3: ≤ -68; For *N** = 4: ≤ -67; For *N'** ≥ 5: ≤ -73 + 10*$\log_{10}$ (*N**)
6	In each of $2N_{eq}'$ contiguous 6 MHz channels or in each of 3N' contiguous 6 MHz channels coinciding with 2nd harmonic and with 3rd harmonic components respectively (up to 1218 MHz)	≤ -73 + 10*$\log_{10}$(*N**) dBc, or -63, whichever is greater
7	Lower out of band noise in the band of 5 MHz to 47 MHz Measured in 6 MHz channel bandwidth	≤ -50 + 10*$\log_{10}$(*N**)
8	Higher out of band noise in the band of 1218 MHz to 3000 MHz Measured in 6 MHz channel bandwidth	For *N** ≤ 8: ≤ -55 + 10*$\log_{10}$(*N**) For *N** > 8: ≤ -60 + 10*$\log_{10}$(*N**)
Table Notes All equations are Ceiling(Power, 0.5) dBc. Use "Ceiling(2*Power) / 2" to get 0.5 steps from ceiling functions that return only integer values. For example Ceiling(-63.9, 0.5) = -63.5 dBc. Add 3 dB relaxation to the values specified above for noise and spurious emissions requirements in all channels with 603 MHz ≤ center frequency of the noise measurement ≤ 999 MHz. For example -73 dBc becomes -70 dBc. Add 5 dB relaxation to the values specified above for noise and spurious emissions requirements in all channels with 999 MHz < center frequency of the noise measurement ≤ 1215 MHz. For example -73 dBc becomes -68 dBc. Add 1 dB relaxation to the values specified above for noise and spurious emissions requirements in gap channels with center frequency below 600 MHz. For example -73 dBc becomes -72 dBc.		

7.5.10 Independence of Individual Channels Within Multiple Channels on a Single RF Port[38]

The CMTS output OFDM channel characteristics are collected in Table 7–39.

Table 7–39 - CMTS OFDM Channel Characteristic

Parameter	Value
Signal Type	OFDM
Maximum Encompassed Spectrum	190 MHz
Minimum Active Signal Bandwidth	22 MHz
Subcarrier Spacing / OFDM Symbol Rate FFT duration	25 kHz / 40 µs 50 kHz / 20 µs

[38] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

Parameter	Value
FFT Size	50 kHz: 4096 (4K FFT) 25 kHz: 8192 (8K FFT)
Maximum Number of Subcarriers per FFT	4K: 3800 8K: 7600
Maximum Number of Data Subcarriers per FFT	4K: 3800 – number of pilot tones - 8 PLC subcarriers 8K: 7600– number of pilot tones -16 PLC subcarriers
Continuous Pilot Tones	Continuous pilot placement is defined in Section 7.5.15.1.2. Minimum number of continuous pilots is 16 and the maximum number is 128. Locations of 8 continuous pilots are pre-defined with reference to the PLC location. Locations of remaining continuous pilots are defined using PLC messages.
Scattered Pilot Tones	4K FFT: One out of every 128 subcarriers, staggered by 1 8K FFT: One out of every 128 subcarriers, staggered by 2
Cyclic Prefix Options	Samples µs 192 0.9375 256 1.25 512 2.5 768 3.75 1024 5.0 * *sampling rate of 204.8 MHz*
OFDM Shaping Windowing Options	Raised cosine (Tukey) absorbed by CP Samples µs 0 0 64 0.3125 128 0.625 192 0.9375 256 1.25 * sampling rate of 204.8 MHz

A potential use of a CMTS is to provide a universal platform that can be used for high-speed data services or for video services. For this reason, it is essential that interleaver depth be set on a per channel basis to provide a suitable transmission format for either video or data as needed in normal operation. Any *N*-channel block of a CMTS MUST be configurable with at least two different interleaver depths, using any of the interleaver depths defined in Section 7.5.6.1. Although not as critical as per-channel interleaver depth control, there are strong benefits for the operator if the CMTS is provided with the ability to set RF power, center frequency, and modulation type on a per-channel basis.

1. A multiple-channel CMTS MUST be configurable with at least two different legacy interleaver depths among the legacy channels on an RF output port in addition to each OFDM channel which is configurable independently.
2. A multiple-channel CMTS MUST provide for 3 modes of carrier suppression of RF power for diagnostic and test purposes, see Table 7–37 for mode descriptions and carrier RF power suppression level.
3. A multiple-channel CMTS MAY provide for independent adjustment of RF power in a per channel basis for legacy channels with each RF carrier independently meeting the requirements defined in Table 7–37
4. A multiple-channel CMTS MAY provide for independent selection of center frequency on a per channel basis, thus providing for non-contiguous channel frequency assignment with each channel independently meeting the requirements in Table 7–37. A multiple-channel CMTS capable of generating nine or more channels on a single RF output port MUST provide for independent selection of center frequency with the ratio of number of active channels to gap channels in the encompassed spectrum being at least 2:1, and with each channel independently

meeting the requirements in Table 7–37 except for spurious emissions. A multiple-channel CMTS capable of generating nine or more channels on a single RF output port MUST meet the requirements of Table 7–37 when the ratio of number of active channels to gap channels in the encompassed spectrum is at least 4:1. (A ratio of number of active channels to gap channels of at least 4:1 provides that at least 80% of the encompassed spectrum contains active channels, and the number of gap channels is at most 20% of the encompassed spectrum.)

5. A multiple-channel CMTS MAY provide for independent selection of modulation order, either 64-QAM or 256-QAM, on a per channel basis for legacy channels, with each channel independently meeting the requirements in Table 7–37
6. A CMTS MUST provide a test mode of operation, for out-of-service testing, configured for N channels but generating one-CW-per-channel, one channel at a time at the center frequency of the selected channel; all other combined channels are suppressed. One purpose for this test mode is to support one method for testing the phase noise requirements of Table 7–37. As such, the CMTS generation of the CW test tone SHOULD exercise the signal generation chain to the fullest extent practicable, in such manner as to exhibit phase noise characteristics typical of actual operational performance; for example, repeated selection of a constellation symbol with power close to the constellation RMS level would seemingly exercise much of the modulation and up-conversion chain in a realistic manner. The CMTS test mode MUST be capable of generating the CW tone over the full range of Center Frequency in Table 7–37.

   In addition, the CMTS MUST be configurable in either one or both of the following conditions:

   - Two CW carriers on a single out-of-service DS OFDM channel, at selectable valid subcarrier center frequencies 20 MHz to 100 MHz apart within the selected channel. All other subcarriers within the selected out-of-service DS OFDM channel are suppressed.
   - One CW carrier on each of two separate but synchronized DS OFDM channels at selectable valid subcarrier center frequencies 20 MHz to 100 MHz apart within the selected channels. All other subcarriers within the selected out-of-service DS OFDM channel are suppressed.

   The purpose of this test mode is to support the ability to measure the downstream Symbol Clock Jitter requirements of Section 7.5.3.3, whereby the two CW carriers are mixed to create a difference product CW carrier at frequency (F2-F1), for which the jitter is measure directly and compared to the requirements stated in that section.
7. A CMTS MUST provide a test mode of operation, for out-of-service testing, generating one-CW-per-channel, at the center frequency of the selected channel, with all other N – 1 of the combined channels active and containing valid data modulation at operational power levels. One purpose for this test mode is to support one method for testing the phase noise requirements of Table 7–37. As such, the generation of the CW test tone SHOULD exercise the signal generation chain to the fullest extent practicable, in such manner as to exhibit phase noise characteristics typical of actual operational performance. For example, a repeated selection of a constellation symbol, with power close to the constellation RMS level, would seemingly exercise much of the modulation and upconversion chain in a realistic manner. For this test mode, it is acceptable that all channels operate at the same average power, including each of the N – 1 channels in valid operation, and the single channel with a CW tone at its center frequency. When operating in one-CW-per-channel test mode the CMTS MUST be capable of generating the CW tone over the full range of Center Frequency in Table 7–37.
8. A CMTS MUST be capable of glitchless reconfiguration over a range of active channels from ceiling[$7*N_{eq}/8$] to N_{eq}. Channels which are undergoing configuration changes are referred to as the "changed channels." The channels which are active and are not being reconfigured are referred to as the "continuous channels".

   Glitchless reconfiguration consists of any of the following actions while introducing no discontinuity or detriment to the continuous channels, where the modulator is operating in a valid DOCSIS 3.1-required mode both before and after the reconfiguration with an active number of channels staying in the range {ceiling[$7*N_{eq}/8$], N_{eq}}: adding and/or deleting one or more channels, and/or moving some channels to new RF carrier frequencies, and/or changing the interleaver depth, modulation, power level, or frequency on one or more channels. Any change in the modulation characteristics (power level, modulation density, interleaver parameters, center frequency) of a channel excuses that channel from being required to operate in a glitchless manner. For example, changing the power per channel of a given channel means that channel is not considered a continuous channel for the purposes of the glitchless modulation requirements. Glitchless operation is not required when N_{eq} is changed, even if no reconfigurations accompany the change in N_{eq}.

7.5.11 Cable Modem Receiver Input Requirements

The CM MUST be able to accept any range of OFDM subcarriers defined between Lower Frequency Boundary and Upper Frequency Boundary simultaneously. Active subcarrier frequencies, loading, and other OFDM characteristics are described by OFDM configuration settings and CM exclusion bands and profile definition. The OFDM signals and CM interfaces will have the characteristics and limitations defined in Table 7–40.

The CM MUST support the requirements in Table 7–40 unless otherwise noted.

Table 7–40 - Electrical Input to CM

Parameter	Value
Lower Frequency Boundary	258 MHz SHOULD support 108 MHz Note: applies if f_{umax} is 85 MHz or less
Upper Frequency Boundary	1218 MHz SHOULD support 1794 MHz
Frequency Boundary Assignment Granularity	25 kHz 8K FFT 50 kHz 4K FFT
Signal Type	OFDM
Single FFT Block Bandwidth	192 MHz
Minimum Contiguous-Modulated OFDM Bandwidth	24 MHz
Number of FFT Blocks	Support minimum of 2 FFT Blocks AND 24 SC-QAM Channels
Subcarrier Spacing/FFT Duration	25 kHz / 40 µs 50 kHz / 20 µs
Modulation Type	QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, 4096-QAM MAY support 8192-QAM, 16384-QAM
Variable Bit Loading	Support with subcarrier granularity Support zero bit loaded subcarriers
Total Input Power	< 40 dBmV, 54 MHz – 1.794 GHz * Assuming negligible power outside this range
Level Range (24 MHz min occupied BW) Equivalent PSD to SC-QAM of -15 dBmV to + 15 dBmV per 6 MHz	-9 dBmV/24 MHz to 21 dBmV/24 MHz
Maximum average power of any 24 MHz input to the CM from 54 MHz to 1218 MHz OR From 258 MHz to 1.794 GHz	Let **X** = Average power of lowest power 24 MHz BW for demodulation Additional Demodulated Bandwidth, B_{remond} : ≤ Min [**X** + 10 + 10*log**(**B_{remond}/24) ; 21**+** 10*log**(**B_{remond}/24)] Additional Non-Demodulated Bandwidth, $B_{no\text{-}demod}$: ≤ Min [**X** + 10 + 10*log**(**$B_{no\text{-}demod}$/24) ; 26**+** 10*log**(**$B_{no\text{-}demod}$/24)] For up to 12 MHz of occupied bandwidth (analog, OOB, QAM, OFDM) ≤ Min [**X** + 10 + 10*log**(**$B_{no\text{-}demod}$/24) ; 21**+** 10*log**(**$B_{no\text{-}demod}$/24)] for all remaining bandwidth Level range does not imply anything about BER performance or capability vs. QAM. CM BER performance is separately described.
Input Impedance	75 ohms

Parameter	Value
Input Return Loss	> 6 dB (258 MHz – 1218 MHz) > 6 dB (108 MHz – 1218 MHz) Note: Applies when lower frequency boundary is 108 MHz > 6 dB (258 MHz – 1.794 GHz) Note: Applies when upper frequency boundary is 1.794 GHz
Connector	F connector per [ISO/IEC-61169-24] or [SCTE 02]

7.5.12 Cable Modem Receiver Capabilities

The required level for CM downstream post-FEC error ratio is defined as less than or equal to 10^{-6} PER (packet error ratio) with 1500 byte Ethernet packets. This section describes the conditions at which the CM is required to meet this error ratio.

7.5.12.1 CM Error Ratio Performance in AWGN Channel

Implementation loss of the CM MUST be such that the CM achieves the required error ratio when operating at a CNR as shown in Table 7–41, under input load and channel conditions as follows:

- Any valid transmit combination (frequency, subcarrier clock frequency, transmit window, cyclic prefix, pilot, PLC, subcarrier exclusions, interleaving depth, multiple modulation profile configuration, etc.) as defined in this spec.
- P_{6AVG} (the measured channel power divided by number of occupied CEA channels) ≤ 15 dBmV.
- Up to fully loaded spectrum of 54 - 1218 MHz, including up to 48 analog channels placed lower in the spectrum than the digital channels.
- Power in (both above and below) 4 adjacent 6 MHz channels ≤ P_{6AVG}+3 dB.
- Power in any 6 MHz channel over the spectrum ≤ P_{6AVG}+6 dB.
- Peak envelope power in any analog channel over the spectrum ≤ P_{6AVG}+6 dB.
- Average power per channel across spectrum ≤ P_{6AVG}+3 dB.
- OFDM channel phase noise as in CMTS spec.
- No other artifacts (reflections, burst noise, tilt, etc.).

Table 7–41 - CM Minimum CNR Performance in AWGN Channel

Constellation	CNR[1,2] (dB) Up to 1 GHz	CNR[1,2] (dB) 1 GHz to 1.2 GHz	Min P_{6AVG} dBmV
4096	41.0	41.5	-6
2048	37.0	37.5	-9
1024	34.0	34.0	-12
512	30.5	30.5	-12
256	27.0	27.0	-15
128	24.0	24.0	-15
64	21.0	21.0	-15
16	15.0	15.0	-15

Table Notes:

Note 1 CNR is defined here as total signal power in occupied bandwidth divided by total noise in occupied bandwidth

Note 2 Channel CNR is adjusted to the required level by measuring the source inband noise including phase noise component and adding the required delta noise from an external AWGN generator

Note 3 Applicable to an OFDM channel with 192 MHz of occupied bandwidth

7.5.13 Physical Layer Link Channel (PLC)

This section contains the description of the Physical layer Link Channel (PLC) that the CMTS follows during the construction of the PLC.

The aim of the PLC is for the CMTS to convey to the CM the physical properties of the OFDM channel. In a blind acquisition, that is, in an acquisition without prior knowledge of the physical parameters of the channel, the CM first acquires the PLC, and from this extract the parameters needed to acquire the complete OFDM channel.

7.5.13.1 PLC Placement

The CMTS MUST transmit a PLC for every downstream OFDM channel.

The CMTS MUST place the PLC at the center of a 6 MHz encompassed spectrum with no excluded subcarriers. For 4K FFT OFDM, this 6 MHz will contain 56 subcarriers followed by the 8 PLC subcarriers followed by another 56 subcarriers. For 8K FFT OFDM, this 6 MHz will contain 112 subcarriers followed by the 16 PLC subcarriers followed by another 112 subcarriers.

The CMTS MUST place the 6 MHz encompassed spectrum containing the PLC on a 1 MHz grid, that is, the center frequency of the lowest frequency subcarrier of the 6 MHz encompassed spectrum containing the PLC has to be an integer when the frequency is measured in units of MHz.

7.5.13.2 PLC Structure[39]

The CMTS MUST place the PLC so that it occupies the same set of contiguous subcarriers in every OFDM symbol.

The CMTS MUST place 8 OFDM subcarriers in the PLC of every OFDM symbol when using 4K FFT OFDM (i.e., a subcarrier spacing of 50 kHz).

The CMTS MUST place 16 OFDM subcarriers in the PLC of every OFDM symbol when using 8K FFT OFDM (i.e., a subcarrier spacing of 25 kHz).

Table 7–42 - PLC components

DFT size	Subcarrier spacing	Number of PLC subcarriers (N_p)
4096	50 kHz	8
8192	25 kHz	16

The CMTS MUST use a 16-QAM constellation for the PLC subcarriers.

The CMTS MUST construct the PLC as 8 symbols of preamble followed by 120 symbols of data subcarriers, as shown in Figure 7-57.

[39] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

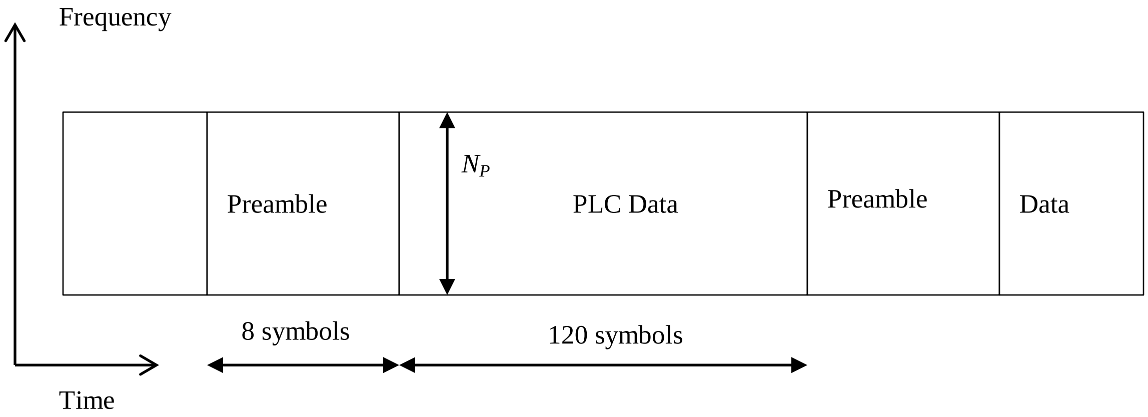


Figure 7-57 - Structure of the PLC

The CMTS MUST place the PLC at the center of a 6 MHz of active frequency range. For 4K FFT OFDM, this 6 MHz channel, in the increasing order of frequency, will consist of 56 subcarriers followed by the 8 PLC subcarriers followed by another 56 subcarriers. For 8K FFT OFDM, this 6 MHz channel, in the increasing order of frequency, will consist of 112 subcarriers followed by the 16 PLC subcarriers followed by another 112 subcarriers.

The CMTS MUST NOT insert any exclusion zones or excluded subcarriers within this 6 MHz band that contains the PLC.

The CMTS MUST insert 8 continuous pilots in this 6 MHz bandwidth, 4 on each side of the PLC, as defined in the section on downstream pilots.

The CMTS MUST interleave the PLC subcarriers on their own, as described in the section on "PLC Interleaving".

The CMTS MUST NOT interleave the PLC preamble.

The CMTS MUST synchronize the scattered pilot pattern to the PLC preamble as defined in Section 7.5.15 such that in the OFDM symbol that follows the last symbol of the preamble sequence, the subcarrier next to the highest-frequency subcarrier in the PLC is a scattered pilot.

The CMTS MUST NOT insert any scattered pilots or continuous pilots within the PLC frequency band.

The CMTS MUST synchronize the downstream data randomizer to the PLC preamble as described in Section 7.5.5.3. That is, the CMTS MUST initialize the downstream randomizer just before the lowest frequency data subcarrier of the first OFDM symbol following the preamble.

The CMTS MUST synchronize the downstream PLC randomizer to the PLC preamble as described in Section 7.5.13.8. That is, the CMTS must initialize the downstream PLC randomizer just before the lowest frequency PLC subcarrier of the first OFDM symbol following the preamble.

The CMTS MUST place the 6 MHz bandwidth containing the PLC within the active bandwidth of the OFDM channel.

Two possible locations for the PLC channel are illustrated in the example of Figure 7-58. In this example there are three contiguous OFDM spectral bands in the 192 MHz channel, of width 22, 12 and 5 MHz. There are two exclusion zones between these. The spectrum outside these bands is also excluded.

It is not necessary to place the PLC in the largest contiguous spectral segment of the OFDM channel. The 6 MHz channel containing the PLC at its center may be anywhere provided it contains 6 MHz of spectrum without any excluded subcarriers. In the example given the one possible location for the PLC channel is in the 12 MHz wide segment.

Since the downstream channel will contain a minimum of 22 MHz of contiguous OFDM spectrum, there will always be a spectral band to place the PLC. It may be noted that it not necessary to place the PLC at the center of the 22 MHz bandwidth.

The CMTS is expected to place the PLC in part of the spectrum that is less susceptible to noise and interference.

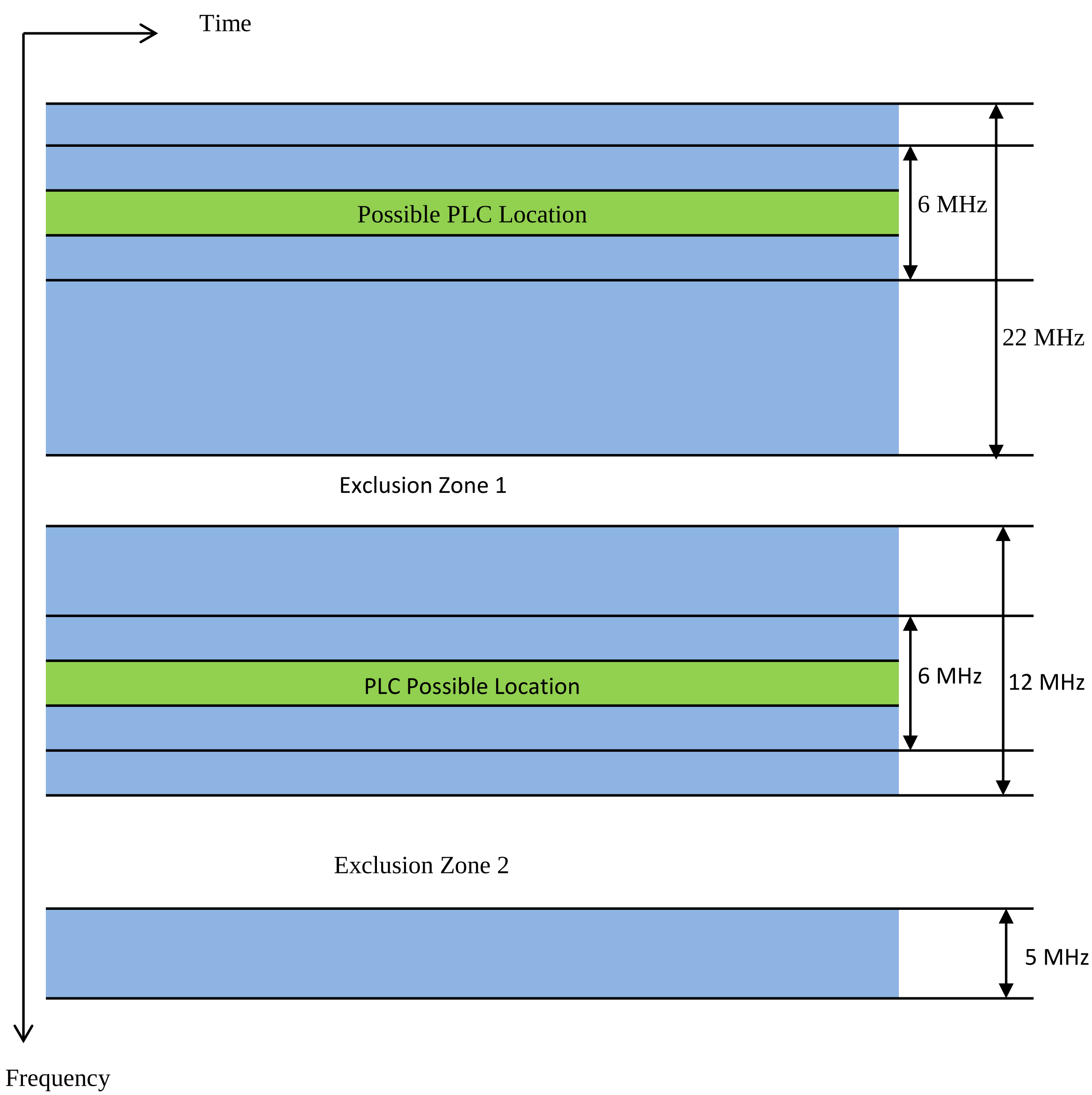


Figure 7-58 - Examples of PLC placement

The CMTS MUST generate the PLC as shown in Figure 7-59.

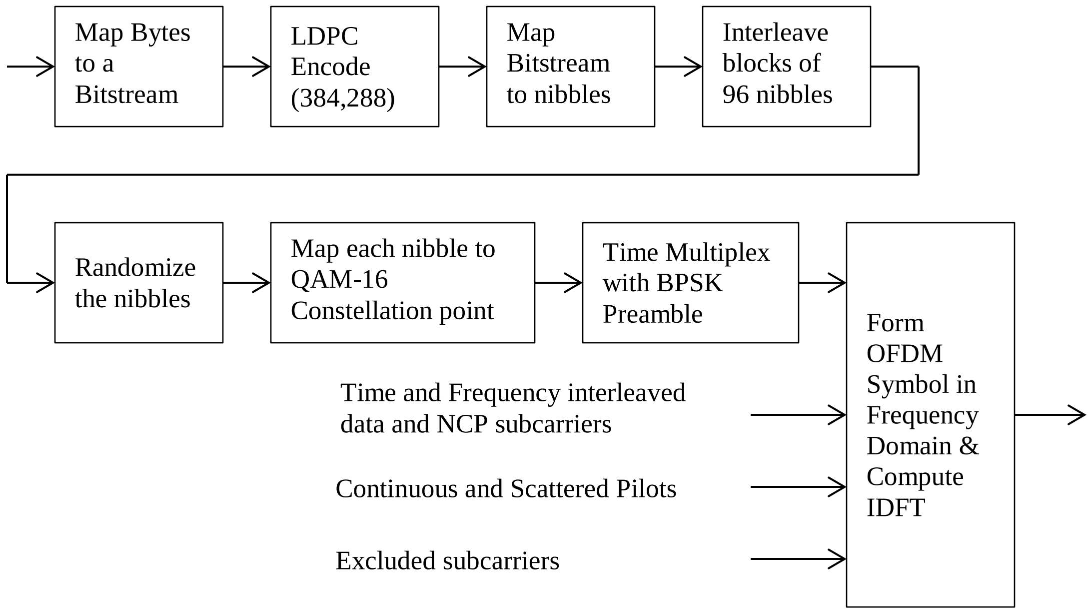


Figure 7-59 - Physical Layer Operations for Forming the PLC Subcarriers

7.5.13.3 PLC Preamble Modulation

The CMTS MUST modulate the subcarriers in the PLC preamble using binary phase-shift keying (BPSK), as described in this section.

For 4K FFT, the preamble size is 8 subcarriers. Thus, an array of size (8 x 8) is defined as follows:

Table 7–43 - PLC preamble for 4K FFT

	Symbol 1	Symbol 2	Symbol 3	Symbol 4	Symbol 5	Symbol 6	Symbol 7	Symbol 8
Subcarrier 1	0	0	1	0	1	1	0	1
Subcarrier 2	1	0	0	0	1	1	1	0
Subcarrier 3	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
Subcarrier 4	0	1	0	0	0	1	1	0
Subcarrier 5	1	1	1	0	1	1	1	1
Subcarrier 6	1	0	0	0	0	0	0	1
Subcarrier 7	0	1	0	1	0	0	1	1
Subcarrier 8	0	0	1	0	0	0	1	1

Table 7–44 - PLC preamble for 8K FFT

	Symbol 1	Symbol 2	Symbol 3	Symbol 4	Symbol 5	Symbol 6	Symbol 7	Symbol 8
Subcarrier 1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0	0
Subcarrier 2	0	1	1	0	0	1	0	0
Subcarrier 3	0	1	1	1	0	0	0	1
Subcarrier 4	0	0	0	1	0	1	1	1
Subcarrier 5	1	1	0	0	1	0	1	0
Subcarrier 6	0	0	0	1	1	0	0	1
Subcarrier 7	0	1	1	1	0	1	1	0

	Symbol 1	Symbol 2	Symbol 3	Symbol 4	Symbol 5	Symbol 6	Symbol 7	Symbol 8
Subcarrier 8	1	1	1	0	0	0	1	0
Subcarrier 9	0	1	1	1	1	0	0	1
Subcarrier 10	1	1	1	1	0	1	1	1
Subcarrier 11	1	1	1	0	0	0	0	0
Subcarrier 12	1	1	0	1	0	1	0	1
Subcarrier 13	1	1	0	0	1	1	0	0
Subcarrier 14	1	0	1	1	1	0	1	0
Subcarrier 15	0	1	0	1	1	0	0	0
Subcarrier 16	0	0	1	0	0	0	0	1

The CMTS MUST map each of the above binary bits to a BPSK constellation point in the complex plane using the following transformation:

0 → (1 + j0)

1 → (-1 + j0)

7.5.13.4 PHY Parameters Carried by the PLC[40]

The PLC carries two sets of PHY parameters from the CMTS to cable modems: the Downstream Profile Descriptor and the OFDM Channel Descriptor. Contents of each of these descriptors are described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]. This section contains only a brief description of the physical layer parameters carried by the PLC. For formatting and other details, reference is made to the MULPI specification.

The inverse discrete Fourier transform that defines the OFDM signal at the CMTS is given by the following equation:

$$x(i) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{N}} \sum_{k=0}^{N-1} X(k) \exp\left(\frac{j2\pi i\left(k-\frac{N}{2}\right)}{N}\right); \text{ for } i = 0, 1, \dots, N-1 \qquad (1)$$

The sampling rate in the previous equation is 204.8 Msamples/s and the value of N is either 4096 or 8192. The CMTS MUST specify this value of N via the PLC.

The CMTS MUST define, via the PLC, the frequency of the subcarrier $X(0)$ in equation (1) as a 32-bit positive integer in units of Hz.

The PLC subcarriers constitute a set of contiguous subcarriers given by:

$$\{X(k),\ k = L, L+1, \dots, L+N_P-1\} \qquad (2)$$

The CMTS MUST define the value of L to define the location of the PLC within an OFDM channel.

The CMTS MUST define the locations of the continuous pilots, excluding the eight predefined ones, via the PLC.

The CMTS MUST define the locations of excluded subcarriers via the PLC.

The CMTS MUST define the bit loading profile for all 4096 or 8192 subcarriers of equation (1), excluding continuous pilots and excluded subcarriers, via the PLC.

The CMTS MUST use the indices k of equation (1) to specify the locations of subcarriers in all of the above definitions.

In addition to above, the CMTS MUST define the following physical parameters of the OFDM channel:

- Cyclic prefix length (five possible settings)
- Roll-off (five possible settings)
- Time interleaver depth (any integer from 1 to 32)

[40] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1165-1 on 12/10/14 by JB.

- Modulation of the NCP (QPSK, 16-QAM or 64-QAM)

7.5.13.5 Mapping of Bytes to a Bitstream

The CMTS MUST convert the stream of bytes received by the PLC into a stream of bits, MSB first, as illustrated in Figure 7-60.

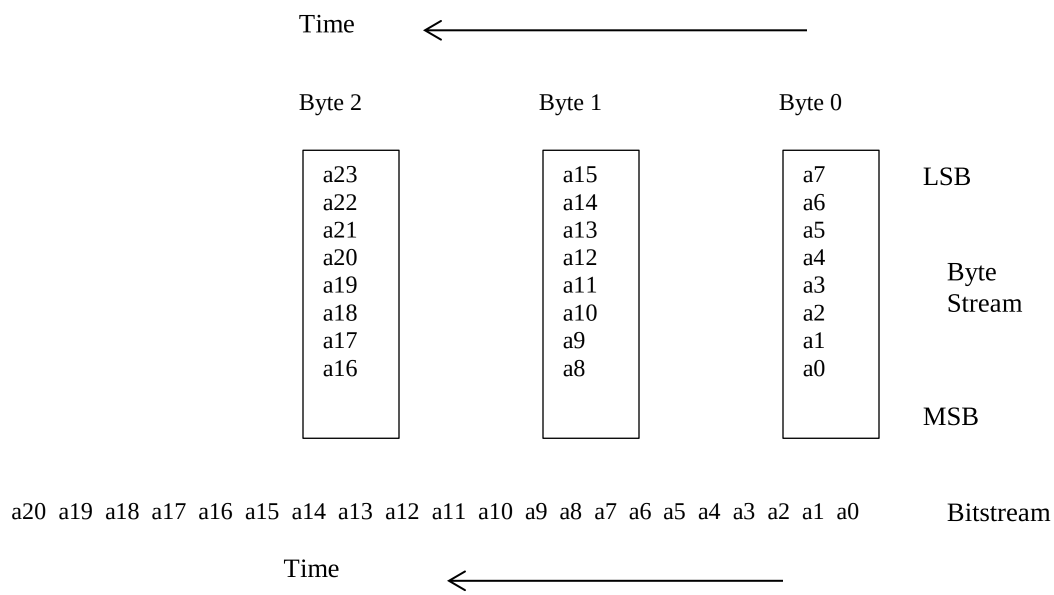


Figure 7-60 - Mapping Bytes into a Bitstream for FEC Encoding

7.5.13.6 Forward Error Correction code for the PLC

The CMTS MUST encode the PLC data using (384,288) puncturing LDPC encoder, see Section 7.4.3.3 for the definition of puncturing encoder.

The puncturing encoder uses the same mother encoder for fine ranging FEC (Section 7.4.15.2.3), that is the rate 3/5 (480,288) LDPC encoder listed by Table 7–15.

Denote the information bits sent to the mother code encoder by $(a_0, \cdots, a_{287})$ and let the encoder output being $(a_0, \cdots, a_{287}, b_{288}, \cdots, b_{479})$, where $b_{288}, \cdots, b_{479}$ are parity-check bits. The coordinates to be deleted by the puncturing step are:

- Period 1: 48 consecutive coordinates $a_{48}, \cdots, a_{95}$
- Period 2: 48 consecutive coordinates $b_{384}, \cdots, b_{431}$

NOTE: Also see Figure 7-78.

The puncturing is described in Figure 7-61.

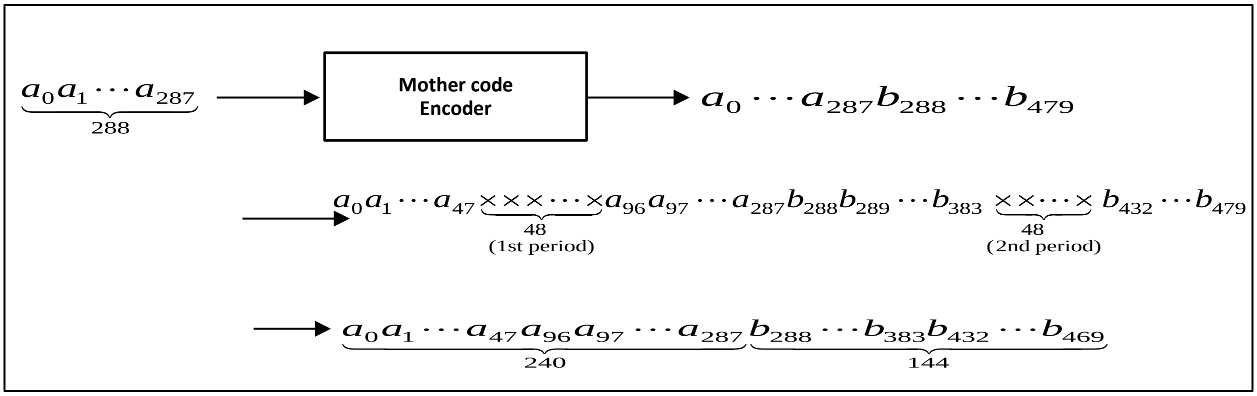


Figure 7-61 - Puncturing Encoder for the PLC FEC

7.5.13.7 Block Interleaving of the PLC Subcarriers [41]

The preceding section shows 288 data bits entering the LDPC encoder and 384 encoded bits exiting the LDPC encoder. This sequence is in effect is time-reversed order. The time-ordered sequence takes the form shown in the figure below.

The CMTS MUST map these 384 encoded bits into 96 4-bit nibbles $\{u_i, \quad i = 0,1,\ldots\ ,95\}$ as described below using Figure 7-62 before interleaving.

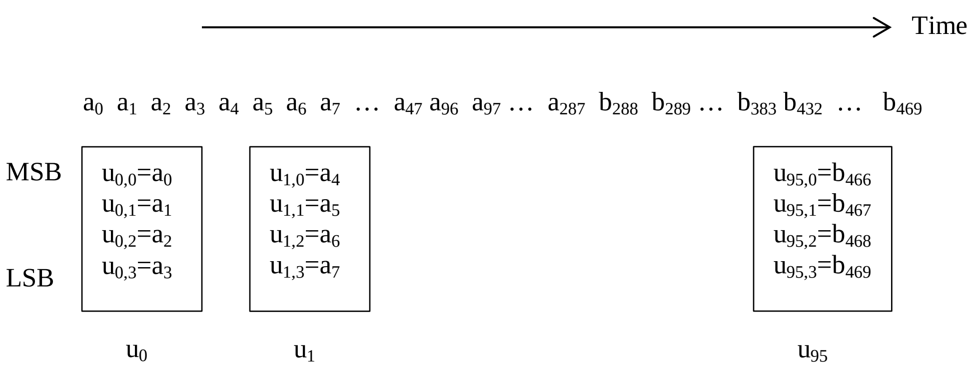


Figure 7-62 - Mapping Encoded Bitstream into a Stream of Nibbles

The CMTS MUST interleave this 96-nibble sequence {u0 u1 u2...u95} as described below.

For 4K FFT, the CMTS MUST use an (8x12) array.

The CMTS MUST write the values u_i along the rows of this two-dimensional array, as shown in Figure 7-63.

[41] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1187-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

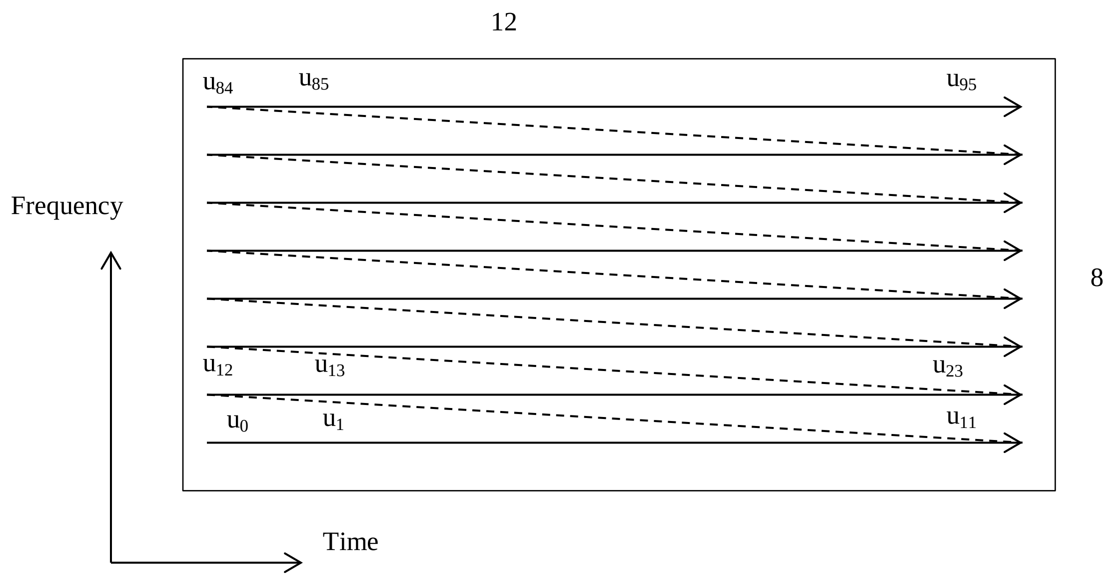


Figure 7-63 - Block Interleaving of PLC Subcarriers for 4K FFT

The CMTS MUST then read this two-dimensional array along vertical columns to form the two-dimensional sequence $\{v_{t,f}\ t = 0, 1, \dots, 11 \text{ and } f = 0, 1, \dots, 7\}$,. This operation is mathematically represented as:

$$v_{t,f} = u_{t+12f}$$

The CMTS MUST map each of the 8-point sequence given below to the 8 successive PLC subcarriers of an OFDM symbol after randomization described in the next section.

$$V_t = \{v_{t,f},\ f = 0, 1, \dots, 7\} \text{ for 12 successive OFDM symbols } t = 0, 1, \dots, 11$$

Therefore each FEC codeword will occupy the PLC segment of twelve successive 4K FFT OFDM symbols. There will be ten such codewords in an 128-symbol PLC frame, including the 8-symbol preamble.

The CMTS MUST map ten complete FEC codewords into one 4K FFT PLC frame.

For 8K FFT, the CMTS MUST use a (16 x 6) array. The CMTS MUST write the values u_i along the rows of this two-dimensional array, as shown Figure 7-64.

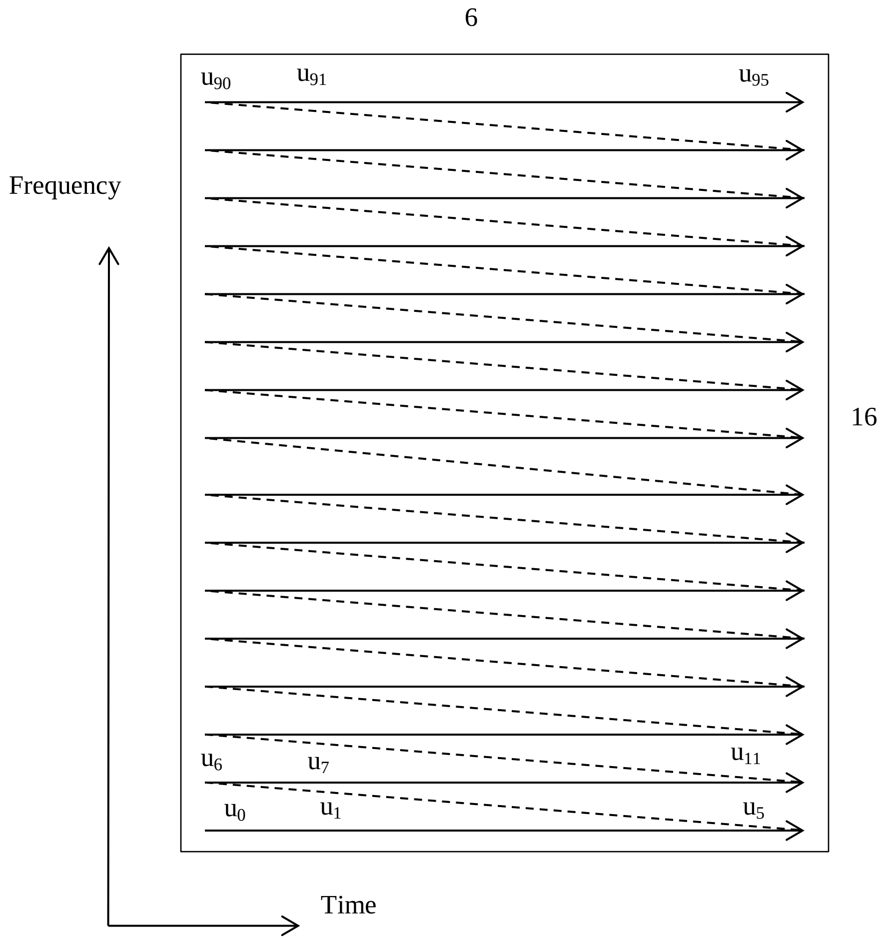


Figure 7-64 - Block Interleaving of PLC Subcarriers for 8K FFT

The CMTS MUST then read this two-dimensional array along vertical columns to form the two-dimensional sequence {v_(t,f) ,t=0,1,…,5 and f=0,1,…,15}.This operation is mathematically represented as:

$$v_{t,f} = u_{t+6f}$$

The CMTS MUST map each of the 16-point sequence given below to the 16 successive PLC subcarriers of an OFDM symbol after randomization described in the next section.

$V_t = \{v_{t,f},\ f = 0, 1, \dots, 15\}$ for 6 successive OFDM symbols t =0, 1, … , 5

Therefore, each FEC codeword will occupy the PLC segment of six successive 8K FFT OFDM symbols. There will be twenty such codewords in a 128-symbol PLC frame, including the 8-symbol preamble.

The CMTS MUST map twenty complete FEC codewords into one 8K FFT PLC frame.

7.5.13.8 Randomizing the PLC Subcarriers

The CMTS MUST randomize QAM symbols forming the data section of the PLC frame using a copy of the linear feedback shift register in GF[2^{12}] used for randomizing the data subcarriers. This is shown in Figure 7-65.

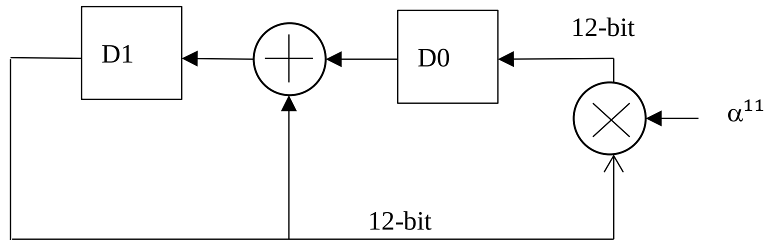


Figure 7-65 - Linear Feedback Shift Register for PLC Randomization

The LFSR is defined by the following polynomial in GF[2^{12}].

$$x^2 + x + \alpha^{11}$$

The GF[2^{12}] is defined through polynomial algebra modulo the polynomial:

$$\alpha^{12} + \alpha^6 + \alpha^4 + \alpha + 1$$

This LFSR is initialized to the hexadecimal numbers given below:

D0 = "4A7"

D1 = "B4C"

The CMTS MUST initialize the LFSR with the above two 12-bit numbers at the beginning of the first OFDM symbol following the PLC preamble. The CMTS MUST clock the LFSR once after randomizing one PLC subcarrier. The CMTS MUST randomize each subcarrier through an exclusive-OR operation of the 4 bits representing the subcarrier ($v_{t,f}$) with the four LSBs of register D0.

The first subcarrier to be randomized is the lowest frequency subcarrier of the PLC in the OFDM symbol immediately after the preamble. This will be randomized using the four LSBs of the initialized D0, namely 0x7. The LFSR will be clocked once after randomizing each PLC subcarrier of the OFDM symbol. After randomizing the highest frequency PLC subcarrier of an OFDM symbol the CMTS MUST clock the LFSR before randomizing the lowest frequency PLC subcarrier in the next OFDM symbol.

The CMTS MUST use the bit ordering given below to perform randomization. The four LSBs of D0 are defined as the coefficients of $\{\alpha^3\alpha^2\alpha^1\alpha^0\}$ of the Galois field polynomial representing D0. The LSB is defined as the coefficient of α^0 of the polynomial representing D0. The ordering of the four bits representing the subcarrier is defined with reference to Figure 7-62. Assume that the FEC block shown in Figure 7-62 is the first FEC block in the PLC frame. Then, since the location of the first nibble does not change as a result of interleaving:

$$v_{0,0} = \{a_0\ a_1\ a_2\ a_3\}$$

Then the randomization operation (i.e., exclusive-OR with 0x7) is given by:

$$\{y_0, y_1, y_2, y_3\} = \{a_0 + 1,\ a_1 + 1,\ a_2 + 1,\ a_3 + 0\}$$

The addition operations in the above equation are defined in GF[2], that is, these are bit-wise exclusive-OR operations. The LFSR is clocked once before randomizing the next nibble $v_{0,1}$.

The CMTS MUST NOT randomize the PLC preamble.

7.5.13.9 Mapping to 16-QAM Subcarriers

The CMTS MUST map each randomized nibble {y0 y1 y2 y3} into a complex number using the 16-QAM constellation mapping shown in Figure A–5.

The CMTS MUST multiply the real and imaginary parts by $1/\sqrt{10}$ to ensure that mean-square value of the QAM constellation is unity.

7.5.13.10 PLC Timestamp Reference Point[42]

The PLC subcarriers following the preamble may contain a timestamp.

The CMTS MUST define this timestamp with reference to the first OFDM symbol following the preamble if such a timestamp exists. This OFDM symbol is indicated by an arrow in Figure 7-66.

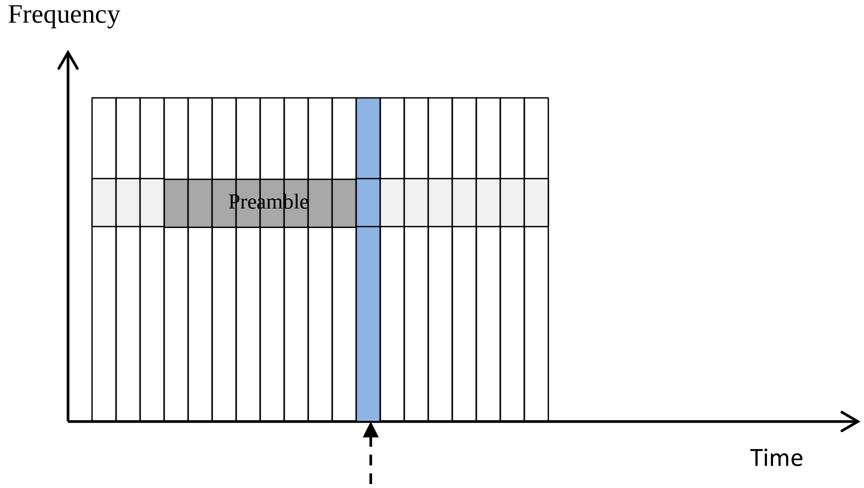


Figure 7-66 - Time - Frequency Plane Representation of PLC Timestamp Synchronization

Time domain version of the OFDM symbol is shown in Figure 7-66. The inverse discrete Fourier transform of the symbol of Figure 7-66 results in the set of 4096 or 8192 samples occupying the FFT duration shown. After this the CMTS will introduce a configurable cyclic prefix (CP), window the symbol and overlap successive symbols in the time domain.

The CMTS MUST use the time of the first sample of the FFT duration as the timestamp.

To clarify this further, individual time domain samples are also shown in Figure 7-67.

(This is for illustration only; actual samples are complex-valued.) The sample rate is 204.8 Msamples/s. The dotted arrow points to the first sample of the FFT symbol duration.

[42] Replaced Figure 7-64 per PHYv3.1-N-14.1167-1 by JB on 12/10/14.

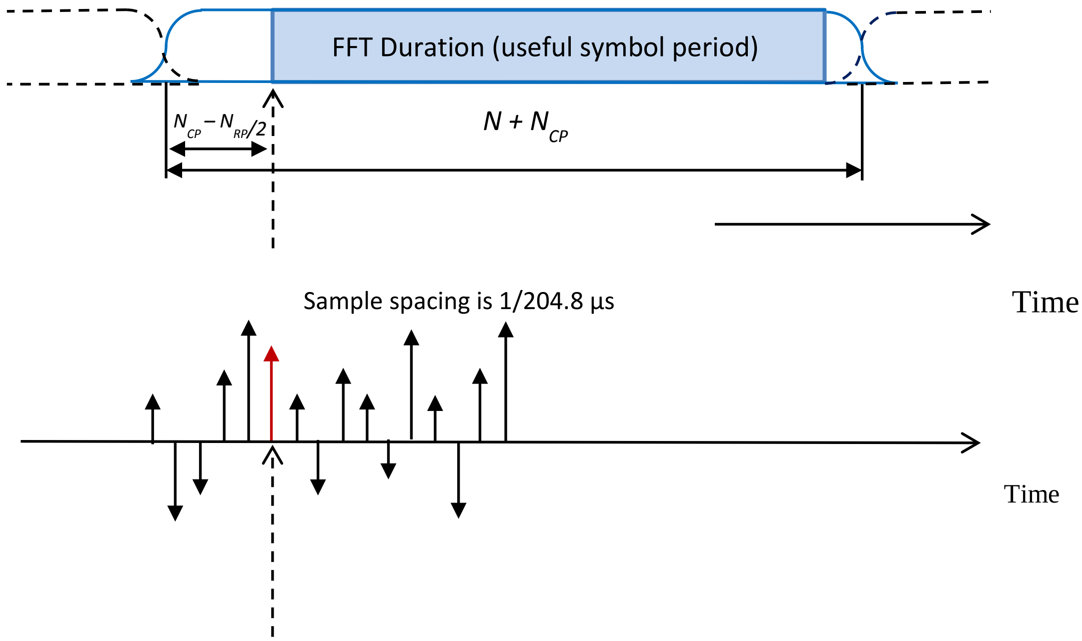


Figure 7-67 - Time Domain Representation of PLC Timestamp Synchronization

7.5.14 Next Codeword Pointer

7.5.14.1 Mapping of Bytes to Bits

Each NCP consists of three bytes as defined in Section 8.3.4. The first byte (Byte 0) contains the profile identifier as the four MSBs and four control bits as the four LSBs. The other two bytes (Byte 1 and Byte 2) contain the start pointer.

The CMTS MUST map the three NCP bytes into 24-bit serial bitstream {a_23 a_22 … a_0} for the purpose of LDPC encoding, as shown in Figure 7-68. Note that the LDPC encoder is also defined using the same bit pattern $\{a_{23}\ a_{22}\ \ldots\ a_0\}$.

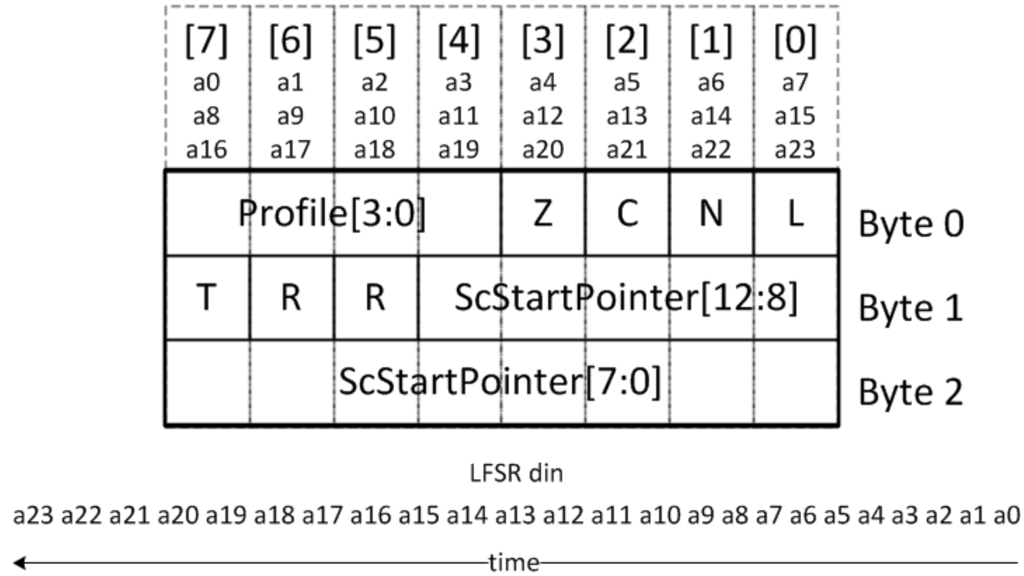


Figure 7-68 - Mapping NCP Bytes into a Bitstream for FEC Encoding

Figure 7-69 depicts the NCP bytes to input stream bits mapping after FEC encoding, including the FEC parity bits. FEC parity bits are specified in Section 7.5.14.2.

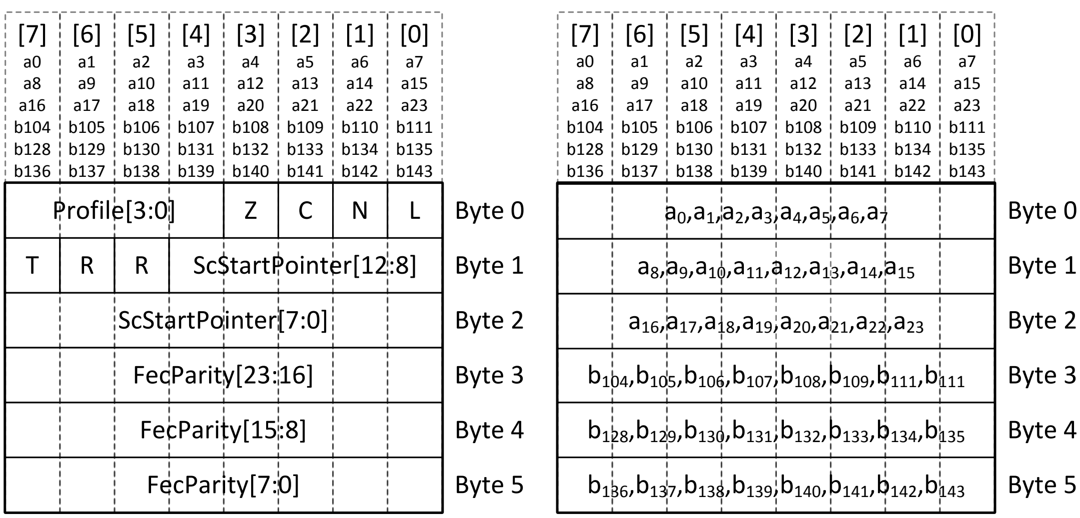
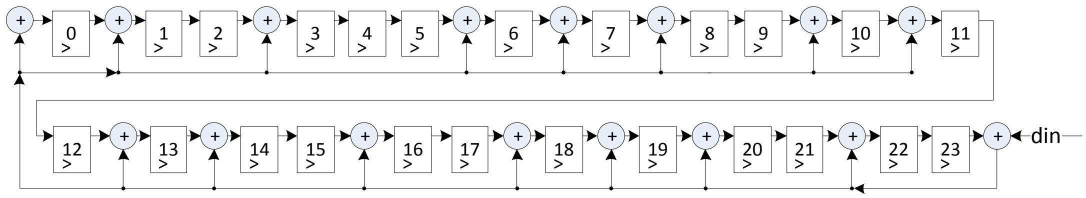


Figure 7-69 - Mapping FEC Encoded NCP Bytes into a Bitstream

7.5.14.1.1 CRC-24-D

The last NCP in the NCP field of each symbol contains a CRC-24-D message which is calculated across all NCPs in the NCP field of the symbol as specified in Annex E.



x^24 + x^22 + x^20 + x^19 + x^18 + x^16 + x^14 + x^13 + x^11 + x^10 + x^8 + x^7 + x^6 + x^3 + x + 1

Figure 7-70 - Polynomial Sequence for CRC-24-D Encoding

NCP data is fed into the CRC-24-D encoder in the same order as the FEC encoder, as depicted in Figure 7-71:

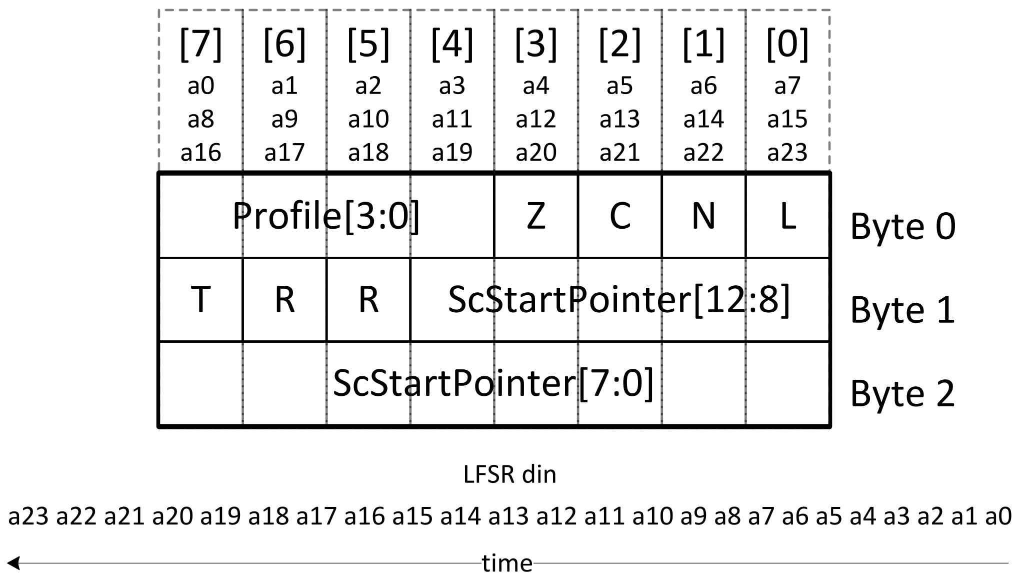


Figure 7-71 - Mapping NCP Data into the CRC-24-D Encoder

The 24-bit CRC output is represented as:

```
                MSB           LSB
CRC-24-D-LFSR[23:0]= p0, p1,.. p22, p23
```

Figure 7-72 describes the mapping of the CRC-NCP bytes to input bitstream including the FEC parity bits.

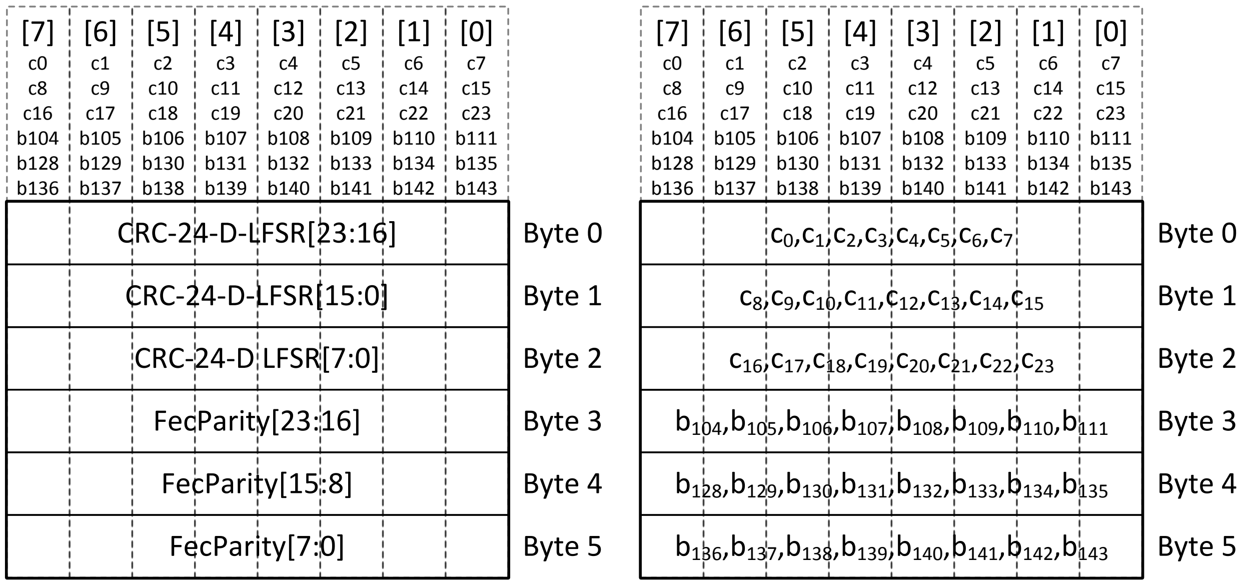


Figure 7-72 - Mapping FEC Encoded CRC-NCP Bytes into a Bitstream

7.5.14.2 Forward Error Correction code for the NCP

The CMTS MUST encode the 24 information bits of a Next Codeword Pointer using (48, 24) shortening and puncturing LDPC encoder, see Section 7.4.15.1.4 for the definition of shortening and puncturing encoder.

The shortening puncturing encoder uses the same mother encoder for initial ranging FEC (Section 7.4.3.3), that is the rate 1/2 (160, 80) LDPC encoder listed by Table 7–14.

Denote the information bits sent to the mother code encoder by $(a_0, \cdots, a_{79})$ and let the encoder output being $(a_0, \cdots, a_{79}, b_{80}, \cdots, b_{159})$, where $b_{80}, \cdots, b_{159}$ are parity-check bits. Then the shortening and puncturing steps can be described as follows; also see Figure 7-73 - Shortening and Puncturing Encoder for the NCP FEC:

The shortening step fills 0 to 56 consecutive coordinate starting at position 24, i.e., let $a_{24} = a_{25} = \cdots = a_{79} = 0$. The rest 24 bits i.e., $a_0, \cdots, a_{23}$, are NCP information data.

The coordinates to be deleted by the puncturing step are:

- Period 1: 24 consecutive coordinates $b_{80}, \cdots, b_{103}$
- Period 2: 16 consecutive coordinates $b_{112}, \cdots, b_{127}$
- Period 3: 16 consecutive coordinates $b_{144}, \cdots, b_{159}$

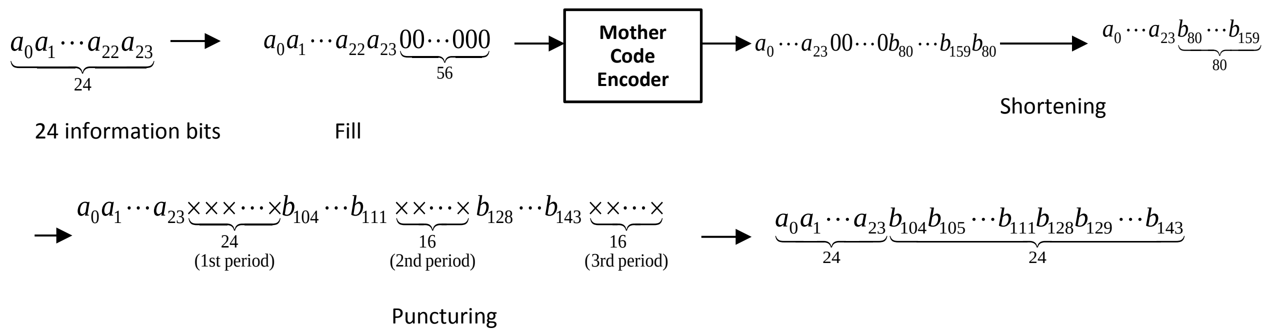


Figure 7-73 - Shortening and Puncturing Encoder for the NCP FEC

7.5.14.3 Mapping LDPC Encoded Bits into OFDM Subcarriers

The LDPC encoder outputs a stream of 48 bits:

$\{b_{143}\ b_{142}\ \ldots\ b_{128}\ b_{111}\ b_{110} \ldots b_{104}\ a_{23}\ a_{22}\ \ldots\ a_0\}$

The NCP QAM constellation can be a member of the set {QPSK, QAM-16, QAM-64}.

For QAM-64 the CMTS MUST map the LDPC encoded bits into eight 6-bit QAM constellation points as defined below:

$\{y_{0,0}\ y_{0,1}\ y_{0,2}\ y_{0,3}\ y_{0,4}\ y_{0,5}\} = \{a_5\ a_4\ a_3\ a_2\ a_1\ a_0\}$

$\{y_{1,0}\ y_{1,1}\ y_{1,2}\ y_{1,3}\ y_{1,4}\ y_{1,5}\} = \{a_{11}\ a_{10}\ a_9\ a_8\ a_7\ a_6\}$

.
.
.

$\{y_{7,0}\ y_{7,1}\ y_{7,2}\ y_{7,3}\ y_{7,4}\ y_{7,5}\} = \{b_{143}\ b_{142}\ b_{141}\ b_{140}\ b_{139}\ b_{138}\}$

The mapping of these 6-bit integers to points in the complex plane is given by the figure below. Hexadecimal notation has been used to represent the 6-bit numbers$\{y_{i,0}y_{i,1}y_{i,2}y_{i,3}y_{i,4}y_{i,5}\}$.

The CMTS MUST multiply the real and imaginary parts by $1/\sqrt{42}$ to ensure that mean-square value of the QAM constellation is unity.

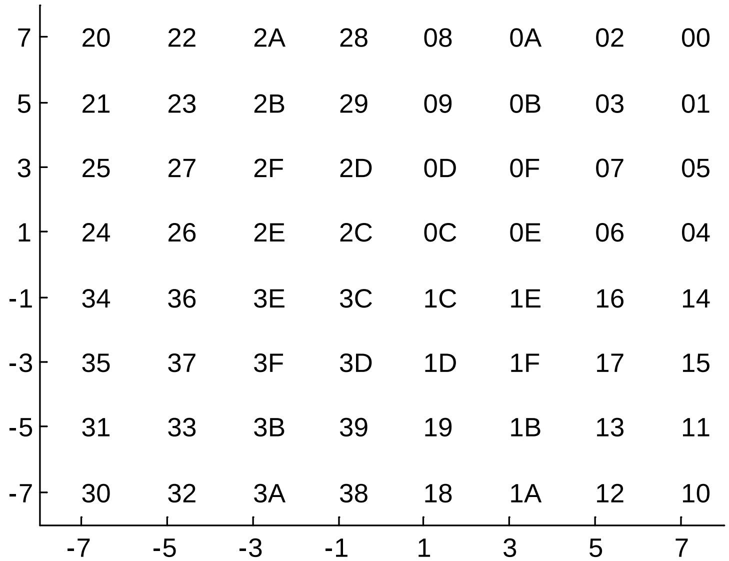


Figure 7-74 - 64-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_{i,0}y_{i,1}y_{i,2}y_{i,3}y_{i,4}y_{i,5}\}$

For QAM-16 the CMTS MUST map the LDPC encoded bits into twelve 4-bit QAM constellation points as defined below:

$\{y_{0,0}\ y_{0,1}\ y_{0,2}\ y_{0,3}\} = \{a_3\ a_2\ a_1\ a_0\}$

$\{y_{1,0}\ y_{1,1}\ y_{1,2}\ y_{1,3}\} = \{a_7\ a_6\ a_5\ a_4\}$

.
.
.

$\{y_{11,0}\ y_{11,1}\ y_{11,2}\ y_{11,3}\} = \{b_{143}\ b_{142}\ b_{141}\ b_{140}\}$

The mapping of these 4-bit integers to points in the complex plane is given by the figure below. Hexadecimal notation has been used to represent the 4-bit numbers$\{y_{i,0}y_{i,1}y_{i,2}y_{i,3}\}$.

The CMTS MUST multiply the real and imaginary parts by $1/\sqrt{10}$ to ensure that mean-square value of the QAM constellation is unity.

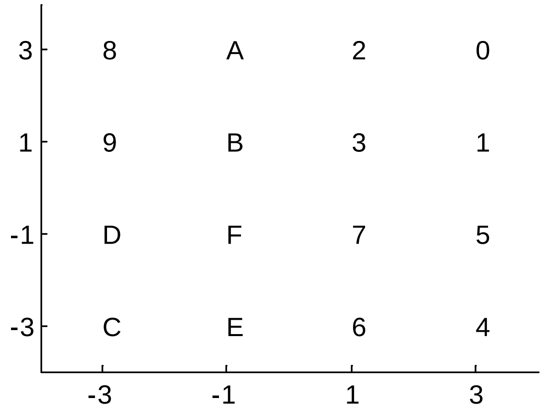


Figure 7-75 - 16QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_{i,0}\ y_{i,1}\ y_{i,2}\ y_{i,3}\}$

For QPSK the CMTS MUST map the LDPC encoded bits into twenty four 2-bit QAM constellation points as defined below:

$$\{y_{0,0}\ y_{0,1}\} = \{a_1\ a_0\}$$

$$\{y_{1,0}\ y_{1,1}\} = \{a_3\ a_2\}$$

.
.
.

$$\{y_{23,0}\ y_{23,1}\} = \{b_{143}\ b_{142}\}$$

The mapping of these 2-bit integers to points in the complex plane is given by the figure below. Hexadecimal notation has been used to represent the 2-bit numbers$\{y_{i,0}y_{i,1}\}$.

The CMTS MUST multiply the real and imaginary parts by 1/√2 to ensure that mean-square value of the QAM constellation is unity.

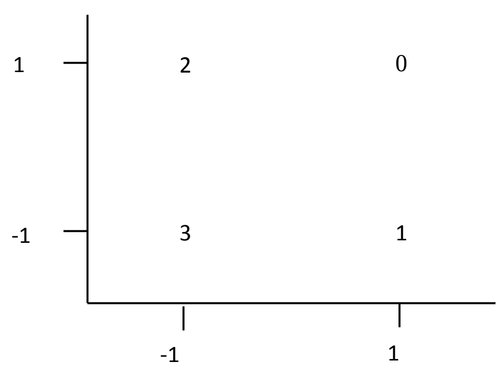


Figure 7-76 - QPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{y_{i,0}y_{i,1}\}$

7.5.14.4 Placement of NCP Subcarriers

The CMTS MUST place the NCP subcarriers beginning from the frequency location of the highest frequency active data subcarrier of the OFDM symbol, and going downwards along active data subcarriers of the OFDM symbols before they are time and frequency interleaved.

Therefore the first subcarrier of the first NCP occupies the frequency location of the highest frequency active data subcarrier of the OFDM symbol. The term active data subcarrier is used to indicate a subcarrier that is neither excluded and that is neither a continuous pilot nor a scattered pilot. This highest frequency active subcarrier may not occur at the same frequency in every symbol owing to the presence of scattered pilots.

The OFDM symbol, prior to time and frequency interleaving at the CMTS, will have subcarriers assigned to be scattered pilot placeholders. Furthermore, the NCP profile may indicate subcarriers that are to be zero-bit-loaded. The CMTS MUST skip both of these types of subcarriers during the placement of NCP subcarriers.

7.5.14.5 Randomization and Interleaving of NCP Subcarriers

The CMTS MUST randomize the NCP constellation points $\{y_{i,j}\}$ described in section 7.5.14.3 using the algorithm applied to the data subcarriers, described in Section7.5.5.3.

The CMTS MUST time and frequency interleave the NCP subcarriers using the algorithm applied to data subcarriers and this is described in the interleaving section.

7.5.15 Downstream Pilot Patterns

Downstream pilots are subcarriers modulated by the CMTS with a defined modulation pattern that is known to all the CMs in the system to allow interoperability.

There are two types of pilots: continuous and scattered. Continuous pilots occur at fixed frequencies in every symbol. Scattered pilots occur at different frequency locations in different symbols. Each of these pilot types for DOCSIS 3.1 is defined in the following sections.

7.5.15.1 Scattered Pilots

The main purpose of scattered pilots is the estimation of the channel frequency response for the purpose of equalization. There are two scattered pilot patterns, one for 4K FFT and one for 8K FFT. Although these pilots occur at different frequency locations in different OFDM symbols, the patterns repeat after every 128 OFDM symbols; in other words, the scattered pilot pattern has a periodicity of 128 OFDM symbols along the time dimension.

7.5.15.1.1 Scattered Pilot Pattern for 4K FFT

The CMTS MUST create scattered pilots for 4K FFTs in the manner described in this section.

Figure 7-77 shows the 4K FFT scattered pilot pattern for OFDM transmissions.

The scattered pilot pattern is synchronized to the PLC as shown in Figure 7-77. The first OFDM symbol after the PLC preamble has a scattered pilot in the subcarrier just after the highest frequency subcarrier of the PLC. Two such scattered pilots that are synchronized to the PLC preamble are marked as red circles in Figure 7-80.

The remainder of the scattered pilot pattern is linked to the scattered pilot synchronized to the PLC preamble, using the following rules:

1. In each symbol scattered pilots are placed every 128 subcarriers.
2. From symbol to symbol, scattered pilots are shifted by one subcarrier position in the increasing direction of the frequency axis. This will result in scattered pilots placed in the exclusion band and in the PLC band.
3. Scattered pilots are zero-valued in the exclusion bands.
4. Scattered pilots are zero-valued when these coincide with excluded subcarriers.
5. In the PLC, normal PLC signals (i.e., PLC data or the PLC preamble) are transmitted instead of scattered pilots.

The CMTS MUST NOT transmit scattered pilots in the PLC band.

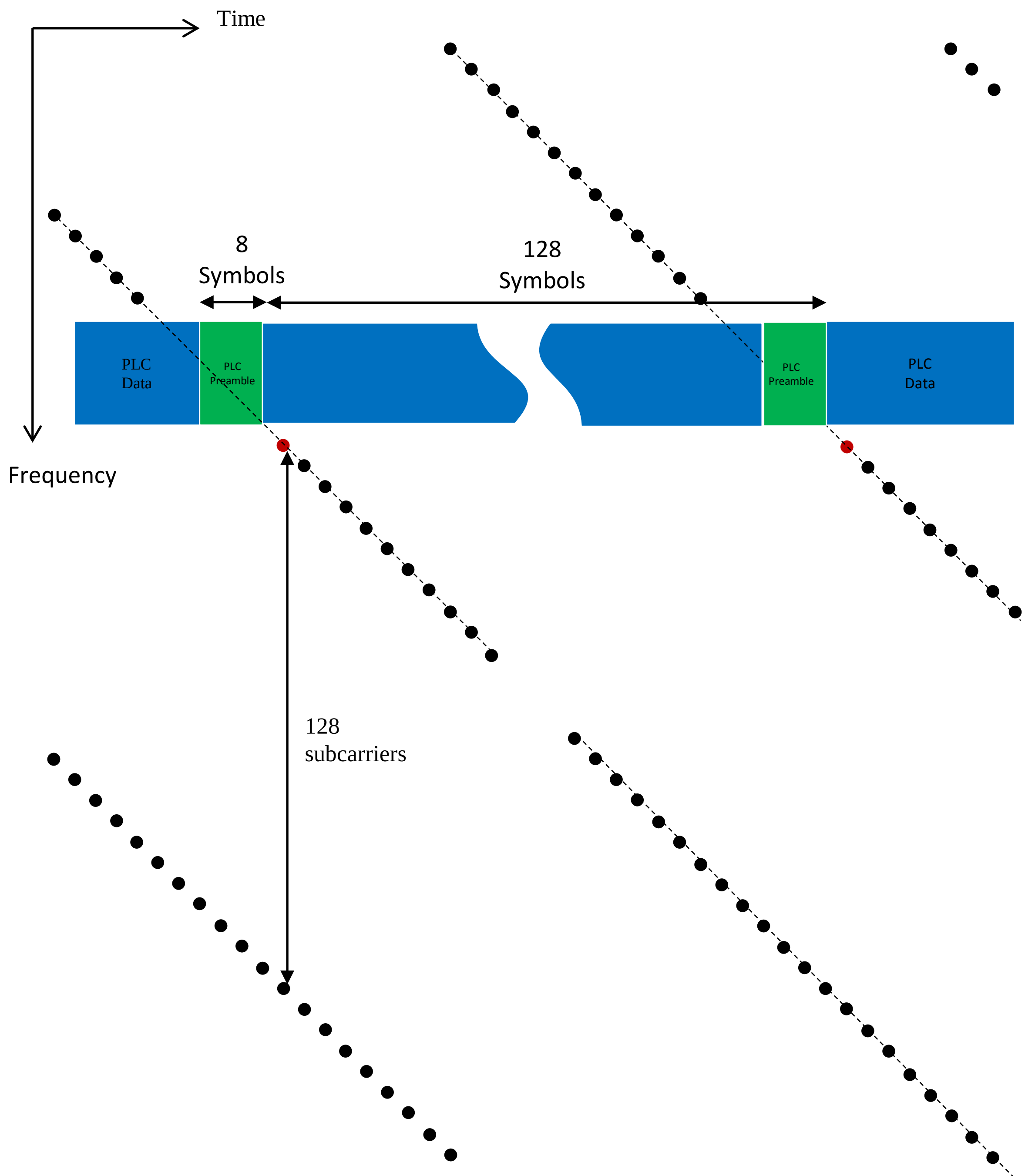


Figure 7-77 - 4K FFT Downstream Pilot Pattern

There are 8 preamble symbols in the PLC; for 4K FFT, there are 8 PLC subcarriers in each symbol.

Mathematically, the scattered pilot pattern for a 4K FFT is defined as follows. Let a subcarrier (depicted in red in the above figure just after the PLC preamble) be referred to as $x(m,n)$, where:

m is the frequency index

n is the time index (i.e., the OFDM symbol number)

The scattered pilots in the 128 symbols following (and including symbol n) are given by:

Symbol *n*:	x(*n*, *m*±128i), for all non-negative integers i
Symbol (*n*+1):	x(*n*+1, *m*±128i + 1) , for all non-negative integers i
Symbol (*n*+2):	x(*n*+2, *m*±128i + 2) , for all non-negative integers i
⋮	
Symbol (*n*+127):	x(*n*+127, *m*±128i + 127) , for all non-negative integers i

Each of the above locations is a scattered pilot, provided that it does not fall on a continuous pilot, on the PLC, on an exclusion zone or on a excluded subcarrier. If the scattered pilot coincides with a continuous pilot, it is treated as a continuous pilot and not as a scattered pilot.

This pattern repeats every 128 symbols. That is, symbol (128+*n*) has the same scattered pilot pattern as symbol *n*.

7.5.15.1.2 Scattered Pilot Pattern for 8K FFT

The CMTS MUST create scattered pilots for 8K FFTs in the manner described in this section.

Figure 7-78 shows a scattered pilot pattern that may be used for OFDM transmissions employing 8K FFT. This is used here for explanation purposes only and to help with the derivation of the scattered pilot pattern actually used in 8K FFT OFDM transmissions depicted in Figure 7-79.

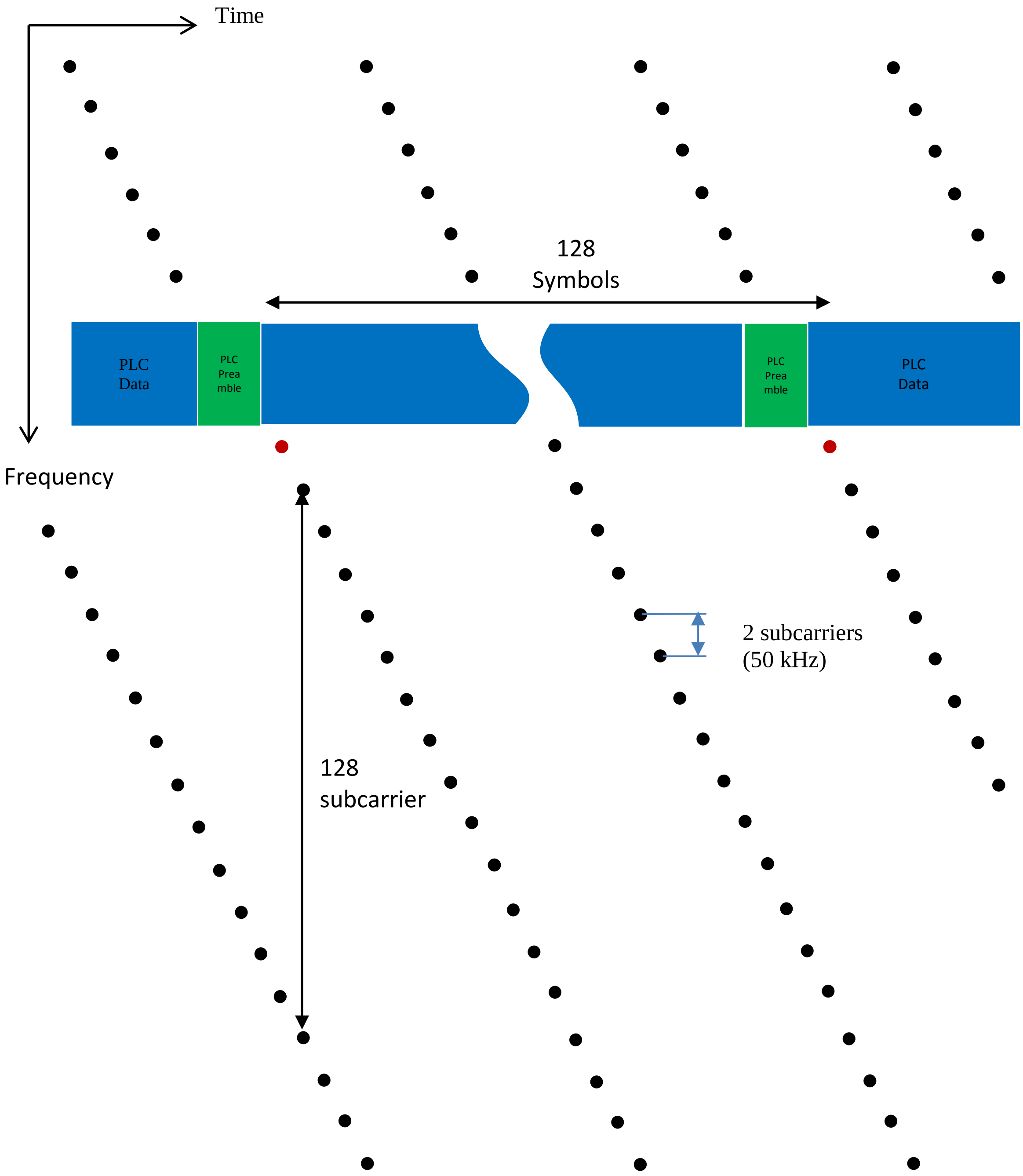


Figure 7-78 - A Downstream Scattered Pilot Pattern for 8K FFT (for Explanation Purposes Only)

The scattered pilot pattern is synchronized to the PLC as shown in Figure 7-77. The first OFDM symbol after the PLC preamble has a scattered pilot in the subcarrier just after the highest frequency subcarrier of the PLC. Two such scattered pilots that are synchronized to the PLC preamble are marked as red circles in Figure 7-78.

In the case of an 8K FFT, pilots are stepped by two subcarriers from one OFDM symbol to the next. Since the pilot spacing along the frequency axis is 128, this results in a pilot periodicity of 64 in the time dimension. When Figure

7-77 and Figure 7-78 are compared, it is clear that the periodicity is half for the 8K scattered pilot pattern. However, because an 8K symbol is twice as long as a 4K symbol, the scattered pilot periodicity in terms of actual time is approximately the same for both the 4K and 8K FFTs. This allows channel estimates for 8K FFTs to be obtained in approximately the same amount of time as for the 4K FFT. However, scattered pilots for 8K FFTs do not cover all subcarrier locations and hence intermediate channel estimates have to be obtained through interpolation.

Noise can also be estimated using scattered pilots, and again, the noise at subcarrier locations not covered by scattered pilots in the 8K FFT can be obtained through interpolation. Note that this interpolation operation could fail in the presence of narrowband ingress; interpolation could also be problematic when there are excluded subcarriers.

To overcome these interpolation problems, the entire 8K scattered pilot location can be shifted by one subcarrier location after 64 subcarriers, as illustrated in Figure 7-79. This may be treated as the interlacing of two identical scattered pilot patterns. The set of purple scattered pilots are shifted one subcarrier space in relation to the set of green scattered pilots. As a result the scattered pilots cover all subcarrier locations; noise at every subcarrier location can be estimated without interpolation. Note that periodicity of the 8K FFT scattered pilot pattern is now 128, not 64.

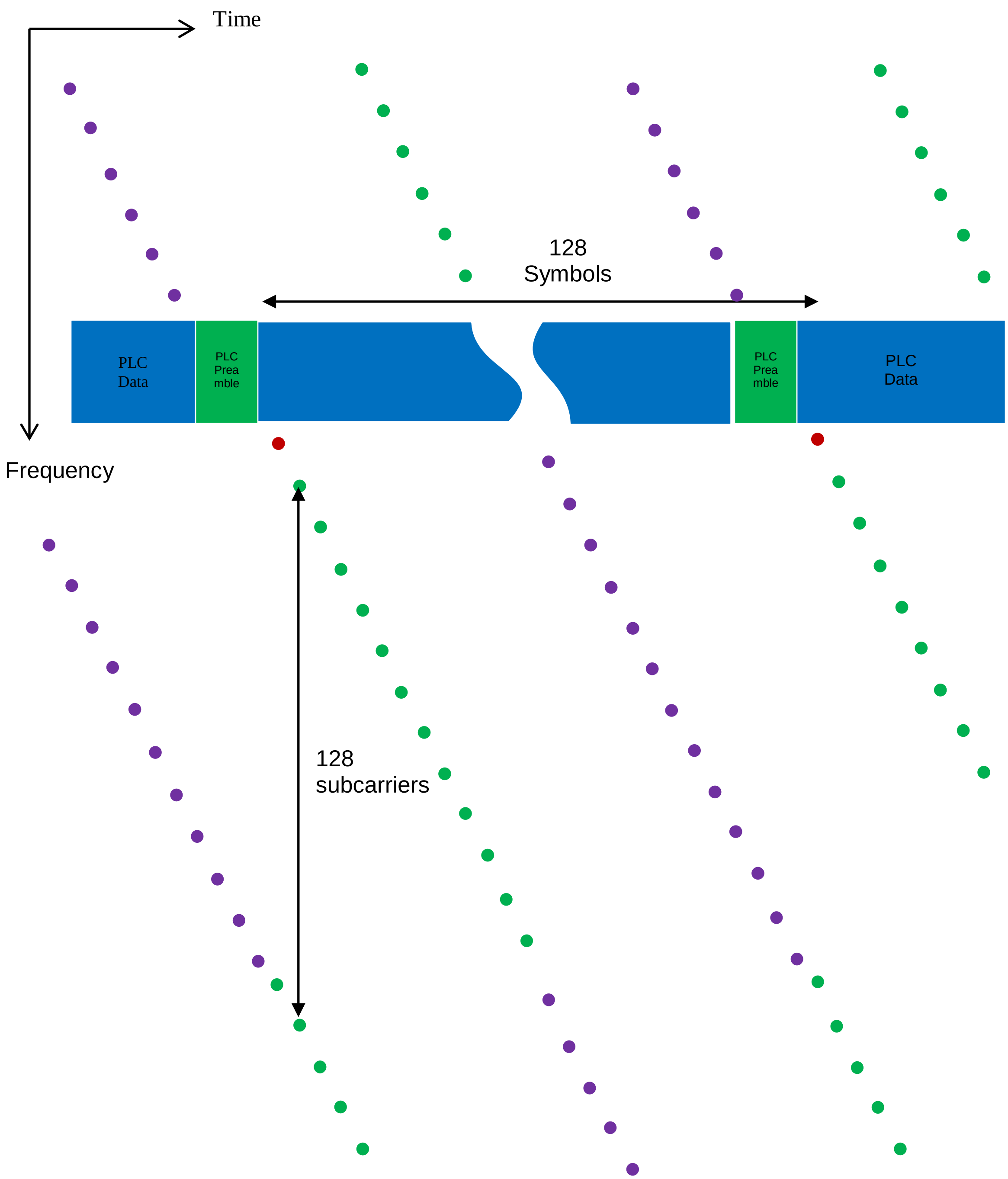


Figure 7-79 - 8K FFT Downstream Scattered Pilot Pattern

Mathematically, the scattered pilot pattern for an 8K FFT is defined as follows. Let the subcarrier (depicted in red in Figure 7-79 just after the PLC preamble) be referred to as $x(m,n)$ where:

m is the frequency index

n is the time index (i.e., the OFDM symbol number)

The scattered pilots in the first 64 symbols following and including symbol *n* are given by:

Symbol *n*: $x(n, m \pm 128i)$, for all non-negative integers i

Symbol (*n*+1): $x(n+1, m \pm 128i + 2)$, for all non-negative integers i

Symbol (*n*+2): $x(n+2, m \pm 128i + 4)$, for all non-negative integers i

⋮

Symbol (*n*+63): $x(n+63, m \pm 128i + 126)$, for all non-negative integers i

The scattered pilot sequence of the next 64 symbols is the same as above, but with a single subcarrier shift in the frequency dimension.

Symbol (*n*+64): $x(n+64, m \pm 128i + 1)$, for all non-negative integers i

Symbol (*n*+65): $x(n+65, m \pm 128i + 3)$, for all non-negative integers i

Symbol (*n*+66): $x(n+66, m \pm 128i + 5)$, for all non-negative integers i

⋮

Symbol (*n*+127): $x(n+127, m \pm 128i + 127)$, for all non-negative integers i

⋮

Each of the above locations is a scattered pilot, provided that it does not fall on a continuous pilot, on the PLC, on an exclusion band or on an excluded subcarrier. If the scattered pilot coincides with a continuous pilot it is treated as a continuous pilot and not as a scattered pilot.

This pattern repeats every 128 symbols. That is, symbol (128+*n*) has the same scattered pilot pattern as symbol n.

7.5.15.2 Continuous Pilots

Continuous pilots occur at the same frequency location in all symbols and are used for receiver synchronization. Placement of continuous pilots is determined in two ways:

a) Predefined continuous pilot placement around the PLC

b) Continuous pilot placement defined via PLC messages

Note that continuous and scattered pilots can overlap; the amount of overlap, in terms of number of carriers, changes from symbol to symbol. Overlapping pilots are treated as continuous pilots.

7.5.15.2.1 Predefined Continuous Pilots around the PLC

As discussed in Section 7.5.13.1, the PLC is placed at the center of a 6 MHz spectral region. Four pairs of predefined continuous pilots are placed symmetrically around the PLC as shown in Figure 7-80. The spacing between each pilot pair and the PLC are different to prevent all pilots from being impacted at the same time by echo or interference.

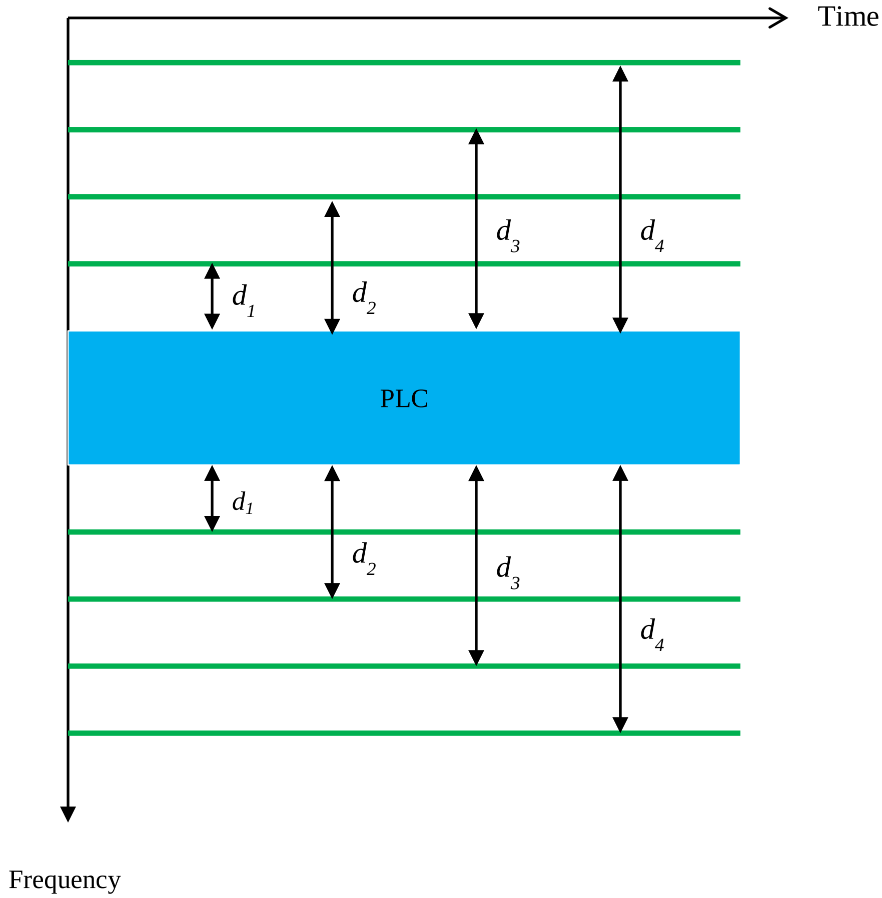


Figure 7-80 - Placement of Predefined Continuous Pilots around the PLC

The locations of the continuous pilots are defined with reference to the edges of the PLC band. Hence, once the PLC has been detected, these continuous pilots also become known to the receiver.

Table 7–45 provides the values of d_1, d_2, d_3, and d_4, measured in number of subcarriers from the PLC edge. That is, d_x is absolute value of the difference between the index of the continuous pilot and the index of the PLC subcarrier at the PLC edge nearest to the continuous pilot. The index of a subcarrier is the integer k of the IDFT definition given in Section 7.5.2.8. For example, let the lowest frequency subcarrier of the PLC have the IDFT index k equal to 972. Then according to Table 7–45 for the 4K FFT mode the continuous pilot nearest to this lowest frequency PLC subcarrier will have the IDFT index k of (972-15)=957. The index k of the highest frequency PLC subcarrier of this OFDM channel is 979. Hence continuous pilot that is nearest upper frequency edge of the PL has an index k of 994.

The table provides the number of subcarriers from the edge of the PLC to the placement of the pilot for the two FFT sizes. For each distance (d_x) defined in Table 7–45, the CMTS MUST place two pilots: one d_x subcarriers above and one d_x subcarriers below the edge of the PLC band.

Table 7–45 - Subcarrier Distances for Placement of Predefined Pilots

		d_1	d_2	d_3	d_4
4K FFT	**PLC 8 subcarriers**	**15**	**24**	**35**	**47**
8K FFT	**PLC 16 subcarriers**	**30**	**48**	**70**	**94**

7.5.15.2.2 Continuous Pilot Placement Defined by PLC Message

The CMTS MUST define a set of continuous pilots distributed as uniformly as possible over the entire OFDM spectrum in addition to the predefined continuous pilots described in the preceding section.

The CMTS MUST ensure that there are no isolated active OFDM spectral regions that are not covered by continuous pilots.

It is not practical to predefine the locations of this set of continuous pilots because of exclusion bands and excluded subcarriers.

The CMTS MUST provide the continuous pilot placement definition via the PLC in accordance with messaging formats contained in the MULPI specification.

The CMTS MUST adhere to the rules given below for the definition of this set of continuous pilot locations conveyed to the CM via PLC messaging. It is noted that these rules do not apply to the eight predefined pilots.

The CMTS MUST place the continuous pilots generated using these rules in every OFDM symbol, in addition to the eight predefined continuous pilots.

The CMTS MUST obtain the value of N_{CP} using the following formula:

$$N_{CP} = \min\left(\max\left(8, ceil\left(M * \left(\frac{F_{max} - F_{min}}{190e6}\right)\right)\right), 120\right) \qquad (1)$$

In this equation F_{max} refers to frequency in Hz of the highest frequency active subcarrier and F_{min} refers to frequency in Hz of the lowest frequency active subcarrier of the OFDM channel. It is observed that the number of continuous pilots is linearly proportional to the frequency range of the OFDM channel. It may also be observed that the minimum number of continuous pilots defined using the PLC cannot be less than 8, and the maximum number of continuous pilots defined using the PLC cannot exceed 120. Therefore, the total number of continuous pilots, including the predefined ones, will be in the range 16 to 128, both inclusive.

The value of M in equation (1) is kept as a parameter that can be adjusted by the CMTS. Nevertheless, the CMTS MUST ensure that M is in the range given by the following equation:

$$120 \geq M \geq 48 \qquad (2)$$

The typical value proposed for M is 48.

The CMTS MUST use the algorithm given below for defining the frequencies for the location of these continuous pilots.

Step 1:

Merge all the subcarriers between F_{min} and F_{max} eliminating the following:

- Exclusion bands
- 6 MHz band containing the PLC
- Known regions of interference, e.g., LTE
- Known poor subcarrier locations, e.g., CTB/CSO

Let the merged frequency band be defined as the frequency range $[0, F_{merged\_max}]$.

Step 2:

Define a set of N_{CP} frequencies using the following equation:

$$F_i = \frac{F_{merged\_max}}{2N_{CP}} + \frac{i * F_{merged\_max}}{N_{CP}}; \text{ for } i = 0, 1, \ldots, N_{CP} - 1 \qquad (3)$$

This yields a set of uniformly spaced N_{CP} frequencies:

$$\left\{\frac{F_{merged\_max}}{2N_{CP}}, \frac{3F_{merged\_max}}{2N_{CP}}, \ldots, F_{merged\_max} - \frac{F_{merged\_max}}{2N_{CP}}\right\} \qquad (4)$$

Step 3:

Map the set of frequencies given above to the nearest subcarrier locations in the merged spectrum. This will give a set of N_{CP} approximately uniformly spaced subcarriers in the merged domain.

Step 4:

De-merge the merged spectrum through the inverse of the operations through which the merged spectrum was obtained in step 1.

Step 5:

If any continuous pilot is within 1 MHz of a spectral edge, move this inwards (but avoiding subcarrier locations impacted by interferences like CSO/CTB) so that every continuous pilot is at least 1 MHz away from a spectral edge. This is to prevent continuous pilots from being impacted by external interferences. If the width of the spectral region does not allow the continuous pilot to be moved 1 MHz from the edge then the continuous pilot has to be placed at the center of the spectral band.

Step 6:

Identify any spectral regions containing active subcarriers (separated from other parts of the spectrum by exclusion bands on each side) that do not have any continuous pilots. Introduce an additional continuous pilot at the center of every such isolated active spectral region.

In the unlikely event that the inclusion of these extra pilots results in the total number of continuous pilots defined by PLC exceeding 120, return to step 1 and re-do the calculations after decrementing the value of N_{CP} by one.

Step 7:

Test for periodicity in the continuous pilot pattern and disturb periodicity, if any, through the perturbation of continuous pilot locations using a suitable algorithm. A simple procedure would be to introduce a random perturbation of up to ±5 subcarrier locations around each continuous pilot location, but avoiding subcarrier locations impacted by interferences like CSO/CTB.

The CMTS MUST transmit this continuous pilot pattern to the CMs in the system using the PLC.

7.5.15.3 Pilot Modulation[43]

For both continuous and scattered pilots, the CMTS MUST modulate these subcarriers as described in the following section.

Continuous and scattered pilots are BPSK modulated using a pseudo-random sequence. This pseudo-random sequence is generated using a 13-bit linear feedback shift register, shown in Figure 7-81 with polynomial ($x^{13}+x^{12}+x^{11}+x^{8}+1$).

This linear feedback shift register is initialized to all ones at the k=0 index of the 4K or 8K discrete Fourier transform defining the OFDM signal (refer to Section 7.5.7). It is then clocked after every subcarrier of the FFT. If the subcarrier is a pilot (scattered or continuous), then the BPSK modulation for that subcarrier is taken from the linear feedback shift register output.

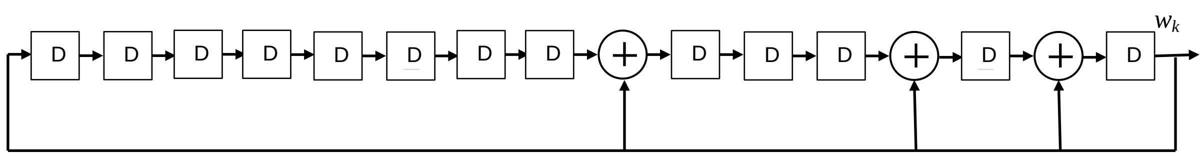


Figure 7-81 - 13-Bit Linear Feedback Shift Register for the Pilot Modulation Pseudo-Random Sequence

[43] Modified by PHY3.1-14.1202-3 by PO on 12/11/14.

For example, let the output of the linear feedback shift register be w_k. The BPSK modulation used for the pilot would be:

$$w_k = 0\text{: } BPSK\ Constellation\ Point = 1 + j0$$

$$w_k = 1\text{: } BPSK\ Constellation\ Point = -1 + j0$$

To illustrate this by example, assume that there is a continuous pilot at subcarrier index $k=1000$. The output of the linear feedback shift register for this index is 0 and hence the continuous pilot will correspond to the BPSK constellation point $(1 + j0)$. Now assume that there is scattered pilot at subcarrier index $k = 2999$. The output of the linear feedback shift register for this index is 1 and hence the scattered pilot will correspond to the BPSK constellation point $(-1 + j0)$.

7.5.15.4 Pilot Boosting

The CMTS MUST multiply the real and imaginary components of continuous and scattered pilots by a real-valued number such that the amplitude of the continuous and scattered pilots is twice the root-mean-square value of the amplitude of other subcarriers of the OFDM symbol. That is, continuous and scattered pilots are boosted by approximately 6 dB with reference to other subcarriers.

8 PHY–MAC CONVERGENCE

8.1 Scope

This specification defines the electrical characteristics and signal processing operations for a cable modem (CM) and Cable Modem Termination System (CMTS). It is the intent of this specification to define an interoperable CM and CMTS such that any implementation of a CM can work with any CMTS. It is not the intent of this specification to imply any specific implementation.

This section describes CM and CMTS requirements for the convergence logical layer between the MAC and PHY layers for OFDM downstream channels and OFDMA upstream channels. The primary roles of the convergence layer are to map DOCSIS MAC frames into codewords and to map codewords into minislots for transmission from the cable modem to the CMTS. Contents of the Next Codeword Pointer (NCP) message and PHY Link Channel (PLC) are also defined in this section.

8.2 Upstream

8.2.1 Profiles

Upstream profiles are comprised of multiple minislots, and are characterized by bit loading and pilot pattern. Bit loading and pilot patterns can vary between minislots within the profile. The bit loading and pilot pattern assignment of minislots can also vary between profiles. An upstream profile maps to an Interval Usage Code defined in an Upstream Channel Descriptor Message.

Different FEC codeword sizes may use portions of a single minislot. The use case for this is as follows: With a 17 KB grant, there needs to be a long codeword to cover the first 16200 bits and a 1 KB codeword to cover the rest of the bits. The first long codeword can land in the middle of a minislot. In this situation, it does not make sense to require a constant codeword size per profile, as the profile needs to cover a group of minislots.

FEC codewords can cross minislot and frame boundaries.

8.2.2 Upstream Subcarrier Numbering Conventions

Subcarriers are numbered from lower frequency to higher frequency within a FFT block. All subcarriers within the 102.4 MHz bandwidth are numbered, including the outside excluded subcarriers. Numbering starts at 0 and goes to 2047 for 2K FFT, and 0 to 4095 for 4K FFT.

Data codewords are mapped into minislots - prior to time and frequency interleaving - as described in Section 8.2.3.10.

8.2.3 Minislots

Minislots are defined by a size in terms of the number of symbols and number of subcarriers. They include data carried on data subcarriers, pilots carried on pilot subcarriers and complementary pilots that can carry data but at a lower modulation order.

In this section, Bandwidth (BW) is defined as the encompassed spectrum on a single OFDMA channel.

8.2.3.1 Minislot Parameters

The CMTS MUST define minislot parameters according to Table 8–1. The CMTS communicates minislot definition to the CM in UCD messages as defined in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

The CM MUST use the minislot structure defined by the UCD messages received from the CMTS.

The CMTS MUST be capable of receiving minislots structured according to Table 8–1.

The CMTS MUST apply any subcarrier exclusions to the entire channel independent of upstream profile assignment.

Table 8–1 - Minislot Parameters [44]

Parameter	Minimum Value	Maximum Value	Recommended or Typical Value
K Number of symbol periods per frame	6	For BW ≥ 72 MHz 18 for 20 µs FFT duration 9 for 40 µs FFT duration For 48 ≤ BW < 72 MHz 24 for 20 µs FFT duration 12 for 40 µs FFT duration For BW < 48 MHz 36 for 20 µs FFT duration 18 for 40 µs FFT duration	N/A
Q Number of subcarriers per minislot	8 for 20 µs FFT duration 16 for 40 µs FFT duration		
Data bitloading	QPSK	CMTS Mandatory: 1024-QAM CMTS Optional: 2048-QAM 4096-QAM CM Mandatory: 4096-QAM	Plant-dependent
Complementary-pilot bitloading	BPSK	256-QAM	
Modulation order for primary pilots	BPSK	BPSK	
Table Notes Note 1 Data bitloading is constant within a minislot, excepting pilots and complementary pilots. Note 2 The bitloading of complementary pilots within a minislot is constant.			

8.2.3.2 Minislot Structure

This specification defines several minislot structures with pilot patterns as described in Section 7.4.16.

8.2.3.2.1 Number of OFDM Symbols per Minislot

The CMTS MUST follow the rules listed below for the range of the frame size in number of symbols (K):

K is configurable between 6 (minimal value) and one of the following values:

- With 20 µs FFT duration (2K FFT)
    - K_{max} = 18 for BW > 72 MHz
    - K_{max} = 24 for 48 MHz < BW < 72 MHz
    - K_{max} = 36 for BW < 48 MHz
- With 40 µs FFT duration (4K FFT)
    - K_{max} = 9 for BW > 72 MHz

[44] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1180-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

- K_{max} = 12 for 48 MHz < BW < 72 MHz
- K_{max} = 18 for BW < 48 MHz

8.2.3.2.2 Number of subcarriers per minislot

The CMTS signals the number of subcarriers per minislot to the CM in the UCD.

The CMTS MUST use 16-subcarrier minislots when the subcarrier spacing is 25 kHz.

The CMTS MUST use 8-subcarrier minislots when the subcarrier spacing is 50 kHz.

8.2.3.3 Modulation of Data Subcarriers

With the exception of pilots and complementary pilots, bit loading is constant within a minislot.

The CMTS MUST use the same modulation order for all data subcarriers in a minislot.

8.2.3.4 Location of Pilots

A set of pilot patterns is defined from which the CMTS or operator can select to match the frequency response of the network. Pilot patterns are described in Section 7.4.16.

8.2.3.5 Modulation Order of Pilots

The CMTS MUST use BPSK modulation for pilots.

8.2.3.6 Location of Complementary Pilots

The CMTS MUST place complementary pilots as defined by the chosen minislot pattern.

8.2.3.7 Modulation Order of Complementary Pilots

The CMTS MUST use a modulation order equal to (data modulation order – 4) for complementary pilots.

The CMTS MUST use a minimum modulation order of BPSK for complementary pilots.

8.2.3.8 Pilot Overhead

Pilot overhead is dependent on the chosen minislot pattern. Capacity and pilot overhead vary with the length of the minislot (number of symbols) and with the number of subcarriers (8 or 16). Minimum capacity and largest pilot overhead occur with the shortest minislot length (8 symbols).

8.2.3.9 Mapping Minislots to Subcarriers[45]

The CMTS MUST construct minislots using only contiguous subcarriers. There are no subcarrier exclusions or unused subcarriers within a minislot.

8.2.3.10 Ordering of Data Bits within a Minislot

With the exception of initial ranging transmissions, the CM MUST fill minislots as follows: prior to interleaving, data would be filled across all symbol periods, subcarrier by subcarrier, transmitted symbol period by symbol period, with complementary pilots filled inline. The fill order is illustrated in Figure 8-1.

NOTE: The position of the pilots shown in Figure 8-1 is for illustrative purposes only and is not intended to be prescriptive.

[45] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1201-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

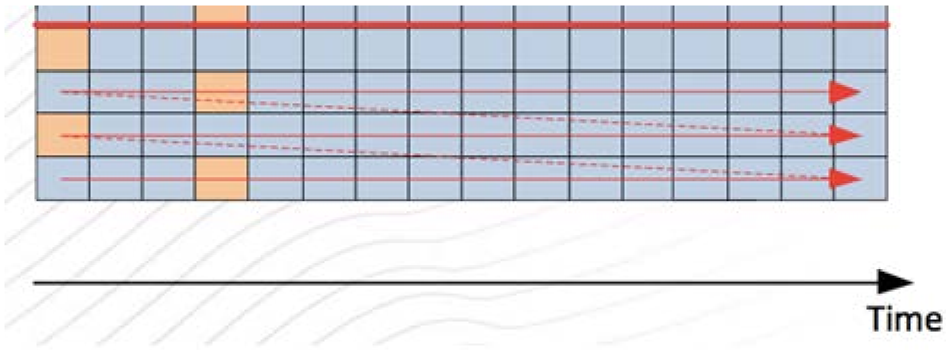


Figure 8-1 - Minislot Data Bit Ordering

8.2.3.11 Modulation Order Variability

Different minislots are allowed to have different pilot patterns: pilot patterns are assigned at minislot granularity.

Different minislots are allowed to have different bit loading: bit loading is assigned at minislot granularity. This allows bit loading to vary across the spectrum.

8.2.4 Subslots

This section specifies the subslot within the upstream data frame.

8.2.4.1 Subslot Structure

The minislot can be subdivided along time into multiple subslots to provide multiple transmission opportunities for BW requests. The subslots fit within minislot boundary and can have leftover symbols in the end along time axis. Leftover symbols are not a part of any subslot and are unused (zero valued subcarriers) when the minislot is granted to IUCs 1 or 2. Gaps between subslots within a single minislot are not permitted.

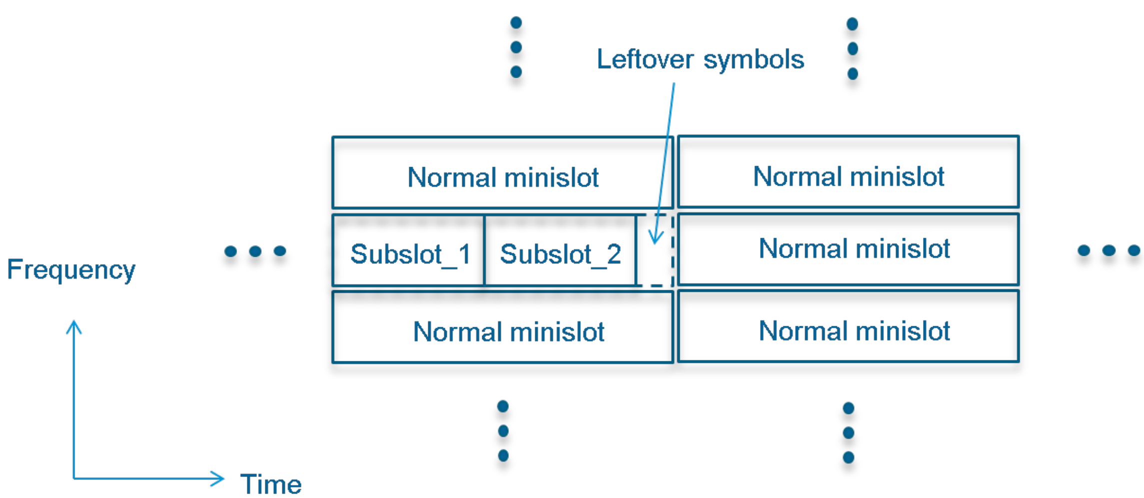


Figure 8-2 - Subslot Structure

The subslot length is fixed at 2 symbols with minislots that employ 16 subcarriers, and 4 symbols with minislots that employ 8 subcarriers.

8.2.4.2 Data mapping among subslots

The data mapping within a subslot is as follows: the mapping starts from the lowest subcarrier's index, and lowest symbol index, and first along symbol time index, and then goes up on subcarrier's index. The pilots are skipped during data mapping.

Data mapping to subcarriers is implemented without time or frequency interleaving.

Figure 8-3 and Figure 8-4 illustrate the mapping process. Note that the positions of the pilots shown in Figure 8-3 and Figure 8-4 are for illustrative purposes only and are not intended to be prescriptive.

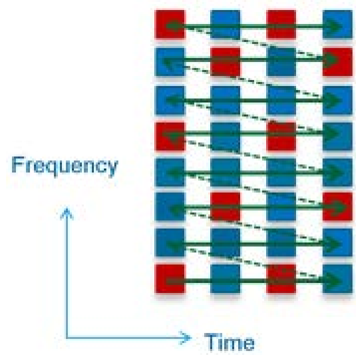


Figure 8-3 - Data Mapping for a 4x8 Subslot

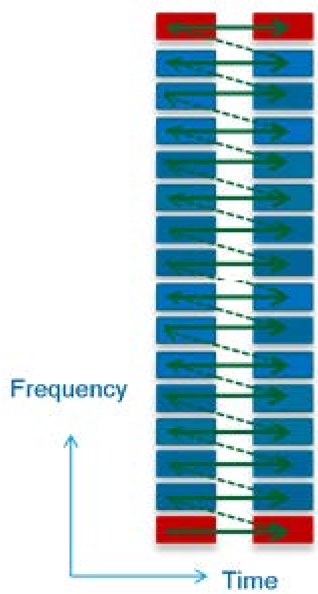


Figure 8-4 - Data Mapping for a 2x16 Subslot

8.3 Downstream

8.3.1 Operation

An example implementation of the downstream convergence layer for DOCSIS 3.1 and its association with the stages before and after it is shown in Figure 8-5. This block diagram is intended to demonstrate functionality; while it represents one style of implementation, there are no requirements that an implementation needs to adhere directly to this example.

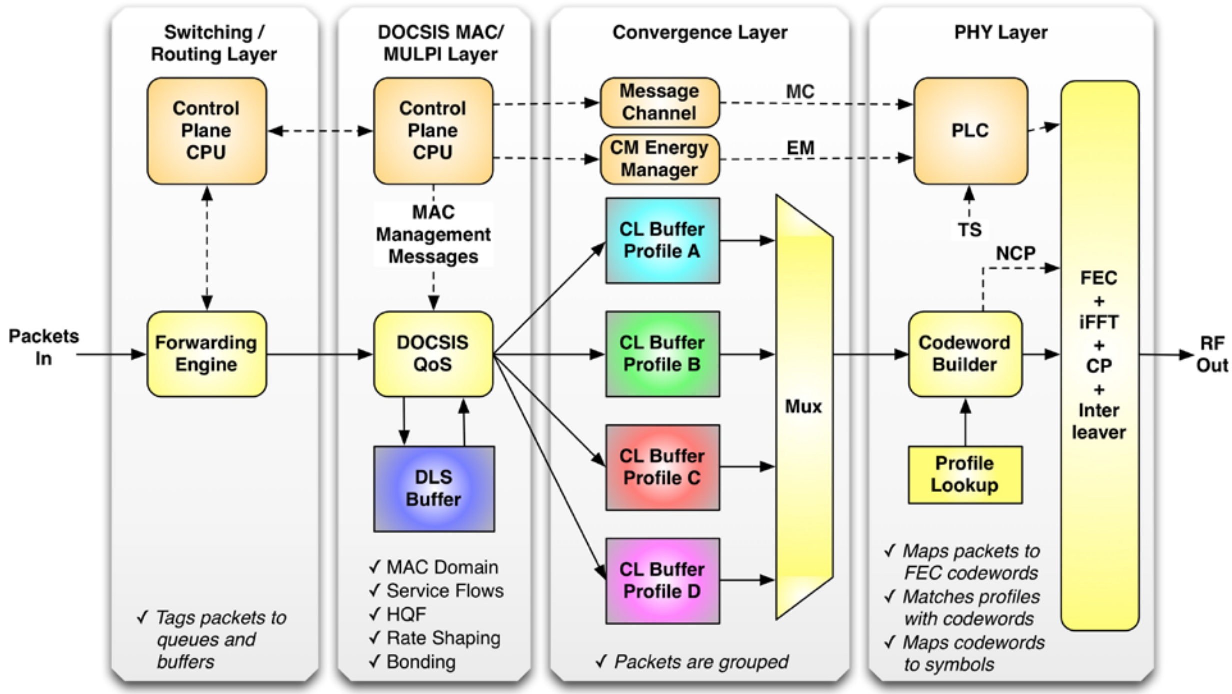


Figure 8-5 - Downstream Convergence Layer Block Diagram

The operation of the downstream can be split between the forwarding plane and the control plane. The *forwarding plane* contains the data packets that are destined to the user. The *control plane* carries MAC management messages and other types of control messages.

The forwarding engine in the CMTS forwards packets to a DOCSIS MAC Domain. The MAC Domain performs QoS functions such as hierarchical QoS, per-user rate shaping, aggregate per-channel rate shaping, and aggregate per-bonding-group rate shaping. The MAC engine can also hold packets in a buffer as part of the DOCSIS Light Sleep (DLS) mode.

A profile is a list of modulations that are used for the subcarriers within an OFDM channel. The downstream can use different profiles for different groups of CMs. Generally, a group of CMs that have similar SNR performance will be grouped into the same profile. When packets are encoded into FEC codewords and transmitted into the OFDM spectrum, a path in the downstream for that packet is created so the PHY layer uses a profile to create a path at the MAC layer.

There can be multiple paths from the CMTS to the same CM. Each path has a different profile. Profiles are typically given a letter designation such as Profile A. Profile A is the boot profile that CMs first begin receiving when they initialize and register. Either the forwarding engine or the DOCSIS QoS engine keeps a lookup table of exactly to what path and what profile each packet needs to be assigned. This profile assignment is used to pick a convergence layer buffer.

There is one convergence layer buffer per profile. These are shallow buffers that hold only a few packets so as to not build up any significant latency. The output of these buffers is fed to the codeword builder. The codeword builder is responsible for mapping DOCSIS frames into codewords. It is also responsible for balancing out the traffic flow between all the profiles so that the latency budgets are observed.

The codeword builder uses the same profile for an entire codeword. It can change profiles at each codeword boundary. The convergence layer buffers do not have to be serviced in any particular order. The DOCSIS MAC layer has already rate-shaped the packet flow to the size of the OFDM channel, so all packets will fit. It is up to the codeword builder to schedule the packets into the FEC codewords as it deems appropriate. Although rate shaping or packet drops are not intended to be performed at the convergence layer, some queues could be treated as low latency while other queues could be treated as high latency.

Since the codeword builder is multiplexing at the codeword level, the packets in the convergence layer buffers are naturally split across codeword boundaries and multiplexed together. The convergence layer buffers are packets in – bytes out. The codeword builder combines bytes from one buffer, adds FEC, and then using the profile modulation vector, it maps the codeword onto one or more OFDM symbols (or partial symbols).

8.3.2 MAC Frame to Codewords[46]

The downstream LDPC codeword shown in Figure 8-6 is referred to as (16200, 14400). This means that a full codeword is 2025 bytes (16200 bits) that are divided into 225 bytes (1800 bits) of parity and 1800 bytes (14400 bits) of LDPC payload. That payload is further divided into 21 bytes (168 bits) of BCH parity, a 2 byte fixed header, and a variable 1777 byte maximum payload for DOCSIS frames. When the FEC codeword is shortened, only the DOCSIS payload shrinks. All other fields remain the same size.

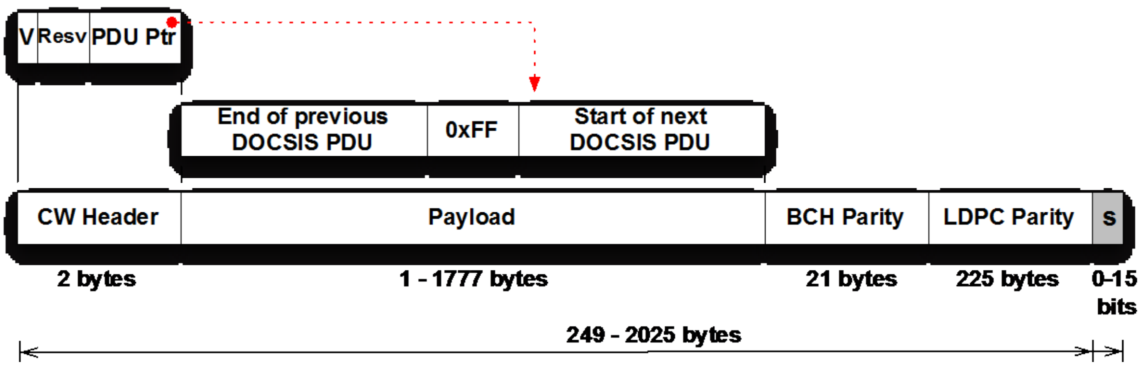


Figure 8-6 - DOCSIS Frame to Codeword Mapping

Although the codeword is shown in Figure 8-6 as a collection of bytes, this has to be treated as a bitstream for FEC encoding, and for subsequent mapping to OFDM subcarriers. Therefore, the CMTS MUST map the stream of bytes into a stream of bits in the MSB-first order. For example, the MSB of the first byte of the codeword is to be mapped to the leftmost bit of the codeword in Figure 8-6.

DOCSIS frames are sequentially mapped to codewords that are associated with a common profile. The codewords do not need to be adjacent, although their order is guaranteed. If there is no DOCSIS frame available, the CMTS MUST adopt one of the following two options until the next DOCSIS frame becomes available.

1) Insert zero-bit-loaded filler subcarriers into OFDM symbols as described in Section 7.5.5.5.2.

2) Insert stuffing pattern of 0xFF bytes into codewords.

The codeword header is defined in Table 8–2.

Table 8–2 - Data Codeword Definition

Name	Length	Value
Valid	1 bit	0 = PDU Pointer is not valid (ignore) 1 = PDU pointer is valid
Reserved	4 bits	Set to 0. Ignore on receive.
PDU Pointer	11 bits	This points to the first byte of the first DOCSIS frame that starts in the payload. A value of zero points to the byte immediately following the codeword header.

[46] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

When the codeword gets mapped across subcarriers within a symbol, there may be residual bits left over on the last subcarrier within that symbol. Since the number of residual bits may be more or less than 8, the receiver cannot simply round down to a byte boundary. To permit the downstream receiver to discard these residual bits properly, the CMTS MUST make the codeword payload an odd number of bytes.

One potential set of algorithms for the CMTS codeword builder and the CM codeword receiver is as follows.

On the CMTS, the algorithm is:

- Number of total bytes is (header + payload + parity) and never exceeds 2025 bytes.
- IF (total bytes = odd), send to FEC engine.
- IF (total bytes = even), add a0xFF stuff byte to the payload if legal or change the number of bytes.
- CMTS Symbol mapper adds trailing bits (all 1s) to map codeword to a symbol boundary.

On the CM, the corresponding algorithm is:

- CM extracts total bits between two NCP pointers.
- IF total bits > 16200, use initial 16200 bits, and a full codeword is declared.
- IF total bits = 16200, and a full codeword is declared.
- IF total bits < 16200, round down to the nearest odd number of bytes.
- Discard [(total bits + 8) Modulo 16] bits.

8.3.3 Subcarrier Numbering Conventions

Subcarriers are numbered from lower frequency to higher frequency within a FFT block. All subcarriers within the 204.8 MHz bandwidth are numbered, including the outside excluded subcarriers. Numbering starts at 0 and goes to 4095 for 4K FFT, and 0 to 8191 for 8K FFT.

Data codewords are mapped to subcarriers-prior to time and frequency interleaving-from a lower number to a higher number.

8.3.4 Next Codeword Pointer

When the data codewords are mapped to subcarriers within a symbol, a pointer is needed to identify where a data codeword starts. This is known as the Next Codeword Pointer (NCP). The collection of NCP message blocks within a symbol is known as the NCP field. There are a variable number of NCP message blocks (MBs) on each OFDM symbol. To make sure that all subcarriers are used without reserving empty NCP MBs, the mapping of the NCP occurs in the opposite direction of the mapping for data. The relationship of NCP message blocks to the data channel is shown in Figure 8-7 (scattered pilots are not shown; last NCP MB is a CRC).

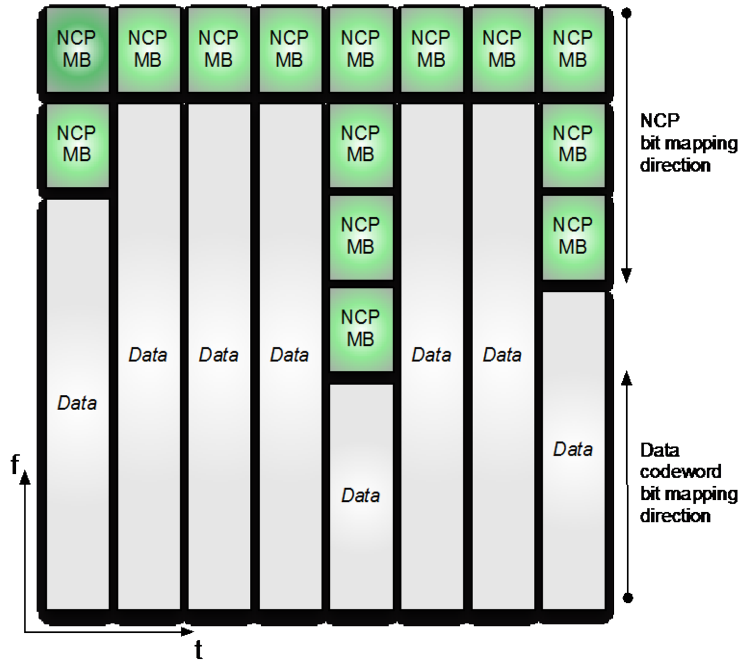


Figure 8-7 - Data and NCP Prior to Interleaving

The CMTS MUST map data subcarriers within a symbol, starting from a lower subcarrier number and proceeding to a higher subcarrier number.

The CMTS MUST map NCP message blocks starting at a higher subcarrier number and moving to a lower subcarrier number.

8.3.4.1 NCP Data Message Block [47]

The format of the NCP data message block is illustrated in Figure 8-8 and defined in Table 8–3.

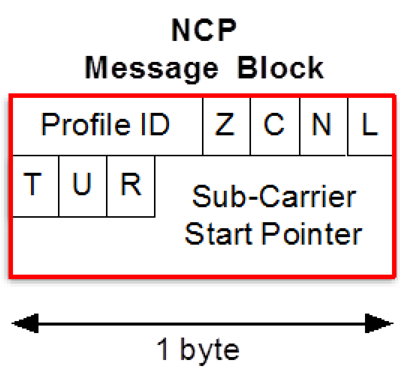


Figure 8-8 - NCP Data Message Block

Note that each three byte NCP MB is mapped into a unique FEC codeword that has a 3 byte payload with 3 bytes of FEC. The last FEC codeword is then followed by a 3 byte CRC-24-D (refer to Annex E) that is also placed in its own FEC block.

[47] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1160-1 on 12/10/14 by JB.

Table 8–3 - NCP Parameters

Field	Size	Description
Profile ID	4 bits	Profile ID for the data channel 0 = Profile A 1 = Profile B … 15 = Profile P
Z	1 bit	Zero Bit Loading 0 = subcarriers follow profile 1 = subcarriers are all zero-bit-loaded
C	1 bit	Data Profile Update 0 = use even profile 1 = use odd profile
N	1 bit	NCP Profile Select 0 = use even profile 1 = use odd profile This bit is equal to the LSB of the NCP profile change count.
L	1 bit	Last NCP Block 0 = This NCP is followed by another NCP. 1 = This is the last NCP in the chain and is followed by an NCP CRC message block.
T	1 bit	Codeword Tagging 0 = This codeword is not included in the codeword counts reported by the CM in the OPT-RSP message. 1 = This codeword is included in the codeword counts reported by the CM in the OPT-RSP message. This bit is applicable only when Codeword Tagging is enabled in the CM for the CM's transition profile. When Codeword Tagging is not enabled for the CM's transition profile, all codewords are counted. If the CM is not conducting OFDM Downstream Profile Usability Testing on the Profile ID of this NCP, or if the CM is conducting testing but Codeword Tagging is disabled for the test, then the Codeword Tagging bit is ignored and all codewords are counted. Codeword Tagging is enabled or disabled in the CM for the CM's transition profile by the CMTS through a parameter passed in the OPT-REQ message. Codeword Tagging enable/disable also applies per profile. Codeword Tagging can only be enabled for a CM's transition profile. See [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] for a more details about OFDM Downstream Profile Testing (OPT) and Codeword Tagging.
U	1 bit	NCP Profile Update indicator Indicates a change in the NCP bit-loading profile. The CMTS sets this bit in each of the 128 symbols immediately preceding an NCP bit-loading profile change. The 128 sequential "U" bits form a specific bit pattern as defined below to indicate the NCP profile change. The CMTS sets NCP Profile Update indicator to value 0 in all other symbols.
R	1 bit	Reserved
Subcarrier pointer	13 bits	This is the number assigned to the first subcarrier used by the codeword. A value of zero points to the first subcarrier of the symbol before interleaving, excluding locations reserved for scattered pilots. For example, if the first subcarrier before interleaving is a location reserved for a scattered pilot and the second subcarrier of the symbol is not, then the subcarrier pointer value of zero points to the second subcarrier. The value of 0x1FFF is reserved as a null pointer. The maximum value is 0x1FFE = 8190. The value 0x1FFF is reserved as a null pointer.

The NCP structure is predicated upon the following facts:

- FEC codewords are mapped continuously across successive symbols.
- The PHY can determine the first subcarrier of the first NCP message block.
- The PHY can determine the first subcarrier of the data field in the current symbol.

Based upon these facts and combined with the information in the NCP fields, then

- The PHY can determine the last subcarrier of the last NCP message block.
- The next subcarrier after the last NCP message block CRC is last subcarrier of the data field.

The main task of the NCP message block is to provide a reference to the appropriate profile and a start pointer for codewords. The length of a codeword is determined by the difference between the subcarrier pointer in two successive NCP message blocks.

Data subcarriers may contain FEC codewords or unused subcarriers. These functions are referred to as fields in the NCP header.

The CMTS MUST include one NCP within the same symbol for each start of codeword or a group of unused subcarriers that exists in that symbol. The CMTS MUST include a valid Profile ID when the field is a FEC codeword field and no zero-bit-loading (Z bit not asserted).

The CMTS MUST assert the Zero load bit ("Z") to mark a set of subcarriers which are not used as described in Section 8.3.4.3.

The CM MUST ignore the Profile ID when the Z bit is asserted.

The CM MUST use the Data Profile Update bit ("C") to select the odd or even data profile.

The CMTS MUST set the value of Data Profile Update bit ("C") to indicate whether the odd or even data profile is in use in the current OFDM symbol.

The CM MUST use the NCP Profile Select bit ("N") to select the odd or even NCP profile in the current OFDM symbol.

The CMTS MUST set the NCP Profile Select bit to the same value in all the NCP Message Blocks in any one symbol.

The CMTS MUST use the NCP Profile Update bit ("U") to indicate a change in the NCP bit-loading profile.

The CMTS MUST set the NCP Profile Update bit to the same value in all NCP Message Blocks in any one symbol.

The CMTS MUST set the U-bits of the 128 symbols immediately preceding a NCP bit-loading profile change to the pattern Hex "BCB240898BAD833539ED0ABE946E3F85", as illustrated in Figure 8-9.

The CMTS MUST set the NCP Profile Update Bit to zero in all other symbols, i.e., all symbols except the 128 symbols immediately preceding a NCP bit-loading profile change.

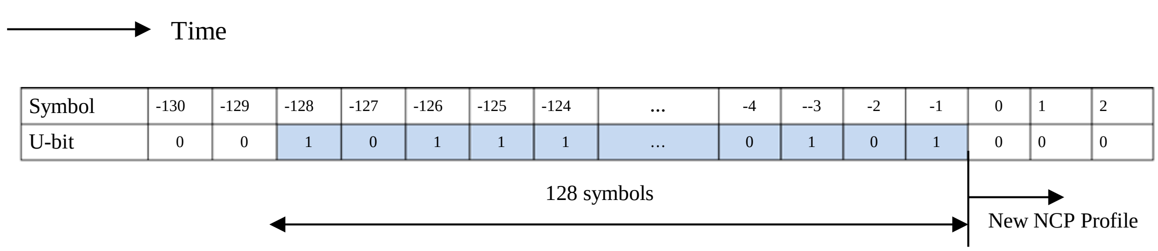


Figure 8-9 - NCP Profile Update Bit Setting Immediately Preceding an NCP Bit Loading Profile Change

The CMTS MUST assert the Last bit ("L") if the NCP is the last NCP message block.

The CMTS MUST follow the NCP block that has its Last bit asserted with a CRC-24-D. The CRC-24-D is calculated across all message blocks in a symbol exclusive of the FEC parity bits.

When a Downstream Profile Usability test is in progress with Codeword Tagging enabled, the CMTS assigns the value of the Codeword Tagging bit ("T") to indicate whether the codeword is to be included in the codeword counts reported in the OPT-REQ message [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

When a Downstream Profile Usability test is in progress and Codeword Tagging is enabled by the OPT-REQ message for the CM's test profile, the CM is required to respect the Codeword Tagging ("T") bit [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1].

A NULL NCP is defined as an NCP with the start pointer set to 0x1FFF. The usage of Null NCPs is defined in the next section. An Active NCP is an NCP that points to valid FEC codeword. Therefore, an Active NCP is an NCP in which Z-bit is Zero and the Start Pointer is not equal to 0x1FFF.

8.3.4.2 NCP Field with CRC and FEC

The last NCP message block is a dedicated CRC block. This block is shown in Figure 8-10.

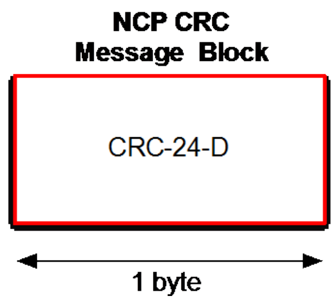


Figure 8-10 - NCP CRC Message Block

The CMTS MUST include a NCP CRC message block based upon the CRC-24-D calculation after the last NCP data message.

The CM MUST check the NCP CRC field.

If the NCP CRC field indicates an error in the NCP field, then the CM MUST reject all NCP data message blocks in the NCP field of the current symbol.

The CRC-24-D, defined in Annex A, is applicable to a bitstream. Hence to work out this CRC the CMTS has to first map the NCP message blocks into a bit-stream. The CMTS MUST implement this conversion to bit-serial format in MSB-first order. That is, the CMTS MUST place the first bit of the bitstream as the leftmost bit of the Profile ID shown in Figure 8-8, of the topmost NCP message block shown in Figure 8-7.

NCP has a specific method of mapping NCP message blocks with FEC that is different than the FEC used on the main OFDM data channels. The complete NCP field with FEC parity is shown in Figure 8-11.

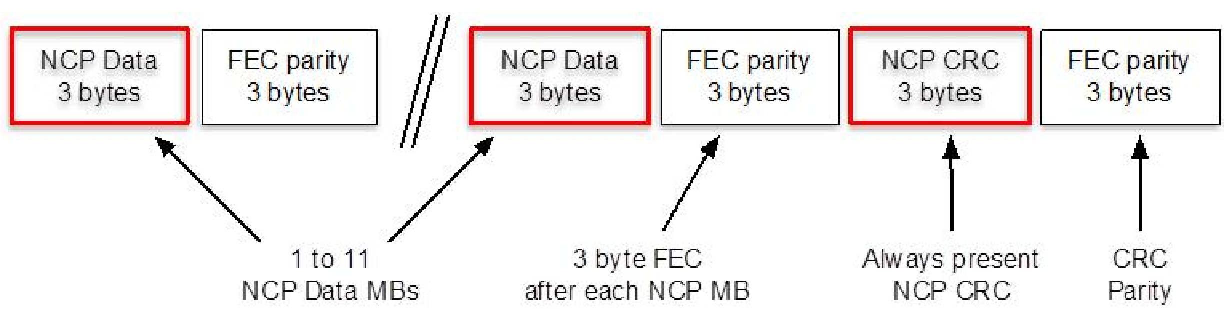


Figure 8-11 - NCP Message Blocks Field with FEC

NOTE: Each three byte NCP MB is mapped into a unique FEC codeword that has a 3 byte payload with 3 bytes of FEC. The last FEC codeword is then followed by a 3 byte CRC-24-D (refer to Annex E) that is also placed in its own FEC block.

8.3.4.3 NCP Usage [48]

The CMTS MUST NOT place more than 11 NCP data message blocks plus a CRC for a total of 12 NCP MBs in an 8K OFDM symbol. The CMTS MUST NOT place more than 12 NCP data message blocks plus two CRCs for a total of 14 NCP MBs in any two successive 4K OFDM symbols.

In the case of an 8K FFT OFDM symbol, the 12 NCP MBs will be formed by a maximum of 10 active NCP MBs, the NULL or zero-bit-loaded NCP MB (i.e., NCP with Z-bit set to ONE) and the NCP CRC MB.

In the case of a 4K FFT, in addition to the 10 maximum active NCP MBs over two successive symbols, each of these symbols may have one additional NULL or zero-bit-loaded NCP MB, and each symbol will have a NCP CRC MB. This brings the maximum number of NCP MBs over two successive symbols to 14.

If the data FEC blocks are small in one 8K FFT OFDM symbol, there could be data subcarriers left in the symbol after the placement of 10 active NCPs and the corresponding data. In such a case the CMTS MUST include an NCP describing the remaining subcarriers as zero-bit-loaded ("Z" bit asserted).

The CMTS MUST NOT place more than 10 active NCPs in any two consecutive 4K OFDM symbols, i.e., the number of active NCPs in 4K FFT OFDM symbols *n* and *n+1* MUST NOT exceed 10, for any value of *n*.

If the data FEC blocks are small, there could be data subcarriers remaining and unused after the placement of 10 active NCPs and the corresponding data in two consecutive 4K OFDM symbols. In such a case, the CMTS MUST include an NCP describing the remaining subcarriers as zero-bit-loaded ("Z" bit asserted). Furthermore, in the case of 4K FFT, if all of the 10 active NCPs are consumed by the symbol *n,* then the CMTS MUST place an NCP in symbol *n+1* indicating that the unused subcarriers are zero-bit-loaded. The symbol *n+1* may contain a continuation of a codeword from symbol *n,* but no new codeword can start in symbol *n+1*.

For small bandwidths it is possible that there may not be a beginning or an end of a FEC codeword in a symbol. That is, a codeword may begin in the previous symbol and end in the following symbol. In such a case the CMTS MUST insert a NULL NCP in the current symbol.

There may also be scenarios in which a FEC codeword may end within a symbol without leaving sufficient space to include an NCP. In this case, the CMTS MUST insert a NULL NCP and move some of the data subcarriers of the FEC codeword to next OFDM symbol.

The CMTS MUST NOT place more than one NCP with Z-bit set to one or with subcarrier pointer set to 0x1FFF, in any OFDM symbol. That is, if a symbol contains an NCP with Z-bit set to one then there cannot be an NCP with subcarrier pointer set to 0x1FFF in the same symbol. Similarly, if a symbol contains an NCP with subcarrier pointer set to 0x1FFF then that symbol cannot contain an NCP with Z-bit set to one. It must be noted that there is no requirement to have an NCP with Z-bit set to one or with subcarrier pointer set to 0x1FFF in every symbol. However, if an NCP with either the Z-bit set to one or with subcarrier field set to 0x1FFF exists in a symbol, then the CMTS MUST ensure that NCP is the last NCP of that symbol before the CRC NCP.

It is also possible that an FEC codeword may end within a symbol and leave sufficient space to include an NCP but no more. That is, after inserting the NCP, there would be no available subcarriers for data. In this case, the CMTS MUST insert a NULL NCP. This is equivalent to the above paragraph, but with no data subcarriers of the FEC codeword being moved to the next OFDM symbol.

8.3.4.4 NCP Examples

Figure 8-12 shows some examples of how the NCP field is used. This view is prior to interleaving. NCP blocks are mapped to subcarriers starting with the first non-excluded subcarrier at the top of the spectrum and then down in frequency. After the last NCP MB is a CRC-24-D.

[48] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1160-1 on 12/10/14 and per PHYv3.1-N-14.1188-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

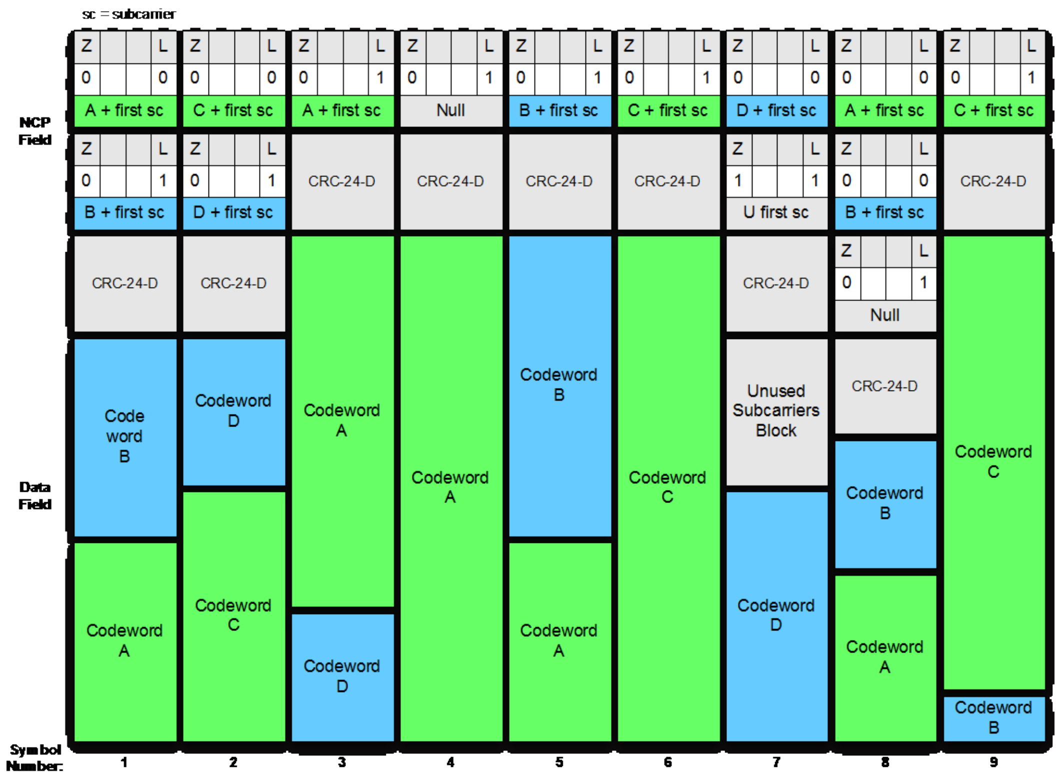


Figure 8-12 - NCP Examples

Data is mapped to the first non-excluded subcarrier at the bottom of the frequency range and then continuing upwards in frequency.

In symbol 1,	Codeword A starts at the beginning of the symbol and has a start pointer. Codeword B starts after codeword A and has a start pointer. The length of codeword A is the difference between the codeword A start pointer and the codeword B start pointer.
In symbol 2,	Codeword C starts at the beginning of the symbol and has a start pointer. The length of the previous codeword B is derived from the difference between the codeword B start pointer and the codeword C start pointer, taking into account where the last data subcarrier was in symbol 1. Codeword D gets a start pointer.
In symbol 3,	Codeword D continues from symbol 2 and finishes. Codeword A follows and is given a start pointer. The length of codeword D is derived from the difference between the codeword C start pointer and the codeword D start pointer, taking into account where the last data subcarrier was in symbol 2.
In symbol 4,	Codeword A continues. Since there is no start pointer required, but at least one NCP block is required, an NCP block with a null pointer is included.
In symbol 5,	Codeword A ends. Codeword B begins and ends. A single NCP block is created with a start pointer to codeword B.
In symbol 6,	Codeword C both starts and ends. A single NCP block is created with a start pointer to codeword C.
In symbol 7,	Codeword D starts and ends. There are no more data packets to send, so the remaining subcarriers are unused. A NCP block is assigned for the codeword D start pointer. A second NCP block is assigned to the start pointer of the unused subcarriers. This start pointer is used to determine the length of codeword D.

In symbol 8,	Codeword A begins and ends. Codeword B begins and tried to end with a few subcarriers unused between the end of the data codeword and the end of the NCP field. Since no subcarriers can be left unused, and since an NCP would not fit, an NCP with a null pointer was inserted and some of the last few bytes of codeword B were forced into the next symbol. There is an NCP message block for codeword A, codeword B, and the null NCP.
In symbol 9,	Codeword C starts a few subcarriers into the symbol. There is one NCP block for codeword C.

9 PROACTIVE NETWORK MAINTENANCE

9.1 Scope

This section defines the requirements supporting Proactive Network Maintenance (PNM). CMTS and cable modem features and capabilities can be leveraged to enable measurement and reporting of network conditions such that undesired impacts such as plant equipment and cable faults, interference from other systems and ingress can be detected and measured. With this information cable network operations personnel can make modifications necessary to improve conditions and monitor network trends to detect when network improvements are needed.

9.2 System Description

As shown in Figure 9-1, the CMTS and CM contain test points which include essential functions of a spectrum analyzer, vector signal analyzer (VSA), and network analyzer, while the cable plant is considered the Device Under Test (DUT). The goal is to rapidly and accurately characterize, maintain and troubleshoot the upstream and downstream cable plant, in order to guarantee the highest throughput and reliability of service. The CMTS and CM make the specified measurements and report the results to the PNM management entity as defined in [DOCSIS CCAP-OSSIv3.1] and [DOCSIS CM-OSSIv3.1]. Unless otherwise specified, the CM MUST make all its PNM measurements while in service, without suspending normal operational modes or data transmission and reception. Unless otherwise specified, the CMTS MUST make all its PNM measurements while in service, without suspending normal operational modes or data transmission and reception. Any specified timestamping of PNM measurements is done with nominal accuracy of 100 ms or better.

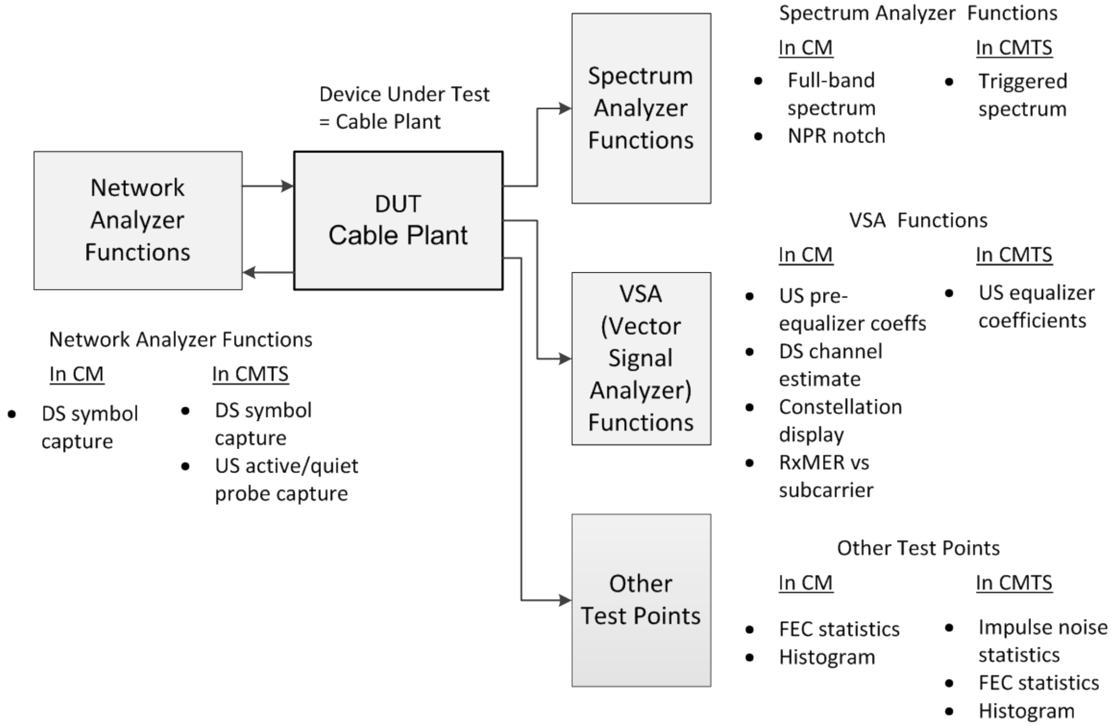


Figure 9-1 - Test points in CM and CMTS Supporting Proactive Network Maintenance

9.3 Downstream PNM Requirements

9.3.1 Downstream Symbol Capture

The purpose of downstream symbol capture is to provide partial functionality of a network analyzer to analyze the response of the cable plant.

At the CMTS, the transmitted frequency-domain modulation values of one full OFDM symbol before the IFFT are captured and made available for analysis. This includes the I and Q modulation values of all subcarriers in the active bandwidth of the OFDM channel, including data subcarriers, pilots, PLC preamble symbols and excluded subcarriers. This capture will result in a number of samples that depends on the OFDM channel width, per Section 7.5.7.1. As examples, for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 192 MHz channel with an active bandwidth of 190 MHz, 3800 samples will be captured; for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 192 MHz channel with an active bandwidth of 190 MHz, 7600 samples will be captured; for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 24 MHz channel with an active bandwidth of 22 MHz, 880 samples will be captured.

At the CM, the received I and Q time-domain samples of one full OFDM symbol before the FFT, not including the guard interval, are captured and made available for analysis. This capture will result in a number of data points equal to the FFT length in use, time aligned for receiver FFT processing. The number of captured samples can be reduced for narrower channels if the sampling rate, which is implementation dependent, is reduced. The capture includes a bit indicating if receiver windowing effects are present in the data.

As examples, for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 192 MHz channel with 204.8 MHz sampling rate, 4096 samples will be captured; for 25 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 192 MHz channel with 204.8 MHz sampling rate, 8192 samples will be captured; for 50 kHz subcarrier spacing in a 24 MHz channel with a reduced sampling rate of 25.6 MHz, 512 samples will be captured.

Capturing the input and output of the cable plant is equivalent to a wideband sweep of the channel, which permits full characterization of the linear and nonlinear response of the downstream plant. The MAC provides signaling via the PLC Trigger Message to ensure that the same symbol is captured at the CMTS and CM.

The CMTS MUST be capable of capturing the modulation values of the full downstream symbol marked by the trigger for analysis.

The CM MUST be capable of locating and capturing the time-domain samples of the full downstream symbol marked by the trigger for analysis.

9.3.2 Downstream Wideband Spectrum Analysis

The purpose of downstream wideband spectrum capture is to provide a downstream wideband spectrum analyzer function in the DOCSIS 3.1 CM similar to the capability provided in DOCSIS 3.0.

The CM MUST provide a downstream wideband spectrum capture and analysis capability.

The CM SHOULD provide the capability to capture and analyze the full downstream band of the cable plant.

The CM MUST provide a calibration constant permitting the downstream wideband spectrum capture measurement to be related to the downstream received power measurement of Section 9.3.9.

9.3.3 Downstream Noise Power Ratio (NPR) Measurement

The purpose of downstream NPR measurement is to view the noise, interference and intermodulation products underlying a portion of the OFDM signal. As part of its normal operation or in an out-of-service test, the CMTS can define an exclusion band of zero-valued subcarriers which forms a spectral notch in the downstream OFDM signal for all profiles of a given downstream channel. The CM provides its normal spectral capture measurements per Section 9.3.2, or symbol capture per Section 9.3.1, which permit analysis of the notch depth. A possible use case is to observe LTE interference occurring within an OFDM band; another is to observe intermodulation products resulting from signal-level alignment issues. Since the introduction and removal of a notch affects all profiles, causing possible link downtime, this measurement is intended for infrequent maintenance.

9.3.4 Downstream Channel Estimate Coefficients

The purpose of the Downstream Channel Estimate Coefficients item is for the CM to report its estimate of the downstream channel response. The reciprocals of the channel response coefficients are typically used by the CM as its frequency-domain downstream equalizer coefficients. The channel estimate consists of a single complex value per subcarrier. [DOCSIS CCAP-OSSIv3.1] defines summary metrics to avoid having to send all coefficients on every query.

The CM MUST report its downstream channel estimate (full set or summary) for any single OFDM downstream channel upon request.

9.3.5 Downstream Constellation Display

The downstream constellation display provides received QAM constellation points for display. Equalized soft decisions (I and Q) at the slicer input are collected over time, possibly subsampling to reduce complexity, and made available for analysis. Only data-bearing subcarriers with the specified QAM constellation are sampled. Pilots and excluded subcarriers within the range are ignored. Up to 8192 samples are provided for each query; additional queries may be made to further fill in the plot.

The CM MUST be capable of capturing and reporting received soft-decision samples, for a single selected constellation from the set of profiles it is receiving within a single OFDM downstream channel.

9.3.6 Downstream Receive Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) Per Subcarrier[49]

This item provides measurements of the receive modulation error ratio (RxMER) for each subcarrier. The CM measures the RxMER using pilots and PLC preamble symbols, which are not subject to symbol errors as data subcarriers would be. Since scattered pilots visit all data subcarriers and the PLC preamble symbols are known, the RxMER of all active subcarriers in the OFDM band can be measured over time. For the purposes of this measurement, RxMER is defined as the ratio of the average power of the ideal QAM constellation to the average error-vector power. The error vector is the difference between the equalized received pilot or preamble value and the known correct pilot value or preamble value. As a defining test case, for an ideal AWGN channel, an OFDM block containing a mix of QAM constellations, with data-subcarrier CNR = 35 dB CNR on the QAM subcarriers, will yield an RxMER measurement of nominally 35 dB averaged over all subcarrier locations. If some subcarriers (such as exclusion bands) cannot be measured by the CM, the CM indicates that condition in the measurement data for those subcarriers.

RxMER may be more clearly defined in mathematical notation in accordance with Figure 9-2, which shows an ideal transmit and receive model, with no intent to imply an implementation. Let p = scattered pilot (or PLC preamble) symbol before transmit IFFT, H = channel coefficient for a given subcarrier frequency, n = noise, y = Hp + n = unequalized received symbol after receive FFT. The receiver computes G = estimate of H, and computes the equalized received symbol as r = y/G. Using the known modulation value of the pilot or preamble symbol p, the receiver computes the equalized error vector as e = r – p. All the above quantities are complex scalars for a given subcarrier. To compute RxMER, the receiver computes E = time average of |e|^2 over many visits of the scattered pilot to the given subcarrier (or PLC preamble symbol as applicable), and E_dB = 10*$\log_{10}$(E). Let S_dB = average power of ideal QAM data subcarrier constellation (not including pilots) expressed in dB. According to Annex A.2, QAM Constellation Scaling, all QAM constellations have the same average power. The CM reports RxMER_dB = S_dB – E_dB. The CM MUST be capable of providing measurements of RxMER for all active subcarrier locations for a single OFDM downstream channel, using pilots and PLC preamble symbols.

[49] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1203-2 on 12/11/14 by JB.

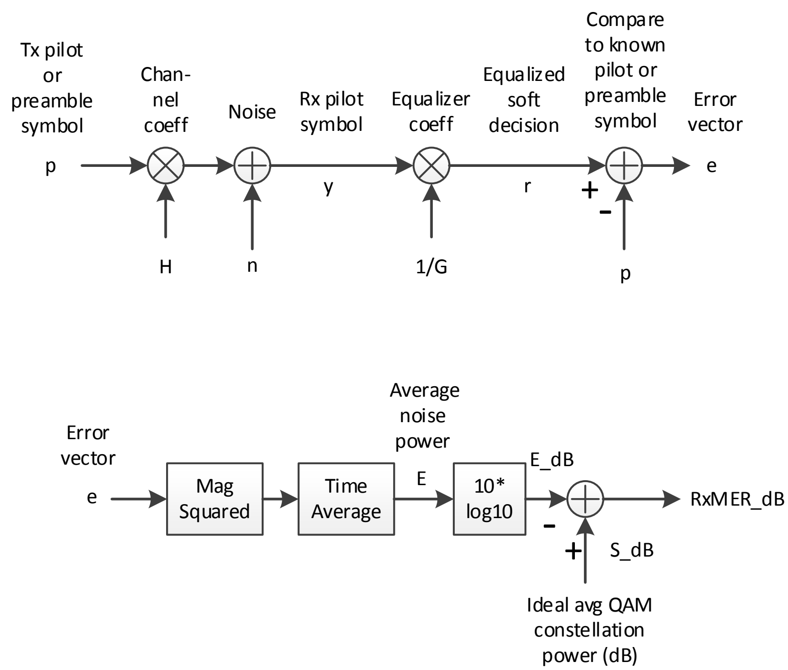


Figure 9-2 - Computation of Received Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) for a given subcarrier

Performance requirements for downstream RxMER measurements are defined under the following specified conditions:

- Channel center frequency is fixed.
- Channel loading consists of a single OFDM channel with no other signals.
- OFDM channel being measured has a fixed configuration with a 192 MHz channel bandwidth with 190 MHz modulated spectrum and no excluded subcarriers other than at band edges.
- Channel is flat without impairments other than AWGN.
- AWGN level is set to two values giving data-subcarrier CNR = 30 dB and 35 dB at the cable access network F connector of the CM across all data subcarriers in the OFDM channel.
- Signal level is fixed at a nominal receive level of 6 dBmV per 6 MHz.
- A minimum warm-up time of 30 minutes occurs before measurements are made.
- Each measurement consists of the frequency average across all subcarriers of the reported time-averaged individual subcarrier RxMER values as defined above. Frequency averaging is performed by external computation.
- An ensemble of M frequency-averaged RxMER measurements (M large enough for reliable statistics, i.e., such that the result lies within a given confidence interval) are taken in succession (e.g., over a period of up to 10 minutes) at both CNR values. The mean, RxMER_mean in dB, and standard deviation, RxMER_std in dB, are computed over the M measurements at both CNR values. The statistical computations are performed directly on the dB values.

The CM MUST provide RxMER measurements with RxMER_std ≤ 0.5 dB under the above specified conditions.

Define delta_RxMER = (RxMER_mean at CNR_data_subcarrier = 35 dB) - (RxMER_mean at CNR_data_subcarrier = 30 dB). The CM MUST provide RxMER measurements such that 4 dB ≤ delta_RxMER ≤ 6 dB under the above specified conditions.

9.3.6.1 Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR) Margin for Candidate Profile

The purpose of this item is to provide an estimate of the SNR margin available on the downstream data channel with respect to a candidate modulation profile. The CMTS has the capability described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] section 7.8.1, CM and CMTS Profile Support, in which it sends test data to the CM to measure the performance of a transition profile. In addition, the CM MUST implement an algorithm to estimate the SNR margin available on the downstream data channel for a candidate profile. Appendix VI suggests an algorithm that the CM can use to compute this estimate. The CM only performs this computation upon request from the CMTS via management message.

9.3.7 Downstream FEC Statistics[50]

The purpose of this item is to monitor downstream link quality via FEC and related statistics. Statistics are taken on FEC codeword error events, taking into account both the inner LDPC code and outer BCH code. Statistics are provided on each OFDM channel and for each profile being received by the CM. That is, if the CM is receiving 4 downstream profiles, there will be 4 sets of FEC counters plus a set of counters for the transition profile used for OFDM Downstream Profile Test (OPT) (see [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1]). For profiles 1-4, statistics for data codewords include all codewords. For profile 5 (transition profile), statistics for data codewords include either all codewords, if Codeword Tagging [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1] is disabled; or only codewords marked with T bit = 1 in the NCP, if Codeword Tagging is enabled. Similar statistics are taken on the NCP and PLC, and on MAC frames.

The CM MUST be capable of providing the following downstream performance metrics on data codewords for each profile:

- Uncorrectables: Number of codewords that failed BCH decoding.
- Correctables: Number of codewords that failed pre-decoding LDPC syndrome check and passed BCH decoding.
- Total number of FEC codewords.

The CM MUST be capable of providing the following downstream performance metrics on Next Codeword Pointer (NCP) codewords and data fields:

- NCP CRC failures: Number of NCP fields that failed CRC check.
- Total number of NCP fields.

The CM MUST be capable of providing the following downstream performance metrics on PHY Link Channel (PLC) codewords:

- Unreliable PLC Codewords: Number of PLC codewords that failed LDPC post-decoding syndrome check.
- Total number of PLC codewords.

The CM MUST be capable of providing the following downstream performance metrics on Media Access Control (MAC) frames addressed to the CM for each profile excluding the transition profile:

- MAC frame failures: Number of frames that failed MAC CRC check.
- Total number of MAC frames.

The CM MUST be capable of providing the following downstream FEC summaries for data codewords on each OFDM channel for each profile being received by the CM:

- Codeword errors vs. time (seconds): Number of uncorrectable codewords and total number of codewords in each one-second interval for a rolling 10-minute period (600 values).
- Codeword errors vs. time (minutes): Number of uncorrectable codewords and total number of full-length codewords in each one-minute interval for a rolling 24-hour period (1440 values).

[50] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1163-1 on 12/10/14, and PHYv3.1-N-14.1198-2 and PHYv3.1-N-14.1203-2 on 12/11/14 by JB. Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/25/15 by JB.

- Start and end time of rolling period. The measurements are timestamped using bits 21-52 of the 64-bit extended timestamp, where bit 0 is the LSB, which provides a 32-bit timestamp value with resolution of 0.4 ms and range of 20 days. Timestamping is done with nominal accuracy of 100 ms or better.

The CM MUST provide two collection and reporting methods for each error-count metric on data codewords:

- Long-term statistics. The CM always collects metrics in the background for each profile being received. The codeword (or frame) and error counters are long (e.g., 64-bit) integers, so that overflow is not an issue. ' To perform a measurement over a particular time interval, the user reads the counters, waits a period of time, reads the counters again, and computes the difference in the counter values.
- Short-term statistics. The CM performs a one-shot measurement with two configured parameters, Ne and Nc. The CM reports the results when at least Ne errors have occurred or at least Nc codewords have been processed, whichever comes first. This measurement is particularly useful for OPT testing of the transition profile. To perform this measurement, the CM reads the long-term counters, waits a short time, reads the counters again, and computes the difference in the counter values.

9.3.8 Downstream Histogram

The purpose of the downstream histogram is to provide a measurement of nonlinear effects in the channel such as amplifier compression and laser clipping. For example, laser clipping causes one tail of the histogram to be truncated and replaced with a spike. The CM MUST be capable of capturing the histogram of time domain samples at the wideband front end of the receiver (full downstream band). When a CM creates a downstream histogram, the CM MUST create it such that it is two-sided; that is, it encompasses values from far-negative to far-positive values of the samples. When the CM creates a downstream histogram, the CM MUST create it such that it has either 256 equally spaced bins with even symmetry about the origin, or 255 equally spaced bins with odd symmetry about the origin. These bins typically correspond to the 8 MSBs of the wideband analog-to-digital converter (ADC). The histogram dwell count, a 32-bit unsigned integer, is the number of samples observed while counting hits for a given bin, and may have the same value for all bins. The histogram hit count, a 32-bit unsigned integer, is the number of samples falling in a given bin. The CM MUST be capable of reporting the dwell count per bin and the hit count per bin. When enabled, the CM MUST compute a histogram with a dwell of at least 10 million samples in 30 seconds or less. With this many samples, the histogram can reliably measure a probability density per bin as low as 10^{-6} with at least 10 hits in each bin. The CM MUST continue accumulating histogram samples until it is restarted, disabled, approaches its 32-bit overflow value, or times out. The CM MUST report the start and end time of the histogram measurement using bits 21-52 of the extended timestamp, which provides a 32-bit timestamp value with resolution of 0.4 ms and range of 20 days.

9.3.9 Downstream Received Power[51]

The purpose of the downstream received power metric is to measure the average received downstream power in a set of non-overlapping 6 MHz bands for any DOCSIS 3.0 and 3.1 signals in the receive channel set (RCS) of the CM including the DOCSIS 3.1 PLC. While digital power measurements are inherently accurate, the measurement referred to the analog signal at the input F connector depends on the measurement conditions and available calibration accuracy. The measurements are made along a contiguous set of defined 6 MHz bands. The measurement bands are designed to align with DOCSIS 3.0 channel locations, so that the total power of a DOCSIS 3.0 single carrier QAM signal in a 6 MHz bandwidth is measured. For DOCSIS 3.1 OFDM signals, the measurement bands will also align with the edges of the occupied spectrum of the OFDM channel, although the measurement bands may not align with the edges of the modulated spectrum of the OFDM channel. In general, a DOCSIS 3.1 OFDM signal may contain excluded subcarriers within a given 6 MHz measurement band. However, the 6 MHz band containing the PLC at its center is a special case which contains no excluded subcarriers and contains extra pilots, properties which make it useful for reliable power measurements. The PLC measurement band may be offset from the 6 MHz measurement bands due to the location of subcarriers in the PLC placement where the center frequency of the lowest frequency subcarrier of the 6 MHz encompassed spectrum containing the PLC is an integer when the frequency is measured in units of MHz.

The CM MUST provide an estimate of the average power for any 6 MHz band in the RCS referenced to the F connector input of the CM under the following specified received signal conditions:

[51] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.

The measurement band is defined as either of the following:

- Any 6 MHz bandwidth with a center frequency of 111 + 6(n-1) MHz for n = 1, …, 185 (i.e., 111, 117, …, 1215 MHz) contained in the RCS of the CM.
- The 6 MHz bandwidth containing the PLC with a lower channel edge (center frequency of lowest subcarrier) frequency of 108 + m MHz for m = 0, 1, …, 1104 (i.e., 108, 109, …, 1212 MHz).

All measurements are made under the following conditions:

- The measurement bands shall contain only DOCSIS signals.
- The measured bands do not contain any gaps (regions with no signal present) greater than 24 MHz wide each from a 108 MHz or 258 MHz lower band edge to a 1002 MHz or 1218 MHz upper band edge.
- A constant temperature is maintained during measurements within a range of 20 ºC ± 2 ºC.
- A minimum warm up time of 30 minutes occurs before CM power measurements are made.
- The measured 6 MHz band does not contain gaps totaling more than 20 percent of that band.
- A maximum 8 dB range of signal input power variation[52] can be measured without allowing recalibration via CM re-initialization.
- The signal power variation (i.e., the deviation from nominal relative carrier power level) between the defined 6 MHz bands containing DOCSIS signals varies up to a maximum of ±3 dB over the full downstream band.
- The signal tilt and signal power variation are determined using 6 MHz channel power levels as specified in section 6.5 of [SCTE RMP] - Nominal Relative Carrier Power Levels and Carrier Level Variations.
- The total spectrum of all the gaps is to be less than 20% of the total encompassed spectrum.

The CM MUST provide an average power estimate in any defined 6 MHz measurement bandwidth within ± 3 dB of the actual power at the F connector input under the following conditions:

- The power in the defined 6 MHz bands has a maximum tilt of ±1 dB over the entire downstream spectrum.
- The power in the defined 6 MHz bands (other than gaps) is in the range of -12 dBmV to +12 dBmV.

The CM MUST provide an average power estimate in any defined 6 MHz measurement band within ± 5 dB of the actual power at the F connector input under the following relaxed signal conditions:

- The power in the defined 6 MHz measurement bands has a maximum upward tilt of +4 dB and a maximum downward tilt of -9 dB over the entire downstream band.
- The power in the defined 6 MHz bands (other than gaps) is in the range of -15 dBmV to +15 dBmV.

9.4 Upstream PNM Requirements

9.4.1 Upstream Capture for Active and Quiet Probe

The purpose of upstream capture is to measure plant response and view the underlying noise floor, by capturing at least one OFDM symbol during a scheduled active or quiet probe. An active probe provides the partial functionality of a network analyzer, since the input is known and the output is captured. This permits full characterization of the linear and nonlinear response of the upstream cable plant. A quiet probe provides an opportunity to view the underlying noise and ingress while no traffic is being transmitted in the OFDMA band being measured.

The PNM server selects an active CM to analyze by specifying its MAC address, or requests a quiet probe measurement. The CMTS MUST be capable of selecting a specified transmitting CM, or quiet period when no CMs are transmitting, for the capture. The CMTS sets up the capture as described in [DOCSIS MULPIv3.1], selecting either an active SID corresponding to the specified MAC address or the idle SID, and defining an active or quiet

[52] Per 47 CFR 76.605(4), the maximum signal amplitude level variation at the end of the drop connected to the subscriber tap over any 6 month interval is limited to 8 dB.

probe. The active probe symbol for this capture normally includes all non-excluded subcarriers across the upstream OFDMA channel, and normally has pre-equalization off. The quiet probe symbol normally includes all subcarriers, that is, during the quiet probe time there are no transmissions in the given upstream OFDMA channel. The CMTS MUST capture samples of a full OFDMA symbol including the guard interval. The CMTS MUST begin the capture with the first symbol of the specified probe. The sample rate is the FFT sample rate (102.4 Msym/s).

The CMTS MUST report the list of excluded subcarriers, cyclic prefix length, and transmit window rolloff period in order to fully define the transmitted waveform. The CMTS MUST report the index of the starting sample used by the receiver for its FFT. The CMTS MUST report the timestamp corresponding to the beginning of the probe. In the case where the P-MAPs for the OFDMA upstream being analyzed are being sent in an OFDM downstream, the timestamp reported is the extended timestamp, while in a case with OFDMA upstream channels but no OFDM downstream channels, the reported timestamp is the DOCSIS 3.0 timestamp. For an active probe, the CMTS MUST report the contents of the Probe Information Element (P-IE) message describing that probe.

9.4.2 Upstream Triggered Spectrum Analysis

The upstream triggered spectrum analysis measurement provides a wideband spectrum analyzer function in the CMTS which can be triggered to examine desired upstream transmissions as well as underlying noise/interference during a quiet period.

The CMTS MUST provide wideband upstream spectrum analysis capability covering the full upstream spectrum of the cable plant. The CMTS MUST provide 100 kHz or better resolution (bin spacing) in the wideband upstream spectrum measurement. Free-running capture is done at a rate supported by the CMTS, and does not imply real-time operation.

The CMTS SHOULD provide the capability to average the FFT bin power of the spectrum over multiple captures.

The CMTS SHOULD provide a variable upstream spectrum analysis span.

The CMTS SHOULD be capable of providing the time-domain input samples as an alternative to the frequency-domain upstream spectrum results.

In pre-DOCSIS-3.1 mode, the CMTS MUST provide the ability to trigger the spectrum sample capture and perform spectrum analysis using the following modes:

- Free running
- Trigger on minislot count
- Trigger on SID (service identifier)
- Trigger during quiet period (idle SID)

In DOCSIS 3.1 mode, the CMTS MUST provide the ability to trigger spectrum sample capture and perform spectrum analysis using the following modes:

- Free running
- A specified timestamp value
- A specified MAC address, triggering at the beginning of the first minislot granted to any SID corresponding to the specified MAC address
- The idle SID, triggering at the beginning of the first minislot granted to that SID
- A specified active or quiet probe symbol, triggering at the beginning of the probe symbol

9.4.3 Upstream Impulse Noise Statistics

Upstream impulse noise statistics gather statistics of burst/impulse noise occurring in a selected narrow band as defined in [DOCSIS CCAP-OSSIv3.1]. A bandpass filter is positioned in an unoccupied upstream band. A threshold is set, energy exceeding the threshold triggers the measurement of an event, and energy falling below the threshold ends the event. The CMTS MAY allow the threshold to be set to zero, in which case the average power in the band will be measured. The measurement is timestamped using the DOCSIS 3.0 field of the 64-bit extended timestamp (bits 9-40, where bit 0 is the LSB), which provides a resolution of 98 ns and a range of 7 minutes.

The CMTS MUST provide the capability to capture the following statistics in a selected band up to 5.12 MHz wide:

- Timestamp of event
- Duration of event
- Average power of event

The CMTS MUST provide a time history buffer of up to 1024 events.

9.4.4 Upstream Equalizer Coefficients

This item provides access to CM upstream pre-equalizer coefficients, and CMTS upstream adaptive equalizer coefficients, which taken together describe the linear response of the upstream cable plant for a given CM. [DOCSIS CM-OSSIv3.1] specification defines summary metrics to avoid having to send all equalizer coefficients on every query. During the ranging process, the CMTS computes adaptive equalizer coefficients based on upstream probes; these coefficients describe the residual channel remaining after any pre-equalization. The CMTS sends these equalizer coefficients to the CM as a set of Transmit Equalization Adjust coefficients as part of the ranging process.

The CM MUST provide the capability to report its upstream pre-equalizer coefficients (full set or summary) upon request. The CM MUST provide the capability to also report the most recent set of Transmit Equalization Adjust coefficients which were applied to produce the reported set of upstream pre-equalizer coefficients. The CM MUST report a condition in which it modified or did not apply the Transmit Equalization Adjust coefficients sent to it by the CMTS.

The CMTS MUST provide a capability for reporting its upstream adaptive equalizer coefficients associated with probes from a CM upon request.

9.4.5 Upstream FEC Statistics

Upstream FEC statistics provide for monitoring upstream link quality via FEC and related statistics. Statistics are taken on codeword error events. The measurement is time-stamped using bits 21-52 of the extended timestamp, which provides a 32-bit timestamp value with resolution of 0.4 ms and range of 20 days. An LDPC codeword that fails post-decoding syndrome check will be labeled "unreliable", but the data portion of the codeword may not contain bit errors; hence the "unreliable codeword" count will tend to be pessimistic. All codewords, whether full-length or shortened, are included in the measurements. The codeword (or frame) and error counters are long (e.g., 64-bit) integers, so that overflow is not an issue.

The CMTS MUST be capable of providing the following FEC statistics for any specified single upstream user:

- Pre-FEC Error-Free Codewords: Number of codewords that passed pre-decoding syndrome check.
- Unreliable Codewords: Number of codewords that failed post-decoding syndrome check.
- Corrected Codewords: Number of codewords that failed pre-decoding syndrome check, but passed post-decoding syndrome check.
- MAC CRC failures: Number of frames that failed MAC CRC check.
- Total number of FEC codewords.
- Total number of MAC frames.
- Start and stop time of analysis period, or time that snapshot of counters was taken.
- SID corresponding to upstream user being measured.

The CMTS MUST be capable of providing the following FEC summaries over a rolling 10 minute period for any single upstream user:

- Total number of seconds.

- Number of errored seconds (seconds during which at least one unreliable codeword occurred).
- Count of codeword errors (unreliable codewords) in each 1-second interval (600 values over 10 minutes).
- Start and stop time of summary period.

9.4.6 Upstream Histogram[53]

The purpose of the upstream histogram is to provide a measurement of nonlinear effects in the channel such as amplifier compression and laser clipping. For example, laser clipping causes one tail of the histogram to be truncated and replaced with a spike. The CMTS MUST be capable of capturing the histogram of time domain samples at the wideband front end of the receiver (full upstream band). When the CMTS creates an upstream histogram, the CMTS MUST create it such that it is a two-sided histogram; that is, it encompasses values from far-negative to far-positive values of the samples. When a CMTS creates an upstream histogram, the CMTS MUST create it such that is has either 256 equally spaced bins with even symmetry about the origin, or 255 equally spaced bins with odd symmetry about the origin. These bins typically correspond to the 8 MSBs of the wideband analog-to-digital converter (ADC). The histogram dwell count, a 32-bit unsigned integer, is the number of samples observed while counting hits for a given bin, and may have the same value for all bins. The histogram hit count, a 32-bit unsigned integer, is the number of samples falling in a given bin. The CMTS MUST be capable of reporting the dwell count per bin and the hit count per bin. When enabled, the CMTS MUST compute a histogram with a dwell of at least 10 million samples 30 seconds or less. With this many samples, the histogram can reliably measure a probability density per bin as low as 10^{-6} with at least 10 hits in each bin. The CMTS MUST continue accumulating histogram samples until it is restarted, disabled, approaches its 32-bit overflow value, or times out. The CMTS MUST report the start and end time of the histogram measurement using bits 21-52 of the extended timestamp, which provides a 32-bit timestamp value with resolution of 0.4 ms and range of 20 days.

9.4.7 Upstream Channel Power[54]

The purpose of the upstream channel power metric is to provide an estimate of the total received power in a specified OFDMA channel at the F connector input of the CMTS line card, or other agreed measurement point, for a given user. The measurement is based on upstream probes, which are typically the same probes used for pre-equalization adjustment. While digital power measurements are inherently accurate, the measurement referred to the analog input depends on available calibration accuracy.

The CMTS MUST provide an estimate of total received power in a specified OFDMA channel at a reference input point, for a single specified upstream user. The CMTS MUST provide configurable averaging over a range at least including 1 to 32 probes.

The CMTS MUST provide upstream power measurements with a standard deviation of 0.33 dB or better under the following test conditions:

- Center frequency is fixed.
- Probe being measured has a fixed configuration containing at least 256 active subcarriers for 4K FFT, and at least 200 active subcarriers for 2K FFT.
- Channel is without impairments other than AWGN at 25 dB CNR.
- Signal level is fixed at a value within ± 6 dB relative to a nominal receive level of 0 dBmV.
- A minimum warm up time of 5 minutes occurs before power measurements are made.
- Averaging is set to N = 8 probes per measurement.
- M measurements (M large enough for reliable statistics) are taken in succession (e.g., over a period of up to 10 minutes). The standard deviation is computed over the M measurements, where each measurement is the average of N probes.

[53]Revised per PHYv3.1-N- 14.1174-1 on 12/11/14 by JB.
[54] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-14.1203-2 on 12/11/14 and per PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-2 on 2/27/15 by JB.

9.4.8 Upstream Receive Modulation Error Ratio (RxMER) Per Subcarrier[55]

This item provides measurements of the upstream receive modulation error ratio (RxMER) for each subcarrier. The CMTS measures the RxMER using an upstream probe, which is not subject to symbol errors as data subcarriers would be. The probes used for RxMER measurement are typically distinct from the probes used for pre-equalization adjustment. For the purposes of this measurement, RxMER is defined as the ratio of the average power of the ideal BPSK constellation to the average error-vector power. The error vector is the difference between the equalized received probe value and the known correct probe value.

The CMTS MUST be capable of providing measurements of RxMER for all active subcarriers for any single specified user in a specified OFDMA upstream channel, using probe symbols. A sufficient number of upstream probe symbols should be used for a reliable estimate of RxMER.

Performance requirements for upstream RxMER measurements are defined under the following specified conditions:

- Channel loading consists of a single upstream OFDMA channel with no other signals.
- OFDMA channel being measured has a fixed configuration with a 96 MHz channel bandwidth with 95 MHz modulated spectrum and no excluded subcarriers other than at band edges.
- Channel is flat without impairments other than AWGN.
- AWGN level is set to two values giving data-subcarrier CNR = 30 dB and 35 dB at the cable access network F connector of the CMTS receiver across all data subcarriers in the OFDMA channel.
- Signal level is fixed at a nominal receive level of 10 dBmV per 6.4 MHz.
- A minimum warm-up time of 30 minutes occurs before measurements are made.
- Measurement is done using 8-symbol RxMER probes with a skip value of 0 (non-staggered probes).
- Each measurement consists of the frequency average across all subcarriers of the reported time-averaged individual subcarrier RxMER values in dB, where time averaging is over the 8 symbols in a single probe. Frequency averaging can be provided by the OFDMA receiver or performed by external computation.

To gather statistics for a test, an ensemble of M of the above frequency- and time-averaged RxMER measurements (M large enough for reliable statistics, i.e. such that the result lies within a given confidence interval) are taken in succession (e.g., over a period of up to 10 minutes) at both CNR values. The mean, RxMER_mean in dB, and standard deviation, RxMER_std in dB, are computed over the M measurements at both CNR values. The statistical computations are performed directly on the dB values.

The CMTS MUST provide RxMER measurements with RxMER_std <= 0.5 dB under the above specified conditions.

Define delta_RxMER = (RxMER_mean at CNR_data_subcarrier = 35 dB) - (RxMER_mean at CNR_data_subcarrier = 30 dB). The CMTS MUST provide RxMER measurements such that 4 dB<= delta_RxMER <= 6 dB under the above specified conditions.

[55] Revised per PHYv3.1-N-15.1270-1 on 2/25/15 by JB.

Annex A QAM Constellation Mappings (Normative)[56]

The CMTS MUST use the QAM constellation mappings given in this section for all downstream transmissions. Downstream transmissions do not contain 8-QAM or 32-QAM constellations.

The CM MUST use the QAM constellation mappings given in this section for all upstream transmissions. Upstream transmissions do not contain 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM constellations.

Sample code showing the bit to QAM constellation mapping is provided in [PHYv3.1 QAM].

A.1 QAM Constellations

The figures given below show the mapping of an m-tuple onto a (Real, Imaginary) point in the complex plane. The horizontal axis is the real axis and the vertical axis is the imaginary axis.

The m-tuple is represented by:

$$\{y_0\ y_1\ \dots\ y_{m-1}\}$$

Mapping of the FEC encoded bitstreams to the m-tuples is described in the sections detailing downstream and upstream transmissions.

Each m-tuple is represented as a hexadecimal number in all the constellation diagrams given below.

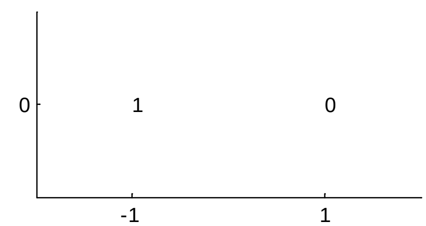


Figure A–1 - BPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0\}$

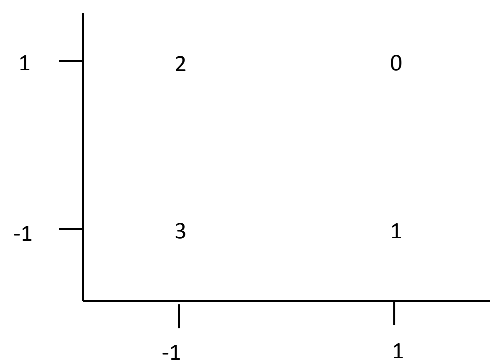


Figure A–2 - QPSK Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0 y_1\}$

[56] Revised per PHY3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by PO.

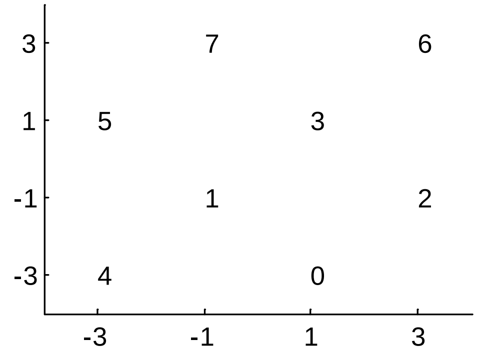


Figure A–3 - 8-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0\ y_1\ y_2\}$

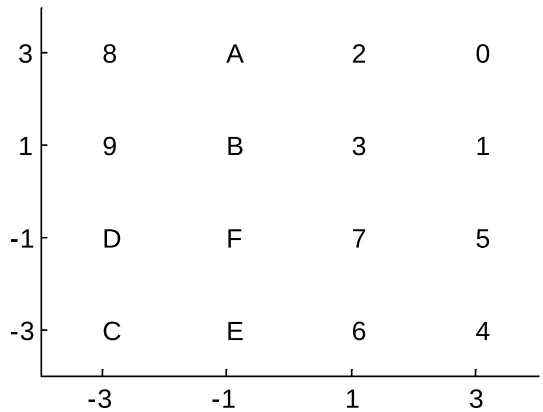


Figure A–4 - 16-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0\ y_1\ y_2\ y_3\}$

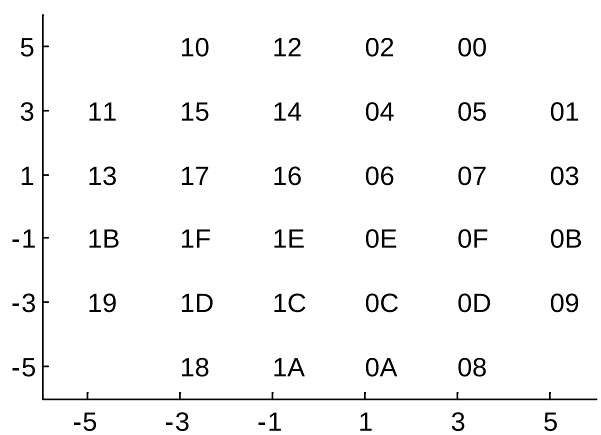


Figure A–5 - 32-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0 y_1 y_2 y_3 y_4\}$

	-7	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5	7
7	20	22	2A	28	08	0A	02	00
5	21	23	2B	29	09	0B	03	01
3	25	27	2F	2D	0D	0F	07	05
1	24	26	2E	2C	0C	0E	06	04
-1	34	36	3E	3C	1C	1E	16	14
-3	35	37	3F	3D	1D	1F	17	15
-5	31	33	3B	39	19	1B	13	11
-7	30	32	3A	38	18	1A	12	10

Figure A–6 - 64-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_0 y_1 y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5\}$

	-11	-9	-7	-5	-3	-1	1	3	5	7	9	11
11			42	43	4B	4A	0A	0B	03	02		
9			40	41	49	48	08	09	01	00		
7	45	44	54	55	51	50	10	11	15	14	04	05
5	47	46	56	57	53	52	12	13	17	16	06	07
3	4F	4E	5E	5F	5B	5A	1A	1B	1F	1E	0E	0F
1	4D	4C	5C	5D	59	58	18	19	1D	1C	0C	0D
-1	6D	6C	7C	7D	79	78	38	39	3D	3C	2C	2D
-3	6F	6E	7E	7F	7B	7A	3A	3B	3F	3E	2E	2F
-5	67	66	76	77	73	72	32	33	37	36	26	27
-7	65	64	74	75	71	70	30	31	35	34	24	25
-9			60	61	69	68	28	29	21	20		
-11			62	63	6B	6A	2A	2B	23	22		

Figure A–7 - 128-QAM Constellation mapping of $\{y_0 y_1 y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5 y_6\}$

In order to reduce the size of the diagrams, only the first quadrant is shown for the larger constellations, namely, 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, 4096-QAM, 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM. The mapping of the two bits $\{y_0\ y_1\}$ of $\{y_0\ y_1\ \ldots\ y_{m-1}\}$ is the same for all these QAM constellations, as illustrated in Figure A–8.

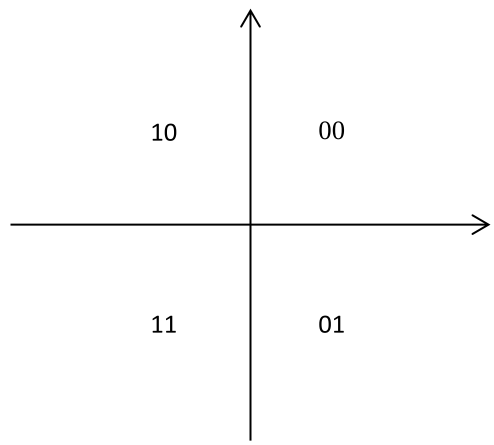


Figure A–8 - Mapping of Bits $\{y_0\ y_1\}$ of $\{y_0\ y_1, \ldots, y_{m-1}\}$ for Constellations with only one Quadrant Defined

The mapping of the bits of $\{y_2\ y_3, \ldots, y_{m-1}\}$ to the first quadrant of the constellation is given in the figures below for 256-QAM, 512-QAM, 1024-QAM, 2048-QAM, 4096-QAM, 8192-QAM and 16384-QAM. The mappings for the other three quadrants are obtained by mirroring the first quadrant about the horizontal and vertical axis as illustrated in the figure below. This figure shows only a (3x3) grid of points in each quadrant for illustration of the above mentioned reflective property. However, this reflective mapping is applicable to any number of points in each quadrant. Quadrant 1 is reflected about the vertical axis to get quadrant 2. Quadrant 1 is reflected about the horizontal axis to get quadrant 4. Quadrant 2 is reflected about the horizontal axis to get quadrant 3.

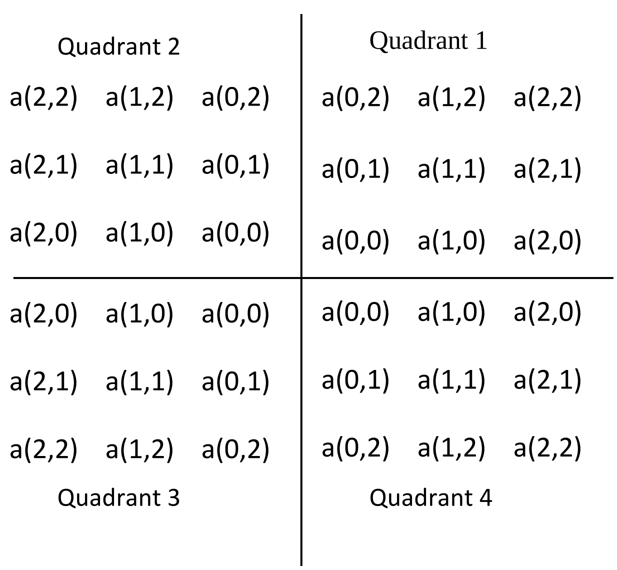


Figure A–9 - Reflective Mapping of bits $\{y_2\ y_3, \ldots, y_{m-1}\}$ for All Constellations (except BPSK)

15	20	22	2A	28	08	0A	02	00
13	21	23	2B	29	09	0B	03	01
11	25	27	2F	2D	0D	0F	07	05
9	24	26	2E	2C	0C	0E	06	04
7	34	36	3E	3C	1C	1E	16	14
5	35	37	3F	3D	1D	1F	17	15
3	31	33	3B	39	19	1B	13	11
1	30	32	3A	38	18	1A	12	10
	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15

Figure A–10 - 256-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5 y_6 y_7\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

23	028	029	02D	02C	00C	00D	009	008				
21	02A	02B	02F	02E	00E	00F	00B	00A				
19	022	023	027	026	006	007	003	002				
17	020	021	025	024	004	005	001	000				
15	040	041	045	044	054	055	051	050	010	011	015	014
13	042	043	047	046	056	057	053	052	012	013	017	016
11	04A	04B	04F	04E	05E	05F	05B	05A	01A	01B	01F	01E
9	048	049	04D	04C	05C	05D	059	058	018	019	01D	01C
7	068	069	06D	06C	07C	07D	079	078	038	039	03D	03C
5	06A	06B	06F	06E	07E	07F	07B	07A	03A	03B	03F	03E
3	062	063	067	066	076	077	073	072	032	033	037	036
1	060	061	065	064	074	075	071	070	030	031	035	034
	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23

Figure A–11 - 512-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5 y_6 y_7 y_8\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

31	080	082	08A	088	0A8	0AA	0A2	0A0	020	022	02A	028	008	00A	002	000
29	081	083	08B	089	0A9	0AB	0A3	0A1	021	023	02B	029	009	00B	003	001
27	085	087	08F	08D	0AD	0AF	0A7	0A5	025	027	02F	02D	00D	00F	007	005
25	084	086	08E	08C	0AC	0AE	0A6	0A4	024	026	02E	02C	00C	00E	006	004
23	094	096	09E	09C	0BC	0BE	0B6	0B4	034	036	03E	03C	01C	01E	016	014
21	095	097	09F	09D	0BD	0BF	0B7	0B5	035	037	03F	03D	01D	01F	017	015
19	091	093	09B	099	0B9	0BB	0B3	0B1	031	033	03B	039	019	01B	013	011
17	090	092	09A	098	0B8	0BA	0B2	0B0	030	032	03A	038	018	01A	012	010
15	0D0	0D2	0DA	0D8	0F8	0FA	0F2	0F0	070	072	07A	078	058	05A	052	050
13	0D1	0D3	0DB	0D9	0F9	0FB	0F3	0F1	071	073	07B	079	059	05B	053	051
11	0D5	0D7	0DF	0DD	0FD	0FF	0F7	0F5	075	077	07F	07D	05D	05F	057	055
9	0D4	0D6	0DE	0DC	0FC	0FE	0F6	0F4	074	076	07E	07C	05C	05E	056	054
7	0C4	0C6	0CE	0CC	0EC	0EE	0E6	0E4	064	066	06E	06C	04C	04E	046	044
5	0C5	0C7	0CF	0CD	0ED	0EF	0E7	0E5	065	067	06F	06D	04D	04F	047	045
3	0C1	0C3	0CB	0C9	0E9	0EB	0E3	0E1	061	063	06B	069	049	04B	043	041
1	0C0	0C2	0CA	0C8	0E8	0EA	0E2	0E0	060	062	06A	068	048	04A	042	040
	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31

Figure A–12 - 1024-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2y_3y_4y_5y_6y_7y_8y_9\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

47	0A0	0A1	0A5	0A4	0B4	0B5	0B1	0B0	030	031	035	034	024	025	021	020								
45	0A2	0A3	0A7	0A6	0B6	0B7	0B3	0B2	032	033	037	036	026	027	023	022								
43	0AA	0AB	0AF	0AE	0BE	0BF	0BB	0BA	03A	03B	03F	03E	02E	02F	02B	02A								
41	0A8	0A9	0AD	0AC	0BC	0BD	0B9	0B8	038	039	03D	03C	02C	02D	029	028								
39	088	089	08D	08C	09C	09D	099	098	018	019	01D	01C	00C	00D	009	008								
37	08A	08B	08F	08E	09E	09F	09B	09A	01A	01B	01F	01E	00E	00F	00B	00A								
35	082	083	087	086	096	097	093	092	012	013	017	016	006	007	003	002								
33	080	081	085	084	094	095	091	090	010	011	015	014	004	005	001	000								
31	100	101	105	104	114	115	111	110	150	151	155	154	144	145	141	140	040	041	045	044	054	055	051	050
29	102	103	107	106	116	117	113	112	152	153	157	156	146	147	143	142	042	043	047	046	056	057	053	052
27	10A	10B	10F	10E	11E	11F	11B	11A	15A	15B	15F	15E	14E	14F	14B	14A	04A	04B	04F	04E	05E	05F	05B	05A
25	108	109	10D	10C	11C	11D	119	118	158	159	15D	15C	14C	14D	149	148	048	049	04D	04C	05C	05D	059	058
23	128	129	12D	12C	13C	13D	139	138	178	179	17D	17C	16C	16D	169	168	068	069	06D	06C	07C	07D	079	078
21	12A	12B	12F	12E	13E	13F	13B	13A	17A	17B	17F	17E	16E	16F	16B	16A	06A	06B	06F	06E	07E	07F	07B	07A
19	122	123	127	126	136	137	133	132	172	173	177	176	166	167	163	162	062	063	067	066	076	077	073	072
17	120	121	125	124	134	135	131	130	170	171	175	174	164	165	161	160	060	061	065	064	074	075	071	070
15	1A0	1A1	1A5	1A4	1B4	1B5	1B1	1B0	1F0	1F1	1F5	1F4	1E4	1E5	1E1	1E0	0E0	0E1	0E5	0E4	0F4	0F5	0F1	0F0
13	1A2	1A3	1A7	1A6	1B6	1B7	1B3	1B2	1F2	1F3	1F7	1F6	1E6	1E7	1E3	1E2	0E2	0E3	0E7	0E6	0F6	0F7	0F3	0F2
11	1AA	1AB	1AF	1AE	1BE	1BF	1BB	1BA	1FA	1FB	1FF	1FE	1EE	1EF	1EB	1EA	0EA	0EB	0EF	0EE	0FE	0FF	0FB	0FA
9	1A8	1A9	1AD	1AC	1BC	1BD	1B9	1B8	1F8	1F9	1FD	1FC	1EC	1ED	1E9	1E8	0E8	0E9	0ED	0EC	0FC	0FD	0F9	0F8
7	188	189	18D	18C	19C	19D	199	198	1D8	1D9	1DD	1DC	1CC	1CD	1C9	1C8	0C8	0C9	0CD	0CC	0DC	0DD	0D9	0D8
5	18A	18B	18F	18E	19E	19F	19B	19A	1DA	1DB	1DF	1DE	1CE	1CF	1CB	1CA	0CA	0CB	0CF	0CE	0DE	0DF	0DB	0DA
3	182	183	187	186	196	197	193	192	1D2	1D3	1D7	1D6	1C6	1C7	1C3	1C2	0C2	0C3	0C7	0C6	0D6	0D7	0D3	0D2
1	180	181	185	184	194	195	191	190	1D0	1D1	1D5	1D4	1C4	1C5	1C1	1C0	0C0	0C1	0C5	0C4	0D4	0D5	0D1	0D0
	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47

Figure A–13 - 2048-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5 y_6 y_7 y_8 y_9 y_{10}\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63
63	200	202	20A	208	228	22A	222	220	2A0	2A2	2AA	2A8	288	28A	282	280	080	082	08A	088	0A8	0AA	0A2	0A0	020	022	02A	028	008	00A	002	000
61	201	203	20B	209	229	22B	223	221	2A1	2A3	2AB	2A9	289	28B	283	281	081	083	08B	089	0A9	0AB	0A3	0A1	021	023	02B	029	009	00B	003	001
59	205	207	20F	20D	22D	22F	227	225	2A5	2A7	2AF	2AD	28D	28F	287	285	085	087	08F	08D	0AD	0AF	0A7	0A5	025	027	02F	02D	00D	00F	007	005
57	204	206	20E	20C	22C	22E	226	224	2A4	2A6	2AE	2AC	28C	28E	286	284	084	086	08E	08C	0AC	0AE	0A6	0A4	024	026	02E	02C	00C	00E	006	004
55	214	216	21E	21C	23C	23E	236	234	2B4	2B6	2BE	2BC	29C	29E	296	294	094	096	09E	09C	0BC	0BE	0B6	0B4	034	036	03E	03C	01C	01E	016	014
53	215	217	21F	21D	23D	23F	237	235	2B5	2B7	2BF	2BD	29D	29F	297	295	095	097	09F	09D	0BD	0BF	0B7	0B5	035	037	03F	03D	01D	01F	017	015
51	211	213	21B	219	239	23B	233	231	2B1	2B3	2BB	2B9	299	29B	293	291	091	093	09B	099	0B9	0BB	0B3	0B1	031	033	03B	039	019	01B	013	011
49	210	212	21A	218	238	23A	232	230	2B0	2B2	2BA	2B8	298	29A	292	290	090	092	09A	098	0B8	0BA	0B2	0B0	030	032	03A	038	018	01A	012	010
47	250	252	25A	258	278	27A	272	270	2F0	2F2	2FA	2F8	2D8	2DA	2D2	2D0	0D0	0D2	0DA	0D8	0F8	0FA	0F2	0F0	070	072	07A	078	058	05A	052	050
45	251	253	25B	259	279	27B	273	271	2F1	2F3	2FB	2F9	2D9	2DB	2D3	2D1	0D1	0D3	0DB	0D9	0F9	0FB	0F3	0F1	071	073	07B	079	059	05B	053	051
43	255	257	25F	25D	27D	27F	277	275	2F5	2F7	2FF	2FD	2DD	2DF	2D7	2D5	0D5	0D7	0DF	0DD	0FD	0FF	0F7	0F5	075	077	07F	07D	05D	05F	057	055
41	254	256	25E	25C	27C	27E	276	274	2F4	2F6	2FE	2FC	2DC	2DE	2D6	2D4	0D4	0D6	0DE	0DC	0FC	0FE	0F6	0F4	074	076	07E	07C	05C	05E	056	054
39	244	246	24E	24C	26C	26E	266	264	2E4	2E6	2EE	2EC	2CC	2CE	2C6	2C4	0C4	0C6	0CE	0CC	0EC	0EE	0E6	0E4	064	066	06E	06C	04C	04E	046	044
37	245	247	24F	24D	26D	26F	267	265	2E5	2E7	2EF	2ED	2CD	2CF	2C7	2C5	0C5	0C7	0CF	0CD	0ED	0EF	0E7	0E5	065	067	06F	06D	04D	04F	047	045
35	241	243	24B	249	269	26B	263	261	2E1	2E3	2EB	2E9	2C9	2CB	2C3	2C1	0C1	0C3	0CB	0C9	0E9	0EB	0E3	0E1	061	063	06B	069	049	04B	043	041
33	240	242	24A	248	268	26A	262	260	2E0	2E2	2EA	2E8	2C8	2CA	2C2	2C0	0C0	0C2	0CA	0C8	0E8	0EA	0E2	0E0	060	062	06A	068	048	04A	042	040
31	340	342	34A	348	368	36A	362	360	3E0	3E2	3EA	3E8	3C8	3CA	3C2	3C0	1C0	1C2	1CA	1C8	1E8	1EA	1E2	1E0	160	162	16A	168	148	14A	142	140
29	341	343	34B	349	369	36B	363	361	3E1	3E3	3EB	3E9	3C9	3CB	3C3	3C1	1C1	1C3	1CB	1C9	1E9	1EB	1E3	1E1	161	163	16B	169	149	14B	143	141
27	345	347	34F	34D	36D	36F	367	365	3E5	3E7	3EF	3ED	3CD	3CF	3C7	3C5	1C5	1C7	1CF	1CD	1ED	1EF	1E7	1E5	165	167	16F	16D	14D	14F	147	145
25	344	346	34E	34C	36C	36E	366	364	3E4	3E6	3EE	3EC	3CC	3CE	3C6	3C4	1C4	1C6	1CE	1CC	1EC	1EE	1E6	1E4	164	166	16E	16C	14C	14E	146	144
23	354	356	35E	35C	37C	37E	376	374	3F4	3F6	3FE	3FC	3DC	3DE	3D6	3D4	1D4	1D6	1DE	1DC	1FC	1FE	1F6	1F4	174	176	17E	17C	15C	15E	156	154
21	355	357	35F	35D	37D	37F	377	375	3F5	3F7	3FF	3FD	3DD	3DF	3D7	3D5	1D5	1D7	1DF	1DD	1FD	1FF	1F7	1F5	175	177	17F	17D	15D	15F	157	155
19	351	353	35B	359	379	37B	373	371	3F1	3F3	3FB	3F9	3D9	3DB	3D3	3D1	1D1	1D3	1DB	1D9	1F9	1FB	1F3	1F1	171	173	17B	179	159	15B	153	151
17	350	352	35A	358	378	37A	372	370	3F0	3F2	3FA	3F8	3D8	3DA	3D2	3D0	1D0	1D2	1DA	1D8	1F8	1FA	1F2	1F0	170	172	17A	178	158	15A	152	150
15	310	312	31A	318	338	33A	332	330	3B0	3B2	3BA	3B8	398	39A	392	390	190	192	19A	198	1B8	1BA	1B2	1B0	130	132	13A	138	118	11A	112	110
13	311	313	31B	319	339	33B	333	331	3B1	3B3	3BB	3B9	399	39B	393	391	191	193	19B	199	1B9	1BB	1B3	1B1	131	133	13B	139	119	11B	113	111
11	315	317	31F	31D	33D	33F	337	335	3B5	3B7	3BF	3BD	39D	39F	397	395	195	197	19F	19D	1BD	1BF	1B7	1B5	135	137	13F	13D	11D	11F	117	115
9	314	316	31E	31C	33C	33E	336	334	3B4	3B6	3BE	3BC	39C	39E	396	394	194	196	19E	19C	1BC	1BE	1B6	1B4	134	136	13E	13C	11C	11E	116	114
7	304	306	30E	30C	32C	32E	326	324	3A4	3A6	3AE	3AC	38C	38E	386	384	184	186	18E	18C	1AC	1AE	1A6	1A4	124	126	12E	12C	10C	10E	106	104
5	305	307	30F	30D	32D	32F	327	325	3A5	3A7	3AF	3AD	38D	38F	387	385	185	187	18F	18D	1AD	1AF	1A7	1A5	125	127	12F	12D	10D	10F	107	105
3	301	303	30B	309	329	32B	323	321	3A1	3A3	3AB	3A9	389	38B	383	381	181	183	18B	189	1A9	1AB	1A3	1A1	121	123	12B	129	109	10B	103	101
1	300	302	30A	308	328	32A	322	320	3A0	3A2	3AA	3A8	388	38A	382	380	180	182	18A	188	1A8	1AA	1A2	1A0	120	122	12A	128	108	10A	102	100

Figure A–14 - 4096-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2 y_3 y_4 y_5 y_6 y_7 y_8 y_9 y_{10} y_{11}\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

95	0280	0281	0285	0284	0294	0295	0291	0290	02D0	02D1	02D5	02D4	02C4	02C5	02C1	02C0	00C0	00C1	00C5	00C4	00D4	00D5	00D1	00D0	0090	0091	0095	0094	0084	0085	0081	0080																
93	0282	0283	0287	0286	0296	0297	0293	0292	02D2	02D3	02D7	02D6	02C6	02C7	02C3	02C2	00C2	00C3	00C7	00C6	00D6	00D7	00D3	00D2	0092	0093	0097	0096	0086	0087	0083	0082																
91	028A	028B	028F	028E	029E	029F	029B	029A	02DA	02DB	02DF	02DE	02CE	02CF	02CB	02CA	00CA	00CB	00CF	00CE	00DE	00DF	00DB	00DA	009A	009B	009F	009E	008E	008F	008B	008A																
89	0288	0289	028D	028C	029C	029D	0299	0298	02D8	02D9	02DD	02DC	02CC	02CD	02C9	02C8	00C8	00C9	00CD	00CC	00DC	00DD	00D9	00D8	0098	0099	009D	009C	008C	008D	0089	0088																
87	02A8	02A9	02AD	02AC	02BC	02BD	02B9	02B8	02F8	02F9	02FD	02FC	02EC	02ED	02E9	02E8	00E8	00E9	00ED	00EC	00FC	00FD	00F9	00F8	00B8	00B9	00BD	00BC	00AC	00AD	00A9	00A8																
85	02AA	02AB	02AF	02AE	02BE	02BF	02BB	02BA	02FA	02FB	02FF	02FE	02EE	02EF	02EB	02EA	00EA	00EB	00EF	00EE	00FE	00FF	00FB	00FA	00BA	00BB	00BF	00BE	00AE	00AF	00AB	00AA																
83	02A2	02A3	02A7	02A6	02B6	02B7	02B3	02B2	02F2	02F3	02F7	02F6	02E6	02E7	02E3	02E2	00E2	00E3	00E7	00E6	00F6	00F7	00F3	00F2	00B2	00B3	00B7	00B6	00A6	00A7	00A3	00A2																
81	02A0	02A1	02A5	02A4	02B4	02B5	02B1	02B0	02F0	02F1	02F5	02F4	02E4	02E5	02E1	02E0	00E0	00E1	00E5	00E4	00F4	00F5	00F1	00F0	00B0	00B1	00B5	00B4	00A4	00A5	00A1	00A0																
79	0220	0221	0225	0224	0234	0235	0231	0230	0270	0271	0275	0274	0264	0265	0261	0260	0060	0061	0065	0064	0074	0075	0071	0070	0030	0031	0035	0034	0024	0025	0021	0020																
77	0222	0223	0227	0226	0236	0237	0233	0232	0272	0273	0277	0276	0266	0267	0263	0262	0062	0063	0067	0066	0076	0077	0073	0072	0032	0033	0037	0036	0026	0027	0023	0022																
75	022A	022B	022F	022E	023E	023F	023B	023A	027A	027B	027F	027E	026E	026F	026B	026A	006A	006B	006F	006E	007E	007F	007B	007A	003A	003B	003F	003E	002E	002F	002B	002A																
73	0228	0229	022D	022C	023C	023D	0239	0238	0278	0279	027D	027C	026C	026D	0269	0268	0068	0069	006D	006C	007C	007D	0079	0078	0038	0039	003D	003C	002C	002D	0029	0028																
71	0208	0209	020D	020C	021C	021D	0219	0218	0258	0259	025D	025C	024C	024D	0249	0248	0048	0049	004D	004C	005C	005D	0059	0058	0018	0019	001D	001C	000C	000D	0009	0008																
69	020A	020B	020F	020E	021E	021F	021B	021A	025A	025B	025F	025E	024E	024F	024B	024A	004A	004B	004F	004E	005E	005F	005B	005A	001A	001B	001F	001E	000E	000F	000B	000A																
67	0202	0203	0207	0206	0216	0217	0213	0212	0252	0253	0257	0256	0246	0247	0243	0242	0042	0043	0047	0046	0056	0057	0053	0052	0012	0013	0017	0016	0006	0007	0003	0002																
65	0200	0201	0205	0204	0214	0215	0211	0210	0250	0251	0255	0254	0244	0245	0241	0240	0040	0041	0045	0044	0054	0055	0051	0050	0010	0011	0015	0014	0004	0005	0001	0000																
63	0400	0401	0405	0404	0414	0415	0411	0410	0450	0451	0455	0454	0444	0445	0441	0440	0540	0541	0545	0544	0554	0555	0551	0550	0510	0511	0515	0514	0504	0505	0501	0500	0100	0101	0105	0104	0114	0115	0111	0110	0150	0151	0155	0154	0144	0145	0141	0140
61	0402	0403	0407	0406	0416	0417	0413	0412	0452	0453	0457	0456	0446	0447	0443	0442	0542	0543	0547	0546	0556	0557	0553	0552	0512	0513	0517	0516	0506	0507	0503	0502	0102	0103	0107	0106	0116	0117	0113	0112	0152	0153	0157	0156	0146	0147	0143	0142
59	040A	040B	040F	040E	041E	041F	041B	041A	045A	045B	045F	045E	044E	044F	044B	044A	054A	054B	054F	054E	055E	055F	055B	055A	051A	051B	051F	051E	050E	050F	050B	050A	010A	010B	010F	010E	011E	011F	011B	011A	015A	015B	015F	015E	014E	014F	014B	014A
57	0408	0409	040D	040C	041C	041D	0419	0418	0458	0459	045D	045C	044C	044D	0449	0448	0548	0549	054D	054C	055C	055D	0559	0558	0518	0519	051D	051C	050C	050D	0509	0508	0108	0109	010D	010C	011C	011D	0119	0118	0158	0159	015D	015C	014C	014D	0149	0148
55	0428	0429	042D	042C	043C	043D	0439	0438	0478	0479	047D	047C	046C	046D	0469	0468	0568	0569	056D	056C	057C	057D	0579	0578	0538	0539	053D	053C	052C	052D	0529	0528	0128	0129	012D	012C	013C	013D	0139	0138	0178	0179	017D	017C	016C	016D	0169	0168
53	042A	042B	042F	042E	043E	043F	043B	043A	047A	047B	047F	047E	046E	046F	046B	046A	056A	056B	056F	056E	057E	057F	057B	057A	053A	053B	053F	053E	052E	052F	052B	052A	012A	012B	012F	012E	013E	013F	013B	013A	017A	017B	017F	017E	016E	016F	016B	016A
51	0422	0423	0427	0426	0436	0437	0433	0432	0472	0473	0477	0476	0466	0467	0463	0462	0562	0563	0567	0566	0576	0577	0573	0572	0532	0533	0537	0536	0526	0527	0523	0522	0122	0123	0127	0126	0136	0137	0133	0132	0172	0173	0177	0176	0166	0167	0163	0162
49	0420	0421	0425	0424	0434	0435	0431	0430	0470	0471	0475	0474	0464	0465	0461	0460	0560	0561	0565	0564	0574	0575	0571	0570	0530	0531	0535	0534	0524	0525	0521	0520	0120	0121	0125	0124	0134	0135	0131	0130	0170	0171	0175	0174	0164	0165	0161	0160
47	04A0	04A1	04A5	04A4	04B4	04B5	04B1	04B0	04F0	04F1	04F5	04F4	04E4	04E5	04E1	04E0	05E0	05E1	05E5	05E4	05F4	05F5	05F1	05F0	05B0	05B1	05B5	05B4	05A4	05A5	05A1	05A0	01A0	01A1	01A5	01A4	01B4	01B5	01B1	01B0	01F0	01F1	01F5	01F4	01E4	01E5	01E1	01E0
45	04A2	04A3	04A7	04A6	04B6	04B7	04B3	04B2	04F2	04F3	04F7	04F6	04E6	04E7	04E3	04E2	05E2	05E3	05E7	05E6	05F6	05F7	05F3	05F2	05B2	05B3	05B7	05B6	05A6	05A7	05A3	05A2	01A2	01A3	01A7	01A6	01B6	01B7	01B3	01B2	01F2	01F3	01F7	01F6	01E6	01E7	01E3	01E2
43	04AA	04AB	04AF	04AE	04BE	04BF	04BB	04BA	04FA	04FB	04FF	04FE	04EE	04EF	04EB	04EA	05EA	05EB	05EF	05EE	05FE	05FF	05FB	05FA	05BA	05BB	05BF	05BE	05AE	05AF	05AB	05AA	01AA	01AB	01AF	01AE	01BE	01BF	01BB	01BA	01FA	01FB	01FF	01FE	01EE	01EF	01EB	01EA
41	04A8	04A9	04AD	04AC	04BC	04BD	04B9	04B8	04F8	04F9	04FD	04FC	04EC	04ED	04E9	04E8	05E8	05E9	05ED	05EC	05FC	05FD	05F9	05F8	05B8	05B9	05BD	05BC	05AC	05AD	05A9	05A8	01A8	01A9	01AD	01AC	01BC	01BD	01B9	01B8	01F8	01F9	01FD	01FC	01EC	01ED	01E9	01E8
39	0488	0489	048D	048C	049C	049D	0499	0498	04D8	04D9	04DD	04DC	04CC	04CD	04C9	04C8	05C8	05C9	05CD	05CC	05DC	05DD	05D9	05D8	0598	0599	059D	059C	058C	058D	0589	0588	0188	0189	018D	018C	019C	019D	0199	0198	01D8	01D9	01DD	01DC	01CC	01CD	01C9	01C8
37	048A	048B	048F	048E	049E	049F	049B	049A	04DA	04DB	04DF	04DE	04CE	04CF	04CB	04CA	05CA	05CB	05CF	05CE	05DE	05DF	05DB	05DA	059A	059B	059F	059E	058E	058F	058B	058A	018A	018B	018F	018E	019E	019F	019B	019A	01DA	01DB	01DF	01DE	01CE	01CF	01CB	01CA
35	0482	0483	0487	0486	0496	0497	0493	0492	04D2	04D3	04D7	04D6	04C6	04C7	04C3	04C2	05C2	05C3	05C7	05C6	05D6	05D7	05D3	05D2	0592	0593	0597	0596	0586	0587	0583	0582	0182	0183	0187	0186	0196	0197	0193	0192	01D2	01D3	01D7	01D6	01C6	01C7	01C3	01C2
33	0480	0481	0485	0484	0494	0495	0491	0490	04D0	04D1	04D5	04D4	04C4	04C5	04C1	04C0	05C0	05C1	05C5	05C4	05D4	05D5	05D1	05D0	0590	0591	0595	0594	0584	0585	0581	0580	0180	0181	0185	0184	0194	0195	0191	0190	01D0	01D1	01D5	01D4	01C4	01C5	01C1	01C0
31	0680	0681	0685	0684	0694	0695	0691	0690	06D0	06D1	06D5	06D4	06C4	06C5	06C1	06C0	07C0	07C1	07C5	07C4	07D4	07D5	07D1	07D0	0790	0791	0795	0794	0784	0785	0781	0780	0380	0381	0385	0384	0394	0395	0391	0390	03D0	03D1	03D5	03D4	03C4	03C5	03C1	03C0
29	0682	0683	0687	0686	0696	0697	0693	0692	06D2	06D3	06D7	06D6	06C6	06C7	06C3	06C2	07C2	07C3	07C7	07C6	07D6	07D7	07D3	07D2	0792	0793	0797	0796	0786	0787	0783	0782	0382	0383	0387	0386	0396	0397	0393	0392	03D2	03D3	03D7	03D6	03C6	03C7	03C3	03C2
27	068A	068B	068F	068E	069E	069F	069B	069A	06DA	06DB	06DF	06DE	06CE	06CF	06CB	06CA	07CA	07CB	07CF	07CE	07DE	07DF	07DB	07DA	079A	079B	079F	079E	078E	078F	078B	078A	038A	038B	038F	038E	039E	039F	039B	039A	03DA	03DB	03DF	03DE	03CE	03CF	03CB	03CA
25	0688	0689	068D	068C	069C	069D	0699	0698	06D8	06D9	06DD	06DC	06CC	06CD	06C9	06C8	07C8	07C9	07CD	07CC	07DC	07DD	07D9	07D8	0798	0799	079D	079C	078C	078D	0789	0788	0388	0389	038D	038C	039C	039D	0399	0398	03D8	03D9	03DD	03DC	03CC	03CD	03C9	03C8
23	06A8	06A9	06AD	06AC	06BC	06BD	06B9	06B8	06F8	06F9	06FD	06FC	06EC	06ED	06E9	06E8	07E8	07E9	07ED	07EC	07FC	07FD	07F9	07F8	07B8	07B9	07BD	07BC	07AC	07AD	07A9	07A8	03A8	03A9	03AD	03AC	03BC	03BD	03B9	03B8	03F8	03F9	03FD	03FC	03EC	03ED	03E9	03E8
21	06AA	06AB	06AF	06AE	06BE	06BF	06BB	06BA	06FA	06FB	06FF	06FE	06EE	06EF	06EB	06EA	07EA	07EB	07EF	07EE	07FE	07FF	07FB	07FA	07BA	07BB	07BF	07BE	07AE	07AF	07AB	07AA	03AA	03AB	03AF	03AE	03BE	03BF	03BB	03BA	03FA	03FB	03FF	03FE	03EE	03EF	03EB	03EA
19	06A2	06A3	06A7	06A6	06B6	06B7	06B3	06B2	06F2	06F3	06F7	06F6	06E6	06E7	06E3	06E2	07E2	07E3	07E7	07E6	07F6	07F7	07F3	07F2	07B2	07B3	07B7	07B6	07A6	07A7	07A3	07A2	03A2	03A3	03A7	03A6	03B6	03B7	03B3	03B2	03F2	03F3	03F7	03F6	03E6	03E7	03E3	03E2
17	06A0	06A1	06A5	06A4	06B4	06B5	06B1	06B0	06F0	06F1	06F5	06F4	06E4	06E5	06E1	06E0	07E0	07E1	07E5	07E4	07F4	07F5	07F1	07F0	07B0	07B1	07B5	07B4	07A4	07A5	07A1	07A0	03A0	03A1	03A5	03A4	03B4	03B5	03B1	03B0	03F0	03F1	03F5	03F4	03E4	03E5	03E1	03E0
15	0620	0621	0625	0624	0634	0635	0631	0630	0670	0671	0675	0674	0664	0665	0661	0660	0760	0761	0765	0764	0774	0775	0771	0770	0730	0731	0735	0734	0724	0725	0721	0720	0320	0321	0325	0324	0334	0335	0331	0330	0370	0371	0375	0374	0364	0365	0361	0360
13	0622	0623	0627	0626	0636	0637	0633	0632	0672	0673	0677	0676	0666	0667	0663	0662	0762	0763	0767	0766	0776	0777	0773	0772	0732	0733	0737	0736	0726	0727	0723	0722	0322	0323	0327	0326	0336	0337	0333	0332	0372	0373	0377	0376	0366	0367	0363	0362
11	062A	062B	062F	062E	063E	063F	063B	063A	067A	067B	067F	067E	066E	066F	066B	066A	076A	076B	076F	076E	077E	077F	077B	077A	073A	073B	073F	073E	072E	072F	072B	072A	032A	032B	032F	032E	033E	033F	033B	033A	037A	037B	037F	037E	036E	036F	036B	036A
9	0628	0629	062D	062C	063C	063D	0639	0638	0678	0679	067D	067C	066C	066D	0669	0668	0768	0769	076D	076C	077C	077D	0779	0778	0738	0739	073D	073C	072C	072D	0729	0728	0328	0329	032D	032C	033C	033D	0339	0338	0378	0379	037D	037C	036C	036D	0369	0368
7	0608	0609	060D	060C	061C	061D	0619	0618	0658	0659	065D	065C	064C	064D	0649	0648	0748	0749	074D	074C	075C	075D	0759	0758	0718	0719	071D	071C	070C	070D	0709	0708	0308	0309	030D	030C	031C	031D	0319	0318	0358	0359	035D	035C	034C	034D	0349	0348
5	060A	060B	060F	060E	061E	061F	061B	061A	065A	065B	065F	065E	064E	064F	064B	064A	074A	074B	074F	074E	075E	075F	075B	075A	071A	071B	071F	071E	070E	070F	070B	070A	030A	030B	030F	030E	031E	031F	031B	031A	035A	035B	035F	035E	034E	034F	034B	034A
3	0602	0603	0607	0606	0616	0617	0613	0612	0652	0653	0657	0656	0646	0647	0643	0642	0742	0743	0747	0746	0756	0757	0753	0752	0712	0713	0717	0716	0706	0707	0703	0702	0302	0303	0307	0306	0316	0317	0313	0312	0352	0353	0357	0356	0346	0347	0343	0342
1	0600	0601	0605	0604	0614	0615	0611	0610	0650	0651	0655	0654	0644	0645	0641	0640	0740	0741	0745	0744	0754	0755	0751	0750	0710	0711	0715	0714	0704	0705	0701	0700	0300	0301	0305	0304	0314	0315	0311	0310	0350	0351	0355	0354	0344	0345	0341	0340
	1	3	5	7	9	11	13	15	17	19	21	23	25	27	29	31	33	35	37	39	41	43	45	47	49	51	53	55	57	59	61	63	65	67	69	71	73	75	77	79	81	83	85	87	89	91	93	95

Figure A–15 - 8192-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2y_3y_4y_5y_6y_7y_8y_9y_{10}y_{11}y_{12}\}$ on to Quadrant 1

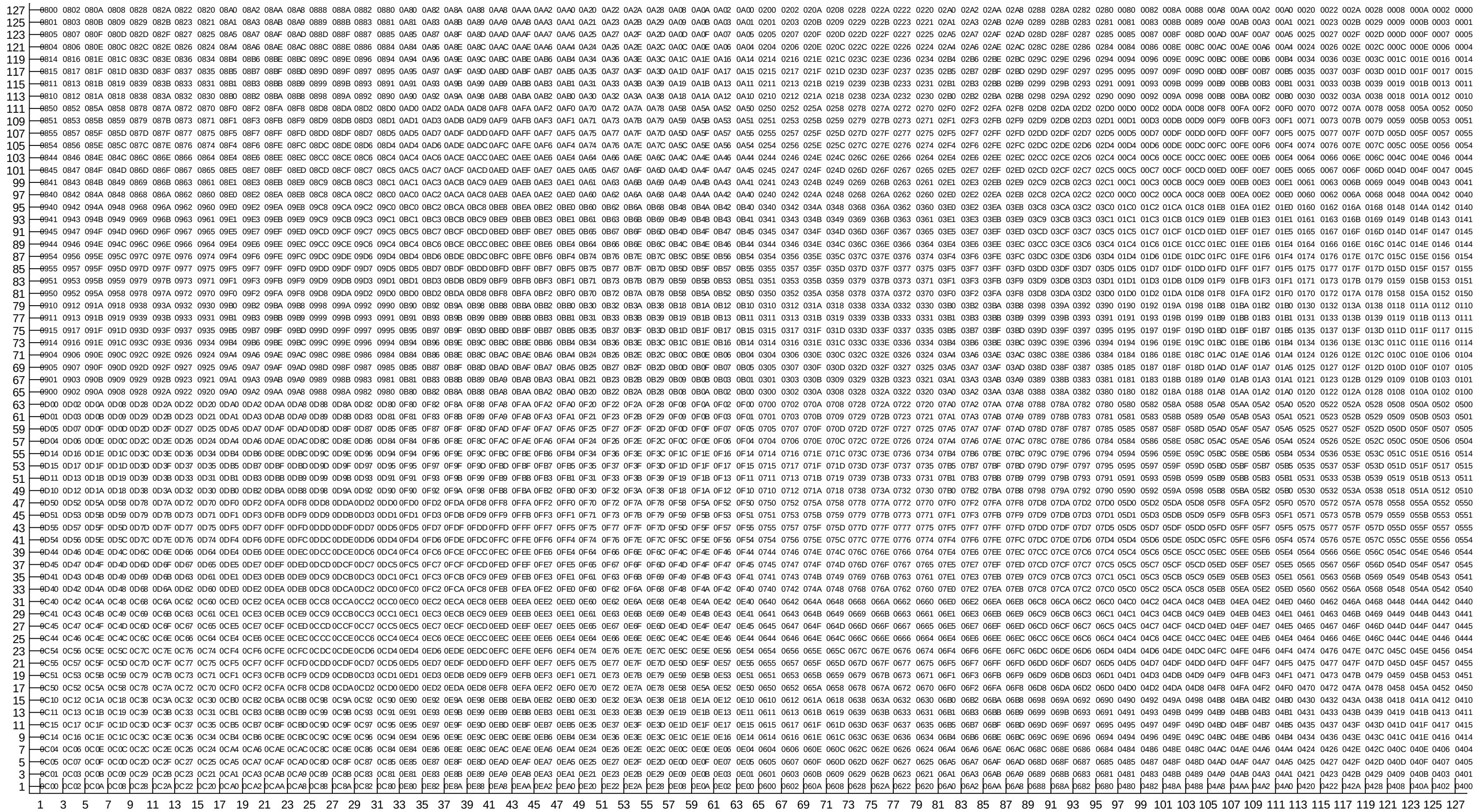


Figure A–16 - 16384-QAM Constellation Mapping of $\{y_2y_3y_4y_5y_6y_7y_8y_9y_{10}y_{11}y_{12}y_{13}\}$ ***on to Quadrant 1***

A.2 QAM Constellation Scaling

The CM MUST scale real and imaginary axes of the constellations by the scaling factors given in column 3 of the table below, to ensure that the mean square value of all QAM constellations are equal to 1.0.

The CMTS MUST scale real and imaginary axes of the constellations by the scaling factors given in column 3 of the table below, to ensure that the mean square value of all QAM constellations are equal to 1.0.

Table A–1 - QAM Constellation Scaling Factors

QAM Constellation	m Number of bits	Scaling Factor
BPSK	1	1
QPSK	2	$1/\sqrt{2}$
8-QAM	3	$1/\sqrt{10}$
16-QAM	4	$1/\sqrt{10}$
32-QAM	5	$1/\sqrt{20}$
64-QAM	6	$1/\sqrt{42}$
128-QAM	7	$1/\sqrt{82}$
256-QAM	8	$1/\sqrt{170}$
512-QAM	9	$1/\sqrt{330}$
1024-QAM	10	$1/\sqrt{682}$
2048-QAM	11	$1/\sqrt{1322}$
4096-QAM	12	$1/\sqrt{2730}$
8192-QAM	13	$1/\sqrt{5290}$
16384-QAM	14	$1/\sqrt{10922}$

Annex B RFoG Operating Mode (Normative)

The CMTS MUST support the ability to limit the number of simultaneous US transmitters to a single transmitter at a time.

Annex C Additions and Modifications for European Specification with SC-QAM Operation (Normative)

This section applies to cases where a DOCSIS 3.1 CM or CMTS is operating with Single Carrier QAM (SC-QAM) operation only, with no OFDM operation. As such, it represents backward compatibility requirements when operating with DOCSIS 3.0 systems or with the DOCSIS 3.1 PHY disabled. It also applies only to the second technology option referred to in Section 1.1; for the first option refer to Section 6, and for the third option refer to Annex D.

As the requirements for a DOCSIS 3.1 CM and CMTS are largely unchanged relative to DOCSIS 3.0 devices for SC-QAM operation, the requirements for operating with this technology option and in this mode are addressed via reference to the PHYv3.0 and DRFI specifications, with the exception that the minimum requirement for upstream and downstream channels has been changed for DOCSIS 3.1 devices.

A DOCSIS 3.1 CM MUST support the CM requirements in Annex B of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0], with the exception that the minimum requirement for upstream channels is 8, and the minimum requirement for downstream channels is 24.

A DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS MUST support the CMTS requirements in Annex B of [DOCSIS PHYv3.0] with the exception that the minimum requirement for upstream channels is 8. A DOCSIS 3.1 CMTS MUST support the CMTS requirements in Annex B of [DOCSIS DRFI], with the addition that the minimum requirement for downstream channels is 24.

Annex D Additions and Modifications for Chinese Specification with SC-QAM Operation (Normative)

This annex will be added in a subsequent revision of this specification.

Annex E 24-bit Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) Code (Normative)

This section contains a 24-bits CRC code encoding, which is used for NCPs as specified in Section 7.5.14 and initial ranging as specified in Section 7.4.15.1.

The CRC encoder generates the 24 bits parity bits denoted by $p_0, p_1, p_2, p_3,..., p_{23}$ for the input bitstream $b_0, b_1,..., b_{k-1}$ .using the following generator polynomial:

$$g_{CRC24}(x) = x^{24} + x^{22} + x^{20} + x^{19} + x^{18} + x^{16} + x^{14} + x^{13} + x^{11} + x^{10} + x^{8} + x^{7} + x^{6} + x^{3} + x + 1$$

(127266713 in octal representation), which means in GF(2) the following equation holds:

$$b_0 x^{k+23} + b_1 x^{k+22} + ... + b_{k-1} x^{24} + p_0 x^{23} + p_1 x^{22} + ... + p_{22} x^{1} + p_{23} = 0 \bmod g_{CRC24}(x) .$$

This 24-bit CRC polynomial is optimized by G. Castangnoli, S. Bräuer and M. Hermann in [CMB1993].

CRC-24-D is displayed most significant byte first, most significant bit first. CRC is shown in brackets.

Example for 7 byte frame such as O-INIT-RNG-REQ:

7 byte frame:

```
01 02 03 04 05 06 07 [ cd ef 27 ]
```

Example for 255 byte frame MSB first:

```
01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08 09 0a 0b 0c 0d 0e 0f 10
11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19 1a 1b 1c 1d 1e 1f 20
21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 2a 2b 2c 2d 2e 2f 30
31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39 3a 3b 3c 3d 3e 3f 40
41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 4a 4b 4c 4d 4e 4f 50
51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59 5a 5b 5c 5d 5e 5f 60
61 62 63 64 65 66 67 68 69 6a 6b 6c 6d 6e 6f 70
71 72 73 74 75 76 77 78 79 7a 7b 7c 7d 7e 7f 80
81 82 83 84 85 86 87 88 89 8a 8b 8c 8d 8e 8f 90
91 92 93 94 95 96 97 98 99 9a 9b 9c 9d 9e 9f a0
a1 a2 a3 a4 a5 a6 a7 a8 a9 aa ab ac ad ae af b0
b1 b2 b3 b4 b5 b6 b7 b8 b9 ba bb bc bd be bf c0
c1 c2 c3 c4 c5 c6 c7 c8 c9 ca cb cc cd ce cf d0
d1 d2 d3 d4 d5 d6 d7 d8 d9 da db dc dd de df e0
e1 e2 e3 e4 e5 e6 e7 e8 e9 ea eb ec ed ee ef f0
f1 f2 f3 f4 f5 f6 f7 f8 f9 fa fb fc fd fe ff [ 2c a8 8b ]
```

Appendix I Downstream Frequency Interleaver Sample C Code (Informative)

In the downstream frequency interleaver C code given below, X is the input data array, Y is the output data array, and N is the size of each array. It has been written to illustrate each operation clearly, and as such it may not necessarily be the most efficient implementation.

void Docsis_3_1_Freqeuncy_Interleaver (int *X, int *Y, int N)

```
{
       int store[128][64];
       int i, j, K, k1, base;
       int RowCount, RowCount_BR;
       int ColumnCount, ColumnCount_BR;
       int Last_Column_Size;
       int column_rotate[64], rotated_column[128];

       // Number of rows is 128
       // Number of columns is K
       K = (int) (ceil (((double) N)/128.0));
       Last_Column_Size = N - ((K-1)*128);

       // Generate the column rotation array using the 6-bit LFSR
       column_rotate[0]=17;
       for (i=0; i<63; i++)
       {
               int lsb;
               lsb = column_rotate[i]&1;
              column_rotate[i+1] = (column_rotate[i] >> 1) ^ (lsb << 5) ^ (lsb << 4);
       }

       base = 0;
        // Save data in 2-D store with rows addressed in bit-reversed order
       for (RowCount=0; RowCount< 128; RowCount++)
       {
              RowCount_BR = 0;
              for (j=0; j<7; j++)
              {
                            RowCount_BR = RowCount_BR << 1;;
                            if (((RowCount >> j) & 1) == 1)
                     RowCount_BR++;
               }
              if (RowCount_BR < Last_Column_Size)
              {
                            for (j=0; j<K; j++)
                            store[RowCount_BR][j] = X[base+j];
                            base += K;
              }
              else
              {
                            for (j=0; j<K-1; j++)
                            store[RowCount_BR][j] = X[base+j];
                            base += (K-1);
               }
         }

       // Rotate columns 0 to K-2
       // Last column that could be partially filled is not rotated
       for (j=0; j<(K-1); j++)
       {
              for (i=0; i<128; i++)
```

```
                        rotated_column[(i + column_rotate[j]) & 0x7F] =
store[i][j];
            for (i=0; i<128; i++)
                        store[i][j] = rotated_column[i];
      }

      // Determine the number of bits k1 in ColumnCount
      k1 = 0;
      while ((1 << k1) < K)
            k1++;

      // Address columns in bit-reversed order, but only if bit-reversed number is
within range
      // Otherwise use non-bit-reversed version
      base = 0;
      for (ColumnCount=0; ColumnCount<K; ColumnCount++)
      {
            int ReadColumn;
            // Bit Reverse ColumnCount
            ColumnCount_BR = 0;
            for (i=0; i<k1; i++)
            {
                        ColumnCount_BR = ColumnCount_BR << 1;
                        if (((ColumnCount >> i) & 1) == 1)
                        ColumnCount_BR++;
            }
            if (ColumnCount_BR > (K-1)) // Read from ColumnCount
                        ReadColumn = ColumnCount;
            else
                        ReadColumn = ColumnCount_BR;
            if (ReadColumn == (K-1)) // Last column could be a partially-filled
column
            {
                        for (i=0; i<Last_Column_Size; i++)
                        Y[base+i] = store[i][ReadColumn];
                        base = base+Last_Column_Size;
            }
            else
            {
                        for (i=0; i<128; i++)
                        Y[base+i] = store[i][ReadColumn];
                        base = base+128;
            }
      }
      return;
}
```

Appendix II Use Cases: Maximum Number of Simultaneous Transmitters (Informative)

This appendix will be added in a subsequent revision of this specification.

Appendix III Upstream Time and Frequency Interleaver Sample C Code (Informative)

The algorithm for generating the sequence of addresses *(t, f)* is described using the following C code segment:

```
Count_t = 0;
Count_f = 0;
Count_diagonal = 0;
for (idx_t=0;   idx_t<K;   idx_t++)
{
       for (idx_f=0;   idx_f<L;   idx_f++)
       {
              Address.t  = Bit_Reverse_Count(&Count_t, K);
              Address.f  = Bit_Reverse_Count(&Count_f, L);
              Count_t = (Count_t + 1) % K1;
              Count_f = (Count_f + 1) % L1;
       }
       Count_diagonal = (Count_diagonal + 1) % K1;
       d = Bit_Reverse_Count(&Count_diagonal, K);
       Count_t = Count_diagonal;
       Count_f = 0;
}
```

Appendix IV FEC Codeword Selection Algorithm Upstream Time and Frequency Interleaver Sample C Code (Informative) [57]

If the CMTS scheduler wishes to grant a certain number of information bits, it needs to perform the opposite (forward) calculation in order to determine how many codewords of what sizes are necessary to hold the desired number of information bits. This is part of the process of determining the grant size. For informative purposes, the script forward_calc.m is provided to show how the CMTS could perform this calculation. The variable finfo_size is the input to this script.

```
% forward_calc script

% set values for codeword sizes
% total bits = size including parity
% info bits = information bits only
% thresholds - if more bits than threshold, shorten this cw instead of
% using a smaller one

% short codeword
SHORT_TOTAL_BITS = 1120;
SHORT_INFO_BITS = 840;
SHORT_PARITY_BITS = SHORT_TOTAL_BITS - SHORT_INFO_BITS;

SHORT_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS = SHORT_PARITY_BITS + 1;
SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS = SHORT_INFO_BITS / 2;

% medium codeword
MED_TOTAL_BITS = 5940;
MED_INFO_BITS = 5040;
MED_PARITY_BITS = MED_TOTAL_BITS - MED_INFO_BITS;

MED_INFO_THRESH_BITS = 2521;

% long codeword
LONG_TOTAL_BITS = 16200;
LONG_INFO_BITS = 14400;
LONG_PARITY_BITS = LONG_TOTAL_BITS - LONG_INFO_BITS;

LONG_TOTAL_THRESH_BITS = 11881;
LONG_INFO_THRESH_BITS = 10081;


% variable finfo_size is input
% set finfo_size to desired input value in workspace

% initialize output variables
flong_cws = 0;
fshortened_long_cws = 0;
fmed_cws = 0;
fshortened_med_cws = 0;
fshort_cws = 0;
fshortened_short_cws = 0;
fother_shortened_cw_bits = 0;
fshortened_cw_bits = 0;
mac_padding = 0;

% intermediate variable to track type of last full codeword
flast_full_cw = '';
```

[57] Revised per PHY3.1-N-14.1202-3 on 12/11/14 by PO.

```
% now begin calculation

  bits_remaining = finfo_size;

  % if there are no bits at all, we don't want to give any grant - just let
  % everything fall through to zero codewords.

  % However, if we have a nonzero number of bits that is not enough to make
  % a min-size short codeword, we do want to give a grant but we are to
  % allow space for the CM to make a segment that will fill the min-size
  % short codeword.

  if (bits_remaining > 0 && bits_remaining < SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS)
      mac_padding = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS - bits_remaining;
      bits_remaining = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
  end

    % make as many long cws as possible
    while bits_remaining >= LONG_INFO_BITS
        flong_cws = flong_cws + 1;
        bits_remaining = bits_remaining - LONG_INFO_BITS;
        flast_full_cw = 'Long';
    end

    % if remaining bits can make a shortened long cw, do so
    if bits_remaining >= LONG_INFO_THRESH_BITS
        fshortened_long_cws = 1;
        fshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
        bits_remaining = 0;
    end

    % now make as many medium cws as possible
    while bits_remaining >= MED_INFO_BITS
        fmed_cws = fmed_cws + 1;
        bits_remaining = bits_remaining - MED_INFO_BITS;
        flast_full_cw = 'Medium';
    end

    % if remaining bits can make a shortened med cw, do so
    if bits_remaining >= MED_INFO_THRESH_BITS
        fshortened_med_cws = 1;
        fshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
        bits_remaining = 0;
    end

    % now make as many short cws as possible
    while bits_remaining >= SHORT_INFO_BITS
        fshort_cws = fshort_cws + 1;
        bits_remaining = bits_remaining - SHORT_INFO_BITS;
        flast_full_cw = 'Short';
    end

    % if there are any bits left, finish with a shortened short cw
    if bits_remaining >= 1
        fshortened_short_cws = 1;

        % we need at least SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS in a shortened short
        % codeword; if we don't have enough, we will borrow from the
        % immediately preceding full codeword, which will become another
        % shortened codeword.
        % Note that we will always borrow SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS.
```

```
        if bits_remaining >= SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS
            % no need to borrow bits
            fshortened_cw_bits = bits_remaining;
            bits_remaining = 0;
        else
            % identify type/size of last full codeword
            switch flast_full_cw
                case 'Long'
                    % change last full cw to a shortened cw
                    flong_cws = flong_cws - 1;
                    fshortened_long_cws = fshortened_long_cws + 1;
                    % number of bits in that cw is reduced by
                    % SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS
                    fother_shortened_cw_bits = LONG_INFO_BITS - ...
                        SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                    % put those bits plus bits_remaining into the last
                    % shortened cw
              fshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS +bits_remaining;
                    bits_remaining = 0;
                case 'Medium'
                    % same steps as with long
                    fmed_cws = fmed_cws - 1;
                    fshortened_med_cws = fshortened_med_cws + 1;
                    fother_shortened_cw_bits = MED_INFO_BITS - ...
                        SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                    fshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS +bits_remaining;
                    bits_remaining = 0;
                case 'Short'
                    % also same as long
                    fshort_cws = fshort_cws - 1;
                    fshortened_short_cws = fshortened_short_cws + 1;
                    fother_shortened_cw_bits = SHORT_INFO_BITS - ...
                        SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS;
                    fshortened_cw_bits = SHORT_MIN_INFO_BITS +bits_remaining;
                    bits_remaining = 0;
            end
        end
    end
```

Tables showing the number and size of codewords to be used for grant sizes from 1 bit up to two full long codewords are provided in [PHYv3.1 CODECHECK].

Appendix V CMTS Proposed Configuration Parameters (Informative)

Table V–1 - CMTS Proposed Configuration Parameters

FFT	Cyclic Prefix Samples (N_{cp})	Roll-Off Period Samples (N_{rp})	Band Edge Exclusion Sub-band (MHz)	Lower Edge Exclusion Sub-band (subcarriers)	Upper Edge Exclusion Sub-band (subcarriers)
4K	192	64	3.650	201	200
		128	2.000	168	167
	256	64	3.650	201	200
		128	2.000	168	167
		192	1.450	157	156
	512	64	3.650	201	200
		128	1.950	167	166
		192	1.400	156	155
		256	1.100	150	149
	768	64	3.600	200	199
		128	1.950	167	166
		192	1.400	156	155
		256	1.100	150	149
	1024	64	3.600	200	199
		128	1.900	166	165
		192	1.350	155	154
		256	1.050	149	148
8K	192	64	3.400	392	391
		128	1.750	326	325
	256	64	3.400	392	391
		128	1.750	326	325
		192	1.225	305	304
	512	64	3.375	391	390
		128	1.750	326	325
		192	1.200	304	303
		256	0.925	293	292
	768	64	3.375	391	390
		128	1.750	326	325
		192	1.200	304	303
		256	0.925	293	292
	1024	64	3.350	390	389
		128	1.725	325	324
		192	1.200	304	303
		256	0.925	293	292

Appendix VI Suggested algorithm to compute Signal-to-Noise Ratio (SNR) Margin for Candidate Profile (Informative)

The CM measures the RxMER value for each data subcarrier as specified in Section 9.3.6. From these measurements it calculates the average RxMER over all data subcarriers, MER1. The CM accepts as an input the required RxMER delivering a defined threshold of CER = 1e-5 under ideal AWGN conditions for each bit loading. The CM computes the difference of the measured RxMER values from the required RxMER values. The CM computes the required average RxMER, denoted MER2, over all data subcarriers for the candidate profile. The averaging computations for MER1 and MER2 use values in the log (dB) domain. The SNR margin is defined as MER1 – MER2, where all quantities are in dB. As an example, if the CM measures MER1 = 33 dB, and the candidate profile requires MER2 = 30 dB, the CM reports an SNR margin of 3 dB. In addition, the CM reports the number of subcarriers whose RxMER is at least x dB below the defined threshold for the bit loading of the given subcarrier, where x is a configurable parameter with default value = 1.

Appendix VII Acknowledgements (Informative)

On behalf of the cable industry and our member companies, CableLabs would like to thank the numerous individuals that contributed to the development of this specification. In particular, we want to extend our sincere appreciation and gratitude to the following team members for their contributions in developing the DOCSIS 3.1 Physical Layer specification:

Contributor	Company Affiliation	Contributor	Company Affiliation
Brian Kurtz	Altera	Adi Bonen	Harmonic
Ayham Al-Banna	ARRIS	Boris Brun	Harmonic
Doc Cummings	ARRIS	Jim Chen	Huawei
Mike Emmendorfer	ARRIS	Syed Rahman	Huawei
Bruce Currivan	Broadcom	Guangsheng Wu	Huawei
Roger Fish	Broadcom	Bernard Arambepola	Intel
Avi Kliger	Broadcom	Satish Mudugere	Intel
Tom Kolze	Broadcom	Shaul Shulman	Intel
Rich Prodan	Broadcom	Noam Tal	Intel
Lisa Denney	Broadcom	Joel Birkeland	Maxim
Alberto Campos	CableLabs	Ajay Kuckreja	Maxim
Belal Hamzeh	CableLabs	Suman Musunuru	Maxim
Volker Leisse	CableLabs	Scott Carichner	Maxlinear
Kevin Luehrs	CableLabs	Curtis Ling	Maxlinear
Joey Padden	CableLabs	Sridhar Ramesh	Maxlinear
Matthew Schmitt	CableLabs	Scott Walley	Maxlinear
Tom Williams	CableLabs	Rob Howald	Motorola
Guy Cohen	Capacicom	Rob Thompson	Motorola
Daniel Wacjer	Capacicom	Stefan Brueck	Qualcomm
Dave Fox	Casa	Salvo Pennisi	Qualcomm
Brett Hansmeier	Casa	Marc Werner	Qualcomm
John Chapman	Cisco	George Hart	Rogers Communications
Ron Hranac	Cisco	Marty Davidson	SCTE
Hang Jin	Cisco	David Armstrong	SED Systems
Rick Meller	Cisco	Dan Coode	SED Systems
Bill Wall	Cisco	Martin Lovell	Sony
Tom Staniec	Cohere	Lothar Stadelmeier	Sony
Phil Chang	Comcast	Jean-Noel Rozec	ST
Peter Hutnick	Comcast	Neil Robertson	ST Microelectronics
Saifur Rahman	Comcast	Jim Dietz	Texas Instruments
Jorge Salinger	Comcast	Joel Halbert	Texas Instruments
Joe Solomon	Comcast	Carey Ritchey	TI
Dave Urban	Comcast	Carissa Sipp	TI
Ony Anglade	Cox Communications	Paul Brooks	Time Warner Cable
Eugene Dai	Cox Communications	Kirk Erichsen	Time Warner Cable
Jeff Finkelstein	Cox Communications	Colin Howlett	Vecima
Hank Blauvelt	Emcore	Chris Dick	Xilinx
		Joe Palermo	Xilinx

Additionally, Cablelabs would like to thank our member MSOs for their continued support in driving the specification development and decision making process.

Appendix VIII Revision History (Informative)

VIII.1 Engineering Change for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I02-140320

The following Engineering Change was incorporated into CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I02-140320

ECN Identifier	Accepted Date	Title of EC	Author
PHYv3.1-N-14.1136-5	2/26/2014	PHYv3.1 Feature Enhancements	Hamzeh

VIII.2 Engineering Change for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I03-140606

The following Engineering Change was incorporated into CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I03-140606

ECN Identifier	Accepted Date	Title of EC	Author
PHYv3.1-N-14.1142-6	5/21/2014	DS receive power updates and editorial clarifications	Hamzeh

VIII.3 Engineering Changes for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I04-141218

The following Engineering Changes were incorporated into CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I04-141218

ECN Identifier	Accepted Date	Title of EC	Author
PHYv3.1-N-14.1160-1	8/13/2014	NCP counting clarifications	Kliger
PHYv3.1-N-14.1163-1	8/13/2014	Delete NCP codeword error counters	Currivan
PHYv3.1-N-14.1164-1	8/13/2014	Frequency Accuracy 7.5.1 clean up EC	Padden
PHYv3.1-N-14.1165-1	8/13/2014	Time Interleaver Lower Bound Fix	Padden
PHYv3.1-N-14.1166-1	8/13/2014	OFDMA Fidelity requirements 7.4.13.5 change	Froimovich
PHYv3.1-N-14.1167-1	8/13/2014	Update for PLC Reference time diagram	Padden
PHYv3.1-N-14.1171-1	8/13/2014	CMTS Dual CW mode for testing DS Symbol Clock Jitter	Webster
PHYv3.1-N-14.1174-1	8/27/2014	Upstream received channel power measurement	Currivan
PHYv3.1-N-14.1180-1	9/10/2014	Symbol per Minislot Limits Correction	Padden
PHYv3.1-N-14.1181-1	9/10/2014	Upstream Frequency Accuracy	Kolze
PHYv3.1-N-14.1185-1	9/24/2014	New Requirements in shortened codewords and PLC structure sections	Hamzeh
PHYv3.1-N-14.1187-1	10/1/2014	Correction of PLC Block Interleaving	Armstrong
PHYv3.1-N-14.1188-1	9/24/2014	Corner case on NCP usage	Armstrong
PHYv3.1-N-14.1197-2	11/5/2014	RP size in the Upstream	Akliger
PHYv3.1-N-14.1198-2	11/5/2014	Downstream FEC Statistics: remove the reference to CM OSSI specification	Alvarez
PHYv3.1-N-14.1201-1	11/5/2014	Clarification of exclusions and unused subcarriers rules	Kliger
PHYv3.1-N-14.1202-3	11/12/2014	Editorial Omnibus to PHY I03	Hamzeh
PHYv3.1-N-14.1203-2	11/12/2014	Miscellaneous PNM edits	Currivan
PHYv3.1-N-14.1210-1	11/12/2014	Initial Ranging and Exclusion bands	Kliger
PHYv3.1-N-14.1214-2	11/12/2014	CMTS Receiver Capabilities Requirements Clarifications	Kolze

VIII.4 Engineering Changes for CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I05-150326

The following Engineering Changes were incorporated into CM-SP-PHYv3.1-I05-150326

ECN Identifier	Accepted Date	Title of EC	Author
PHYv3.1-N-15.1270-1	2/25/2015	Upstream RxMER Performance Requirements	Currivan
PHYv3.1-N-15.1271-1	2/25/2015	PHY I04 editorial omnibus	Denney